LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 57

The History of Alexander

Curtius Rufus

Historiae Alexandri Magni

The History of Alexander

Part Two: Books VII–X

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

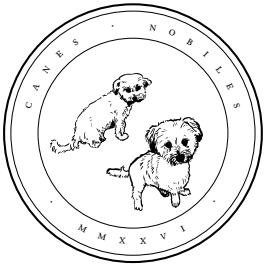


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is used under a Creative Commons
Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License
creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0



Volume 57 of the Canes Nobiles Latin interlinear texts

The Latin text follows Edmund Hedicke's text of Curtius, Leipzig, 1908

Set from the Perseus Digital Library's canonical Latin corpus, with corrections

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

BOOK VII

I · The Trial of Amyntas 7
II · The Death of Parmenio 17
III · Over the Caucasus 26
IV · Bessus at Table 31
V · The Oxus and the Branchidae 40
VI · The Wound in the Leg 50
VII · The Omens at the Tanais 57
VIII · The Scythian Envoys 65
IX · The Battle with the Scythians 72
X · Sogdiana 77
XI · The Rock of Ariamazes 81

BOOK VIII

I · The Death of Clitus 89
II · Remorse 99
III · The Head of Spitamenes 108
IV · The Storm and Roxane 112
V · The Prostration 119
VI · The Pages' Plot 126
VII · Hermolaus 133
VIII · Alexander Answers 137
IX · India 143

BOOK VIII

(continued)

X · Nysa and Mazagae 149
XI · Aornos 157
XII · Taxiles 162
XIII · Before the Hydaspes 167
XIV · The Battle with Porus 173

BOOK IX

I · After the Victory 185
II · At the Hyphasis 192
III · The Turn 201
IV · The Sudracan Town 206
V · The Wound 214
VI · Craterus' Plea 221
VII · Dioxippus 228
VIII · Down the River 234
IX · The Ocean 241
X · The Desert March 247

BOOK X

I · Orsines 255
II · The Mutiny at Opis 264
III · To the Persian Soldiers 271
IV · A Soldier's Protest 274
V · The Death of Alexander 275
VI · The Council 283
VII · Arrhidaeus 289
VIII · The Reconciliation 294
IX · The Lustration 299
X · The Division of the Empire 303

BOOK VII

I · THE TRIAL OF AMYNTAS

Once Philotas is dead, pity follows, and Atarrhias, by arrangement, has Alexander the Lyncestian tried; he stammers, and the soldiers kill him. The king accuses Amyntas and his brothers as Philotas' friends, citing his mother's letter, a secret talk with Philotas, and threats to Antiphanes. Amyntas answers that the friendship was the king's doing, that he kept his two horses from Antiphanes, and that the queen mother's anger comes from the young men he took from her house.

Philotan sicut recentibus sceleris eius vestigiis iure adfectum
Philotas just-as with-fresh of-the-crime his traces rightly afflicted
supplicio censuerant milites, ita, postquam desierat esse,
with-punishment had-judged the-soldiers so after he-had-ceased to-be
quem odissent, invidia in misericordiam vertit. Moverat
one-whom they-might-hate the-odium into pity turned had-moved
et claritas iuvenis et patris eius senectus atque orbitas.
both the-fame of-the-young-man and of-father his the-old-age and bereavement
Primus Asiam aperuerat regi, omnium periculorum eius
he-first Asia had-opened to-the-king of-all dangers his
particeps semper alterum in acie cornu defenderat, Philippo
the-sharer always the-one in battle wing he-had-defended to-Philip
quoque ante omnes amicus et ipsi Alexandro tam fidus, ut
also before all a-friend and himself to-Alexander so loyal that
occidendi Attalum non alio ministro uti mallet. Horum
for-killing Attalus not another agent to-use he-preferred of-these-things
cogitatio subibat exercitum, seditiosaeque voces referebantur
the-thought came-into the-army and-seditious words were-reported
ad regem. Quis ille haud sane motus satisque prudens,
to the-king by-which-things he not at-all moved and-well wise
otii vitia negotio discuti, edicit, ut omnes in vestibulo
of-idleness the-vices by-business to-be-dispelled proclaims that all in the-vestibule

regiae praesto sint. Quos ubi frequentes adesse cognovit,
of-the-palace present be whom when in-numbers to-be-present he-learned
in contionem processit. Haud dubie ex conposito Atarrhias
into the-assembly he-advanced not doubtfully by arrangement Atarrhias
postulare coepit, ut Lyncestes Alexander, qui multo ante
to-demand began that Lyncestes Alexander who long before
quam Philotas regem voluisset occidere, exhiberetur. A
than Philotas the-king had-wished to-kill should-be-produced by
duobus indicibus, sicut supra diximus, delatus tertium iam
two informers as above we-said denounced the-third now
annum custodiebatur in vinculis. Eundem in Philippi quoque
year was-being-kept in chains the-same-man in Philip's also
caedem coniurasse cum Pausania pro conperto fuit, sed
murder to-have-conspired with Pausanias for ascertained it-was but
quia primus Alexandrum regem salutaverat, supplicio magis
because first Alexander as-king he-had-saluted from-punishment rather
quam crimini fuerat exemptus: tum quoque Antipatri
than from-the-charge he-had-been exempted then also of-Antipater
soceri eius preces iustam regis iram morabantur.
father-in-law his the-prayers the-just of-the-king anger were-delaying
Ceterum recruduit suppuratus dolor: quippe veteris periculi
but broke-out-again the-festering resentment for of-the-old danger
memoriam praesentis cura renovabat. Igitur Alexander ex
the-memory the-present care was-renewing therefore Alexander from
custodia educitur iussusque dicere, quamquam toto
custody is-led-out and-ordered to-speak although for-the-whole
triennio meditatus erat defensionem, tamen haesitans et
three-years rehearsed he-had his-defense yet hesitating and
trepidus pauca ex his, quae conposuerat, protulit,
trembling a-few of those-things which he-had-composed he-brought-out
ad ultimum non memoria solum, sed etiam mens eum
at the-last not memory only but also his-mind him

destituit. Nulli erat dubium, quin trepidatio conscientiae
failed to-no-one was-it doubtful that the-panic of-conscience
indicium esset, non memoriae vitium. Itaque ex iis, qui
a-sign was not of-memory a-failing and-so of those who
proximi adstiterant, obluctantem adhuc oblivioni lanceis
nearest had-stood struggling still with-forgetfulness with-lances
confoderunt. Cuius corpore ablato rex introduci iussit
they-ran-through with-whose body removed the-king to-be-brought-in ordered
Amyntam et Simian: nam Polemon, minimus ex fratribus,
Amyntas and Simmias for Polemon the-youngest of the-brothers
cum Philotan torqueri conperisset, profugerat. Omnium
when Philotas to-be-tortured he-had-learned had-fled of-all
Philotae amicorum hi carissimi fuerant, ad magna et
of-Philotas the-friends these the-dearest had-been to great and
honorata ministeria illius maxime suffragatione producti,
honored offices his especially by-support brought-forward
memineratque rex, summo studio ab eo conciliatos
and-remembered the-king with-the-highest zeal by him won-over
sibi, nec dubitabat huius quoque ultimi consilii fuisse
to-himself nor did-he-doubt of-this also latest plot to-have-been
participes. Igitur queritur olim sibi esse suspectos matris
sharers therefore he-complains long-ago to-himself to-be suspect of-mother
suae litteris, quibus esset admonitus, ut ab his salutem
his by-the-letter in-which he-had-been warned that from these his-safety
suam tueretur: ceterum se invitum deteriora credentem
his-own he-should-protect but himself unwilling worse-things believing
nunc manifestis indiciis victum iussisse vinciri. Nam
now by-plain evidence overcome to-have-ordered to-be-bound for
pridie, quam detegeretur Philotae scelus, quin in secreto
the-day-before than was-revealed Philotas' crime that in secret
cum eo fuissent, non posse dubitari. Fratrem vero, qui
with him they-had-been not to-be-able to-be-doubted the-brother indeed who

profugerit, cum de Philota quaereretur, aperuisse fugae
had-fled when about Philotas inquiry-was-made to-have-revealed of-the-flight
causam. Nuper praeter consuetudinem officii specie
the-cause recently contrary-to custom of-duty under-pretense
amotis longius ceteris admovisse semetipsos lateri suo
with-removed farther the-rest to-have-moved themselves to-the-side his
nulla probabili causa, seque mirantem, quod non vice
with-no probable reason and-himself wondering that not in-turn
sua tali fungerentur officio, et ipsa trepidatione
their-own such they-were-performing duty and by-the-very agitation
eorum perterritum strenue ad armigeros, qui proxime
of-them alarmed briskly to the-armor-bearers who nearest
sequebantur, recessisse. Ad haec accedere, quod, cum
were-following to-have-withdrawn to this to-be-added that when
Antiphanes, scriba equitum, Amyntae denuntiasset, pridie
Antiphanes the-clerk of-the-cavalry to-Amyntas had-given-notice the-day-before
quam Philotae scelus deprehensum esset, ut ex suis equis
than of-Philotas the-crime detected had-been that from his-own horses
more solito daret iis, qui amisissent equos, superbe
in-the-manner usual he-should-give to-those who had-lost their-horses arrogantly
respondisset, nisi incepto desisteret, brevi sciturum,
he-had-replied unless from-his-undertaking he-desisted shortly going-to-know
quis ipse esset. Iam linguae violentiam temeritatemque
who he-himself was now of-the-tongue the-violence and-rashness
verborum, quae in semetipsum iacularentur, nihil aliud
of-the-words which against himself they-hurled nothing other
esse quam scelesti animi indicem ac testem. Quae si vera
to-be than of-a-criminal mind the-informer and witness which if true
essent, idem meruisse eos, quod Philotan, si falsa, exigere
they-were the-same to-have-deserved them as Philotas if false to-demand
ipsum, ut refellant. Productus deinde Antiphanes de equis
himself that they-refute brought-forward then Antiphanes about the-horses

non traditis et adiectis etiam superbe minis indicat. Tum
not handed-over and with-added also arrogantly threats informs then
Amyntas facta dicendi potestate: 'Si nihil,' inquit, 'interest
Amyntas with-given of-speaking permission if nothing he-says it-matters
regis, peto, ut, dum dico, vinculis liberer.' Rex solvi
to-the-king I-ask that while I-speak from-the-chains I-be-freed the-king to-be-loosed
utrumque iubet desiderantique Amyntae, ut habitus quoque
both orders and-to-desiring Amyntas that dress also
redderetur armigeri, lanceam dari iussit. Quam ut
should-be-restored of-an-armor-bearer a-lance to-be-given ordered which when
laeva conprehendit, evitato eo loco, in quo Alexandri
in-his-left-hand he-grasped with-avoided that place in which of-Alexander
corpus paulo ante iacuerat: 'Qualiscumque,' inquit, 'exitus nos
the-body a-little before had-lain whatever he-says end us
manet, rex, confitemur prosperum tibi debituros, tristiorem
awaits king we-confess the-favorable to-you going-to-owe the-sadder
fortunae inputaturos. Sine praeiudicio dicimus causam liberis
to-fortune going-to-ascribe without prejudgment we-plead our-case with-free
corporibus animisque: habitum etiam, in quo te comitari
bodies and-minds the-dress also in which you to-attend
solemus, reddidisti. Causam non possumus, fortunam timere
we-are-wont you-have-restored the-case not we-can fortune to-fear
desinemus. Et, quaeso, permittas mihi id primum defendere,
we-shall-cease and I-ask that-you-allow me that first to-defend
quod a te ultimum obiectum est. Nos, rex, sermonis
which by you last charged was we king of-talk
adversus maiestatem tuam habiti nullius conscii sumus
against majesty your held of-none conscious are
nobis. Dicerem iam pridem vicisse te invidiam, nisi
to-ourselves I-would-say now long-since to-have-conquered you envy unless
periculum esset, ne alia malignius dicta crederes
danger there-were lest other-things more-spitefully said you-should-believe

blanda oratione purgari. Ceterum etiam si militis tui vel
by-flattering speech to-be-cleared but even if of-a-soldier your either
in agmine deficientis et fatigati vel in acie periclitantis vel
on the-march fainting and exhausted or in battle imperiled or
in tabernaculo aegri et vulnera curantis aliqua vox asperior
in his-tent sick and wounds tending some word harsher
esset accepta, merueramus fortibus factis, ut malles ea
were taken we-had-deserved by-brave deeds that you-should-prefer it
tempori nostro inputare quam animo. Cum quid accidit
to-the-occasion our to-ascribe than to-our-mind when something happens
tristius, omnes rei sumus: corporibus nostris, quae
more-grievous all defendants we-are against-bodies our-own which
utique non odimus, infestas admovemus manus: parentes,
surely not we-hate hostile we-move hands parents
liberi si occurrant, et ingrati et invisi sunt. Contra
children if they-meet-us both unwelcome and hated are on-the-other-hand
cum donis honoramur, cum praemiis onusti revertimur, quis
when with-gifts we-are-honored when with-rewards loaded we-return who
ferre nos potest? quis illam animorum alacritatem continere?
to-bear us can who that of-minds eagerness to-restrain
Militantium nec indignatio nec laetitia moderata est: ad
of-soldiers neither indignation nor joy moderate is to
omnes adfectus impetu rapimur. Vituperamus laudamus,
all emotions with-impulse we-are-swept we-blame we-praise
miseremur irascimur, utcumque praesens movit adfectio:
we-pity we-are-angry however the-present has-moved feeling
modo Indiam adire et Oceanum libet, modo coniugum et
now India to-approach and the-Ocean it-pleases now of-wives and
liberorum patriaeque memoria occurrit. Sed has cogitationes,
of-children and-of-homeland the-memory occurs but these thoughts
has inter se conloquentium voces signum tuba datum
these among themselves of-men-conversing words the-signal by-trumpet given

finit: in suos quisque ordines currimus, et, quidquid irarum
ends into their-own each ranks we-run and whatever of-angers
in tabernaculo conceptum est, in hostium effunditur capita.
in the-tent conceived is on of-the-enemy is-poured the-heads
Utinam Philotas quoque intra verba peccasset! Proinde ad id
would-that Philotas also within words had-sinned therefore to that
revertar, propter quod rei sumus. Amicitiam, quae nobis
I-shall-return because-of which defendants we-are the-friendship which to-us
cum Philota fuit, adeo non eo infitias, ut expetisse quoque
with Philotas was so-far not I-go to-denial that to-have-sought also
nos magnosque ex ea fructus percepisse confitear. An vero
we and-great from it fruits to-have-gathered I-confess or indeed
Parmenionis, quem tibi proximum esse voluisti, filium omnes
of-Parmenio whom to-you nearest to-be you-wished the-son all
paene amicos tuos dignatione vincentem cultum a nobis
almost friends your in-esteem surpassing courted by us
esse miraris? Tu, hercules, si verum audire vis, rex,
to-have-been do-you-wonder you by-Hercules if the-truth to-hear you-wish king
huius nobis periculi es causa. Quis enim alius effecit,
of-this to-us danger are the-cause who for else brought-it-about
ut ad Philotan decurrerent, qui placere vellent tibi? Ab
that to Philotas should-run those-who to-please wished you by
illo traditi ad hunc gradum amicitiae tuae ascendimus: is
him handed-on to this degree of-friendship your we-ascended he
apud te fuit, cuius et gratiam expetere et iram timere
with you was whose both the-favor to-seek and the-anger to-fear
possemus. Si non propemodum in tua verba, at tui omnes
we-could if not almost to your words but your all-men
te praeeunte iuravimus, eosdem nos inimicos amicosque
with-you leading we-swore the-same-men we as-enemies and-friends
habituros esse, quos tu haberes. Hoc sacramento pietatis
going-to-have to-be whom you might-have by-this oath of-loyalty

obstricti aversaremur scilicet, quem tu omnibus
bound should-we-have-turned-from doubtless him-whom you to-all
praeferebas! Igitur, si hoc crimen est, paucos innocentes
preferred therefore if this a-crime is few innocent
habes, immo, hercules, neminem. Omnes enim Philotae
you-have nay by-Hercules none all for of-Philotas
amici esse voluerunt, sed totidem, quot volebant esse, non
friends to-be wished but as-many as wished to-be not
poterant. Ita, si a consciis amicos non dividis, ne ab
could so if from the-accomplices the-friends not you-separate not from
amicis quidem separabis illos, qui idem esse voluerunt.
the-friends even will-you-separate those who the-same to-be wished
Quod igitur conscientiae adfertur indicium? Ut opinor,
what then of-guilty-knowledge is-brought-forward as-evidence as I-think
quia pridie familiariter et sine arbitris locutus est
because the-day-before familiarly and without witnesses spoken he-has
nobiscum. At ego purgare non possem, si pridie
with-us but I to-clear-myself not could if the-day-before
quicquam ex vetere vita ac more mutassem. Nunc vero, si,
anything of former life and custom I-had-changed now however if
ut omnibus diebus, illo quoque, qui suspectus est, fecimus,
as on-all days on-that also which suspect is we-did
consuetudo diluet crimen. Sed equos Antiphani non
habit will-wash-away the-charge but horses to-Antiphanes not
dedimus, et pridie, quam Philotas detectus est. Hic mihi
we-gave and the-day-before than Philotas detected was here for-me
cum Antiphane res erit. Qui si nos suspectos facere
with Antiphanes the-business will-be who if us suspect to-make
vult, quod illo die equos non dederimus, semetipsum, quod
wishes because on-that day horses not we-gave himself because
eos desideraverit, purgare non poterit. Anceps enim crimen
them he-demanded to-clear not will-be-able doubtful for the-charge

est inter retinentem et exigentem, nisi quod melior est
is between the-one-keeping and the-one-demanding except that better is
causa suum non tradentis quam poscentis alienum.
the-case his-own not of-one-handing-over than of-one-demanding another's
Ceterum, rex, equos decem habui: e quibus Antiphanes
moreover king horses ten I-had of which Antiphanes
octo iam distribuerat iis, qui amiserant suos, omnino
eight already had-distributed to-those who had-lost their-own in-all
duos ipse habebam: quos cum vellet abducere homo
two myself I-had which when he-wished to-take-away a-man
superbissimus, certe iniquissimus, nisi pedes militare vellem,
most-arrogant certainly most-unjust unless on-foot to-serve I-wished
retinere cogebar. Nec infitias eo, liberi hominis animo
to-keep I-was-compelled nor in-denial I-go of-a-free man in-spirit
locutum esse me cum ignavissimo et hoc unum militiae
spoken to-have me with a-most-cowardly-man and this one of-soldiering
ius usurpante, ut alienos equos pugnaturis distribuat.
right usurping that other-men's horses to-those-going-to-fight he-may-distribute
Huc enim malorum ventum est, ut verba mea eodem
to-this for of-evils come it-is that words my at-the-same
tempore et Alexandro excusem et Antiphani! At, hercule,
time both to-Alexander I-excuse and to-Antiphanes but by-Hercules
mater de nobis inimicis tuis scripsit. Utinam prudentius
your-mother about us as-enemies your wrote would-that more-wisely
esset sollicita pro filio et non inanes quoque species
she-were anxious for her-son and not empty also phantoms
anxio animo figuraret! Quare enim non ascribit metus
with-anxious mind would-shape why for not does-she-add of-fear
sui causam? denique non ostendit auctorem? Quo facto
her-own the-cause finally not does-she-show the-author by-what deed
dictove nostro mota tam trepidas tibi litteras scripsit? O
or-word our moved so alarmed to-you a-letter she-wrote O

miseram condicionem meam, quia forsitan non periculosius
wretched condition my because perhaps not more-dangerous
est tacere quam dicere! Sed utcumque cessura res
it-is to-be-silent than to-speak but however going-to-turn-out the-matter
est, malo tibi defensionem meam displicere quam causam.
is I-prefer to-you defense my to-displease than my-case
Agnosces autem, quae dicturus sum: quippe meministi,
you-will-recognize moreover what going-to-say I-am for you-remember
cum me ad perducendos ex Macedonia milites mitteres,
when me for bringing from Macedonia soldiers you-sent
dixisse te, multos integros iuvenes in domo tuae matris
to-have-said you many sound young-men in the-house of-your mother
abscondi. Praecepisti igitur mihi, ne quem praeter te intuerer,
to-be-hidden you-instructed therefore me not anyone besides you to-regard
sed detrectantes militiam perducerem ad te. Quod equidem
but those-shirking service to-bring to you which indeed
feci et liberius, quam expediebat mihi, executus sum tuum
I-did and more-freely than was-expedient to-me carried-out I-have your
imperium. Gorgiam et Hecataeum et Gorgidan, quorum
command Gorgias and Hecataeus and Gorgidas whose
bona opera uteris, inde perduxi. Quid igitur iniquius est
good services you-use thence I-brought what then more-unjust is
quam me, qui, si tibi non paruissem, iure daturus fui
than me who if to-you not I-had-obeyed rightly going-to-pay I-was
poenas, nunc perire, quia parui? Neque enim ulla alia
the-penalty now to-perish because I-obeyed nor for any other
matri tuae persequendi nos causa est, quam quod utilitatem
to-mother your of-pursuing us reason is than that advantage
tuam muliebri praeposuimus gratiae. VI milia Macedonum
your to-a-woman's we-preferred favor six thousand of-Macedonians
peditum et DC equites adduxi: quorum pars secutura
of-infantry and six-hundred horsemen I-brought of-whom part going-to-follow

me non erat, si militiam detrectantibus indulgere voluissem.
me not was if service to-those-shirking to-indulge I-had-wished
Sequitur ergo, ut, quia illa propter hanc causam irascitur
it-follows therefore that because she for this reason is-angry
nobis, tu mitiges matrem, qui irae eius nos obtulisti.'
with-us you should-soften your-mother who to-the-anger her us have-exposed

II · THE DEATH OF PARMENIO

Polemon, who fled, is brought back; he weeps, Amyntas rebukes him, and the assembly and the king's friends plead for the brothers. Alexander acquits them all. He sends Polydamas in Arab dress to Media with letters, and Cleander and the other generals cut down Parmenio in a grove as he reads them. The soldiers riot until they hear the king's letter. Alexander gathers those whose letters home complained into a separate cohort, which proves its courage in the wars after.

Dum haec Amyntas agit, forte supervenerunt, qui
while these-things Amyntas does by-chance came-up men-who
fratrem eius Polemonem, de quo ante est dictum,
the-brother his Polemon about whom before it-has-been said
fugientem consecuti vinctum reducebant. Infesta contio
fleeing having-overtaken bound were-bringing-back the-hostile assembly
vix inhiberi potuit, quin protinus suo more saxa
scarcely to-be-restrained could that at-once in-its-own manner stones
in eum iaceret. Atque ille sane interritus: 'Nihil,' inquit,
at him it-should-throw and he quite undaunted nothing he-says
'pro me deprecor, modo ne fratrum innocentiae fuga
for myself I-beg only that-not of-my-brothers to-the-innocence the-flight
inputetur mea. Haec si defendi non potest, meum crimen
be-ascribed my this if to-be-defended not can my crime
sit. Horum ob id ipsum melior est causa, quod
let-it-be of-these on-account-of that very-reason better is the-case because

ego, quia profugi, suspectus sum.' At haec elocuto
I because I-fled suspect am but these-things with-him-having-spoken
universa contio adsensa est: lacrimae deinde omnibus manare
the-whole assembly agreed has tears then from-all to-flow
coeperunt adeo in contrarium repente mutatis, ut
began so-far into the-opposite suddenly with-them-changed that
solum pro eo esset, quod maxime laeserat. Iuvenis
alone for him was what most had-harmed-him a-young-man
erat primo aetatis flore pubescens, quem inter equites
he-was in-the-first of-age flower reaching-puberty whom among the-horsemen
tormentis Philotae conturbatos alienus terror abstulerat:
by-the-tortures of-Philotas disturbed another's terror had-carried-off
desertum eum a comitibus et haesitantem inter revertendi
abandoned him by his-companions and hesitating between of-returning
fugiendique consilium, qui secuti erant, occupaverunt. Is
and-of-fleeing the-plan those-who followed had overtook he
tum flere coepit et os suum converberare, maestus non
then to-weep began and the-face his-own to-beat sorrowful not
suam vicem, sed propter ipsum periclitantium fratrum.
for-his-own plight but because-of himself of-the-imperiled brothers
Moveratque iam regem quoque, non contionem modo, sed
and-he-had-moved now the-king also not the-assembly only but
unus erat inplacabilis frater, qui terribili vultu intuens eum:
one was implacable a-brother who with-terrible face looking-at him
'Tum,' exclamat, 'demens, lacrimare debueras, cum equo
then cries-out madman to-weep you-ought-to-have when to-your-horse
calcaria subderes, fratrum desertor et desertorum
spurs you-were-applying of-your-brothers deserter and of-deserters
comes. Miser, quo et unde fugiebas? Effecisti,
the-companion wretch whither and whence were-you-fleeing you-have-brought-it-about
ut reus capitis accusatoris uterer verbis.' Ille
that a-defendant on-a-capital-charge of-an-accuser I-should-use the-words he

peccasse sese gravius in fratres quam in semetipsum
to-have-sinned himself more-gravely against his-brothers than against himself
fatebatur. Tum vero neque lacrimis neque adclamationibus,
confessed then indeed neither from-tears nor from-shouts
quibus studia sua multitudo profitetur, temperaverunt.
with-which its-sympathies its-own a-multitude declares they-refrained
Una vox erat pari emissa consensu, ut insontibus et
one voice there-was with-equal uttered consent that the-innocent and
fortibus viris parceret. Amici quoque data misericordiae
brave men he-should-spare the-friends also with-given to-pity
occasione consurgunt flentesque regem deprecantur. Ille
an-opportunity rise and-weeping the-king entreat he
silentio facto: 'Et ipse,' inquit, 'Amyntan mea sententia
with-silence made and I-myself he-says Amyntas by-my verdict
fratresque eius absolvo. Vos autem, iuvenes, malo beneficii
and-the-brothers his acquit you moreover young-men I-prefer of-kindness
mei oblivisci quam periculi vestri meminisse. Eadem
my to-forget than of-danger your to-remember with-the-same
fide redite in gratiam mecum, qua ipse vobiscum
good-faith return into favor with-me with-which I-myself with-you
revertor. Nisi, quae delata essent, excussissem, aliquid de
return unless what reported had-been I-had-examined something about
dissimulatione mea suspicari potuissetis: satius est purgatos
concealment my to-suspect you-could-have better it-is cleared
esse quam suspectos. Cogitate neminem absolvi posse,
to-be than suspect consider no-one to-be-acquitted to-be-able
nisi qui dixerit causam. Tu, Amynta, ignosce fratri tuo.
unless who has-pleaded his-case you Amyntas forgive brother your
Erit hoc simpliciter etiam mihi reconciliati animi tui pignus.'
will-be this sincerely also to-me of-a-reconciled mind your the-pledge
Contione deinde dimissa Polydamanta vocari iubet.
with-the-assembly then dismissed Polydamas to-be-called he-orders

Longe acceptissimus Parmenioni erat, proximus lateri in
by-far most-welcome to-Parmenio he-was nearest to-his-flank in
acie stare solitus. Et quamquam conscientia fretus in
battle to-stand accustomed and although in-conscience trusting into
regiam venerat, tamen, ut iussus est fratres suos exhibere
the-palace he-had-come yet when ordered he-was brothers his-own to-produce
admodum iuvenes et regi ignotos ob aetatem,
very young and to-the-king unknown on-account-of age
fiducia in sollicitudinem versa trepidare coepit, saepius,
with-his-confidence into anxiety turned to-tremble he-began more-often
quae nocere possent, quam, quibus eluderet, reputans.
what to-harm could than by-what he-might-evade-it reckoning
Iam armigeri, quibus imperatum erat, produxerant
now the-armor-bearers to-whom ordered it-had-been had-brought-forward
eos, cum exanguem metu Polydamanta propius accedere
them when bloodless with-fear Polydamas nearer to-approach
iubet summotisque omnibus: 'Scelere,' inquit, 'Parmenionis
he-orders and-with-removed all by-the-crime he-says of-Parmenio
omnes pariter adpetiti sumus, maxime ego ac tu, quos
all alike attacked we-have-been most-of-all I and you whom
amicitiae specie fefellit. Ad quem persequendum
of-friendship under-the-appearance he-deceived for whom pursuing
puniendumque — vide, quantum fidei tuae credam — te
and-punishing see how-much to-loyalty your I-entrust you
ministro uti statui. Obsides, dum hoc peragis, erunt
as-agent to-use I-have-decided hostages while this you-carry-out will-be
fratres tui. Proficiscere in Mediam et ad praefectos meos
the-brothers your set-out into Media and to the-governors my
litteras scriptas manu mea perfer. Velocitate opus est, qua
the-letter written by-hand my carry of-speed need there-is by-which
celeritatem famae antecedas. Noctu pervenire illuc te volo,
the-swiftness of-rumor you-may-outstrip by-night to-arrive there you I-wish

postero die, quae scripta erunt, exequi. Ad Parmeniona
on-the-following day what written will-be to-carry-out to Parmenio
quoque epistulas feres, unam a me, alteram Philotae
also letters you-will-bring one from me the-other of-Philotas
nomine scriptam. Signum anuli eius in mea potestate est. Si
in-the-name written the-seal of-ring his in my power is if
pater credit a filio inpressum, cum te viderit, nihil metuet.'
the-father believes by his-son impressed when you he-sees nothing he-will-fear
Polydamas tanto liberatus metu inpensius etiam, quam
Polydamas from-so-great freed fear more-zealously even than
exigebatur, promittit operam conlaudatusque et promissis
was-demanded promises his-service and-praised and with-promises
oneratus deposita veste, quam habebat, Arabica induitur.
loaded with-laid-aside the-garment which he-had in-an-Arab is-dressed
Duo Arabes, quorum interim coniuges ac liberi, vinculum
two Arabs whose meanwhile wives and children the-bond
fidei, obsides apud regem erant, dati comites. Per
of-good-faith as-hostages with the-king were given as-companions through
deserta etiam ob siccitatem loca camelis undecimo die,
desert even on-account-of dryness places on-camels on-the-eleventh day
quo destinaverat, perveniunt. Et priusquam ipsius nuntiaretur
that he-had-fixed they-arrive and before his-own was-announced
adventus, rursus Polydamas vestem Macedonicam sumit et
arrival again Polydamas the-garment Macedonian takes-up and
in tabernaculum Cleandri — praetor hic regius erat —
into the-tent of-Cleander governor this-man royal was
quarta vigilia pervenit. Redditis deinde litteris constituerunt
at-the-fourth watch comes with-delivered then the-letter they-decided
prima luce ad Parmenionem coire. Iamque ceteris
at-first light to Parmenio to-come-together and-now to-the-rest
quoque litteras regis attulerat, iam ad eum venturi
also the-letter of-the-king he-had-brought now to him going-to-come

erant, cum Parmenioni Polydamanta venisse nuntiaverunt.
they-were when to-Parmenio Polydamas to-have-come they-announced
Qui dum laetatur adventu amici, simulque noscendi,
who while he-rejoices in-the-arrival of-a-friend and-at-the-same-time of-learning
quae rex ageret, avidus — quippe longo intervallo nullam
what the-king was-doing eager for after-a-long interval no
ab eo epistulam acceperat — Polydamanta requiri iubet.
from him letter he-had-received Polydamas to-be-sought orders
Deversoria regionis illius magnos recessus habent amoenosque
the-lodgings of-region that great recesses have and-pleasant
nemoribus manu consitis: ea praecipue regum satraparumque
with-groves by-hand planted that especially of-kings and-of-satraps
voluptas erat. Spatiabatur in nemore Parmenion medius
the-delight was was-strolling in the-grove Parmenio in-the-middle
inter duces, quibus erat imperatum litteris regis,
among the-generals to-whom it-had-been ordered by-the-letter of-the-king
ut occiderent. Agendae autem rei constituerant tempus,
that they-should-kill-him for-doing moreover the-deed they-had-fixed the-time
cum Parmenion a Polydamante litteras traditas legere
when Parmenio from Polydamas the-letter handed-over to-read
coepisset. Polydamas procul veniens ut a Parmenione
had-begun Polydamas from-afar coming when by Parmenio
conspectus est vultu laetitiae speciem praeferente,
seen he-was with-his-face of-joy the-appearance showing
ad conplectendum eum cucurrit mutuaque salutatione
for embracing him ran and-with-mutual greeting
facta Polydamas epistulam a rege scriptam ei tradidit.
made Polydamas the-letter by the-king written to-him handed-over
Parmenion vinculum epistulae solvens, quidnam rex ageret,
Parmenio the-seal of-the-letter loosening what the-king was-doing
requirebat. Ille ex ipsis litteris cogniturum esse respondit.
asked he from the-very letter going-to-learn to-be replied

Quibus Parmenion lectis: 'Rex,' inquit, 'expeditionem parat
with-which Parmenio read the-king he-says an-expedition is-preparing
in Arachosios. Strenuum hominem et numquam cessantem!
against the-Arachosians an-energetic man and never resting
Sed tempus saluti suae tanta iam parta gloria parcere.'
but time for-safety his-own with-so-great now won glory to-spare
Alteram deinde epistulam Philotae nomine scriptam laetus,
the-other then letter of-Philotas in-the-name written glad
quod ex vultu notari poterat, legebat: tum eius latus
as from his-face to-be-noted could he-was-reading then his side
gladio haurit Cleander, deinde iugulum ferit, ceteri
with-a-sword pierces Cleander then his-throat strikes the-rest
exanimum quoque confodiunt. Et armigeri, qui ad primum
the-lifeless-man also stab and the-armor-bearers who at the-first
aditum nemoris adstiterant, cognita caede, cuius causa
entrance of-the-grove had-stood with-learned the-murder whose cause
ignorabatur, in castra perveniunt et tumultuoso nuntio
was-unknown into the-camp come and with-tumultuous news
milites concitant. Illi armati ad nemus, in quo perpetrata
the-soldiers rouse they armed to the-grove in which perpetrated
caedes erat, coeunt et, ni Polydamas ceterique eiusdem
the-murder had-been gather and unless Polydamas and-the-others of-the-same
noxae participes dedantur, murum circumdatum nemori
guilt sharers be-surrendered the-wall built-around the-grove
eversuros denuntiant omniumque sanguine duci
going-to-overturn they-declare and-of-all with-the-blood for-the-general
parentaturos. Cleander primores eorum intromitti iubet
going-to-offer-sacrifice Cleander the-chief of-them to-be-let-in orders
litterasque regis scriptas ad milites recitat, quibus insidiae
and-the-letter of-the-king written to the-soldiers reads-out in-which the-plots
Parmenionis in regem precesque, ut ipsum vindicarent,
of-Parmenio against the-king and-the-prayers that him they-should-avenge

continebantur. Igitur cognita regis voluntate non quidem
were-contained therefore with-learned of-the-king the-will not indeed
indignatio, sed tamen seditio conpressa est. Dilapsis pluribus
the-indignation but yet the-mutiny suppressed was with-dispersed most
pauci remanserunt, qui, saltem ut corpus ipsis sepelire
a-few remained who at-least that the-body to-them to-bury
permitterent, precabantur. Diu id negatum est Cleandri
they-should-allow were-begging long it denied was from-Cleander's
metu, ne offenderet regem. Pertinacius deinde precantibus
fear lest he-should-offend the-king more-stubbornly then to-them-begging
materiem consternationis subtrahendam ratus capite deciso
the-material of-the-disturbance to-be-removed thinking with-the-head cut-off
truncum humare permisit: ad regem caput missum est.
the-trunk to-bury he-allowed to the-king the-head sent was
Hic exitus Parmenionis fuit, militiae domique clari viri.
this the-end of-Parmenio was in-war and-at-home of-a-famous man
Multa sine rege prospere, rex sine illo nihil magnae
many-things without the-king successfully the-king without him nothing of-great
rei gesserat. Felicissimo regi et omnia ad fortunae suae
matter had-done to-the-most-fortunate king and all-things to of-fortune his-own
exigenti modum satisfecit. LXX natus annos iuvenis
demanding the-measure he-satisfied seventy having-been-born years of-a-young
ducis et saepe etiam gregarii militis munia explevit: acer
general and often even of-a-common soldier the-duties he-fulfilled keen
consilio, manu strenuus, carus principibus, vulgo
in-counsel in-hand vigorous dear to-the-chief-men to-the-common-people
militum acceptior. Haec inpulerint illum ad regni
of-the-soldiers more-welcome whether-these-things drove him to of-kingship
cupiditatem an tantum suspectum fecerint, ambigi potest,
desire or only suspect made-him to-be-doubted can
quia, Philotas ultimis cruciatibus victus verane dixerit,
because Philotas by-the-last tortures overcome whether-true-things he-said

quae facta probari non poterant, an falsis tormentorum
which as-facts to-be-proved not could or by-falsehoods of-the-tortures
petierit finem, re quoque recenti, cum magis posset
sought the-end with-the-matter also fresh when more it-could
liquere, dubitatum est. Alexander, quos libere mortem
be-clear doubted it-was Alexander those-whom freely the-death
Parmenionis conquestos esse conpererat, separandos a
of-Parmenio lamented to-have he-had-learned to-be-separated from
cetero exercitu ratus in unam cohortem secrevit ducemque
the-rest-of the-army thinking into one cohort set-apart and-as-leader
his Leonidam dedit, et ipsum Parmenioni quondam
to-them Leonidas gave and he-too to-Parmenio once
intima familiaritate coniunctum. Fere idem erant, quos
by-intimate friendship joined almost the-same they-were whom
alioqui rex habuerat invisos. Nam cum experiri vellet
otherwise the-king had-held hateful for when to-test he-wished
militum animos, admonuit, qui litteras in Macedoniam
of-the-soldiers the-minds he-announced that-whoever letters into Macedonia
ad suos scripsisset, iis, quos ipse mittebat, perlaturis
to his-own had-written to-those whom he-himself was-sending going-to-carry-them
cum fide traderet. Simpliciter ad necessarios suos
with good-faith should-hand-them-over frankly to the-kinsfolk his-own
quisque scripserat, quae sentiebat: aliis gravis erat, plerisque
each had-written what he-felt to-some heavy was to-most
non ingrata militia. Ita et agentium gratias et querentium
not unwelcome the-soldiering so both of-those-giving thanks and of-the-complaining
litterae exceptae sunt. Et, qui forte taedium laboris
the-letters intercepted were and those-who by-chance weariness of-toil
per litteras erant questi, hanc seorsus cohortem a
through letters had complained this separately cohort from
ceteris tendere ignominiae causa iubet, fortitudine usurus in
the-rest to-camp for-disgrace's sake he-orders their-courage going-to-use in

bello, libertatem linguae ab auribus credulis remoturus. Id
war the-freedom of-tongue from ears credulous going-to-remove that
consilium, temerarium forsitan — quippe fortissimi iuvenes
plan rash perhaps for the-bravest young-men
contumelia inritati erant—, sicut omnia alia felicitas
by-the-insult provoked had-been as all other-things the-good-fortune
regis excepit. Nihil illis ad bella promptius fuit:
of-the-king took-up nothing than-them for wars readier was
incitabat virtutem et ignominiae demendae cupido et, quia
was-spurring their-valor both of-disgrace to-be-removed the-desire and because
fortia facta in paucis latere non poterant.
brave deeds among few to-lie-hidden not could

III · OVER THE CAUCASUS

Alexander sets Arsames over the Drangae, rewards the Arimaspi for once feeding Cyrus' army, and sends Caranus and Erigyius against Satibarzanes. He subdues the Arachosians, where Parmenio's old army joins him, and crosses the bleak land of the Parapanisadae, where the army suffers frostbite and snow-blindness. Beyond the Caucasus, where legend binds Prometheus to a crag, he founds an Alexandria for seven thousand settlers and his discharged soldiers.

His ita conpositis Alexander Arsame Drangarum satrape
with-these thus settled Alexander with-Arsames of-the-Drangae as-satrap
constituto iter pronuntiari iubet in Arimaspos, quos
appointed the-march to-be-proclaimed orders to the-Arimaspi whom
iam tunc mutato nomine Euergetas appellabant, ex quo
already then with-changed name Euergetae they-called from when
frigore victusque penuria Cyri exercitum adfectum tectis
by-cold and-of-food by-want of-Cyrus the-army afflicted with-shelter
et commeatibus iuverant. Quintus dies erat, ut in eam
and supplies they-had-helped the-fifth day it-was since into that

regionem pervenerat. Cognoscit Satibarzanem, qui ad Bessum
region he-had-come he-learns Satibarzanes who to Bessus
defecerat, cum equitum manu inrupisse rursus in Arios.
had-defected with of-horsemen a-band to-have-burst again into the-Arii
Itaque contra eum misit Caranum et Erigyium cum Artabazo
and-so against him he-sent Caranus and Erigyius with Artabazus
et Andronico: eos VI milia Graecorum peditum, DC
and Andronicus them six thousand of-Greek infantry six-hundred
equites sequebantur. Ipse LX diebus gentem Euergetarum
horsemen followed himself in-sixty days the-nation of-the-Euergetae
ordinavit magna pecunia ob egregiam in Cyrum
organized with-great money on-account-of their-outstanding toward Cyrus
fidem donata. Relicto deinde, qui iis praeesset,
loyalty presented with-left then one-who over-them should-preside
Amedine — scriba is Darei fuerat — Arachosios, quorum
Amedines the-secretary he of-Darius had-been the-Arachosians whose
regio ad Ponticum mare pertinet, subegit. Ibi exercitus,
region to the-Pontic sea reaches he-subdued there the-army
qui sub Parmenione fuerat, occurrit. Sex milia Macedonum
which under Parmenio had-been met-him six thousand of-Macedonians
erant et CC nobiles et V milia Graecorum cum
there-were and two-hundred nobles and five thousand of-Greeks with
equitibus DC, haud dubie robur omnium virium
horsemen six-hundred not doubtfully the-strength of-all of-the-forces
regis. Arachosiis datus Menon praetor IIII milibus
of-the-king to-the-Arachosians was-given Menon as-governor with-four thousand
peditum et DC equitibus in praesidium relictis. Ipse
infantry and six-hundred horsemen in garrison left himself
rex nationem ne finitimis quidem satis notam, quippe
the-king a-nation not to-its-neighbors even sufficiently known for
nullo commercio colentem mutuos usus, cum exercitu intravit.
with-no commerce cultivating mutual dealings with the-army entered

Parapanisadae appellantur, agreste hominum genus et inter
the-Parapanisadae they-are-called a-rustic of-men race and among
barbaros maxime inconditum. Locorum asperitas hominum
barbarians most uncivilized of-the-places the-roughness of-the-men
quoque ingenia duraverat. Gelidissimum septentrionis axem
also the-natures had-hardened the-iciest of-the-north the-pole
ex magna parte spectant, Bactrianis ab occidente coniuncti
from great part they-face to-the-Bactrians on the-west joined
sunt, meridiana regio ad mare Indicum vergit. Tuguria latere
they-are the-southern region to the-sea Indian slopes huts with-brick
crudo struunt et, quia sterilis est terra materia nudo etiam
raw they-build and because barren is the-land of-timber the-bare even
montis dorso, usque ad summum aedificiorum fastigium
of-the-mountain ridge right to the-highest of-the-buildings top
eodem laterculo utuntur. Ceterum structura latior ab imo
the-same brick they-use but the-structure wider from the-bottom
paulatim incremento operis in artius cogitur, ad ultimum
gradually with-the-growth of-the-work into narrower is-drawn-in at the-last
in carinae maxime modum coit. Ibi foramine relicto
into of-a-keel especially the-manner it-meets there with-an-opening left
superne lumen admittunt. Vites et arbores, si quae in tanto
from-above light they-admit vines and trees if any in so-great
terrae rigore durare potuerunt, obruunt penitus: hieme
of-the-earth rigor to-last have-been-able they-bury deep in-winter
defossae latent, cum discussa aperire humum coepit,
buried they-lie-hidden when dispersed to-open the-earth it-has-begun
caelo solique redduntur. Ceterum adeo altae nives
to-the-sky and-to-the-sun they-are-restored but so deep snows
premunt terram gelu et perpetuo paene rigore constrictae, ut
press the-earth by-frost and perpetual almost by-rigor bound that
ne avium quidem feraeve ullius vestigium extet. Obscura
not of-a-bird even or-of-wild-beast any trace exists dark

caeli verius umbra quam lux, nocti similis, premit
of-the-sky more-truly a-shadow than a-light to-night similar presses
terram, vix ut, quae prope sunt, conspici possint. In hac
the-earth scarcely so-that what nearby are to-be-seen can in this
tum omnis humani cultus solitudine destitutus exercitus,
then of-all human cultivation solitude destitute the-army
quidquid malorum tolerari potest, pertulit, inopiam, frigus,
whatever of-evils to-be-endured can endured want cold
lassitudinem, desperationem. Multos exanimavit rigor insolitus
weariness despair many killed the-cold unaccustomed
nivis, multorum adussit pedes, plurimorum oculos. Praecipue
of-snow of-many it-burned the-feet of-very-many the-eyes especially
perniciabilis fuit fatigatis: quippe in ipso gelu deficientia
deadly was to-the-weary for in the-very frost failing
corpora sternebant, quae cum moveri desissent, vis
their-bodies they-laid-down which when to-move they-had-ceased the-force
frigoris ita adstringebat, ut rursus ad surgendum coniti
of-the-cold so bound-them that again for rising to-strive
non possent. A commilitonibus torpentes excitabantur, neque
not they-could by their-comrades the-numb were-roused nor
aliud remedium erat, quam ut ingredi cogerentur: tum
other remedy was than that to-walk they-should-be-compelled then
demum vitali calore moto membris aliquis redibat vigor.
at-last with-vital warmth stirred into-the-limbs some returned vigor
Si qui tuguria barbarorum adire potuerunt, celeriter refecti
if any the-huts of-the-barbarians to-reach could quickly refreshed
sunt. Sed tanta caligo erat, ut aedificia nulla alia res
were but so-great darkness was that the-buildings nothing other thing
quam fumus ostenderet. Illi numquam ante in terris suis
than smoke showed they never before in lands their-own
advena viso cum armatos repente conspicerent, exanimati
with-a-stranger seen when armed-men suddenly they-saw lifeless

metu, quidquid in tuguriis erat, adferebant, ut corporibus
with-fear whatever in the-huts was they-brought that their-bodies
ipsorum parceretur, orantes. Rex agmen circumibat pedes,
themselves be-spared begging the-king the-column went-round on-foot
iacentes quosdam erigens et alios, cum aegre sequerentur,
those-lying some raising and others when with-difficulty they-were-following
adminiculo corporis sui excipiens. Nunc ad prima signa,
with-the-support of-body his-own receiving now at the-first standards
nunc in medio, nunc in ultimo agmine itineris multiplicato
now in the-middle now in the-last column of-the-march with-multiplied
labore aderat. Tandem ad loca cultiora perventum
toil he-was-present at-last to places more-cultivated come
est commeatuque largo recreatus exercitus: simul
it-was and-with-supplies abundant refreshed the-army at-the-same-time
et, qui consequi non potuerant, in illa castra venerunt.
and those-who to-overtake not had-been-able into that camp came
Inde agmen processit ad Caucasum montem, cuius dorsum
thence the-column advanced to the-Caucasus mountain whose ridge
Asiam perpetuo iugo dividit: hinc simul mare,
Asia with-a-continuous chain divides on-this-side at-once the-sea
quod Ciliciam subit, illinc Caspium fretum et amnem
which Cilicia goes-under on-that the-Caspian strait and the-river
Araxen nobiliaque regionis Scythicae deserta spectat. Taurus,
Araxes and-the-famous of-the-region Scythian deserts it-faces the-Taurus
secundae magnitudinis mons, committitur Caucaso: a
of-second size a-mountain is-joined to-the-Caucasus from
Cappadocia se attollens Ciliciam praeterit Armeniaeque
Cappadocia itself raising Cilicia it-passes and-to-Armenia's
montibus iungitur. Sic inter se iuga velut serie
mountains is-joined thus among themselves the-ridges as-if in-a-series
cohaerentia perpetuum habent dorsum, ex quo Asiae omnia
cohering a-continuous have spine from which of-Asia all

fere flumina, alia in Rubrum, alia in Caspium mare,
nearly the-rivers some into the-Red others into the-Caspian sea
alia in Hyrcanium et Ponticum decidunt. XVII dierum
others into the-Hyrcanian and Pontic fall-down in-seventeen days'
spatio Caucasum superavit exercitus. Rupes in eo X in
space the-Caucasus crossed the-army a-crag in it ten in
circuitu stadia conplectitur, IIII in altitudinem excedit,
circuit stades embraces four in height it-exceeds
in qua vinctum Promethea fuisse antiquitas tradidit.
on which bound Prometheus to-have-been antiquity has-handed-down
Condendae in radicibus montis urbi sedes electa est.
for-founding at the-roots of-the-mountain for-a-city a-site chosen was
VII milibus subactarum nationum et praeterea militibus,
to-seven thousand of-subdued nations and besides to-the-soldiers
quorum opera uti desisset, permissum in nova urbe
whose services to-use he-had-ceased permitted-it-was in the-new city
considere. Hanc quoque Alexandream incolae appellaverunt.
to-settle this also Alexandria the-inhabitants called

IV · BESSUS AT TABLE

Bessus feasts and boasts of the war; Gobares the Mede, a magus, warns him to yield with a proverb about a barking dog, and Bessus nearly kills him, so Gobares deserts to Alexander. Bessus' Bactrians leave him, and he crosses the Oxus. Alexander, short of food after the Caucasus, reaches Bactra and hears of a Spartan revolt. Satibarzanes has risen again in Aria, and Erigyius kills him in single combat with a spear through the throat and brings his head to Alexander as the spoil of the war.

At Bessus Alexandri celeritate perterritus dis patriis
but Bessus by-Alexander's speed terrified to-the-gods ancestral
sacrificio rite facto, sicut illis gentibus mos est,
with-a-sacrifice duly made as for-those nations the-custom is

cum amicis ducibusque copiarum inter epulas de bello
with his-friends and-the-generals of-the-forces at the-feast about the-war
consultabat. Graves mero suas vires extollere, hostium
was-consulting heavy with-wine their-own strength to-extol of-the-enemy
nunc temeritatem, nunc paucitatem spernere incipiunt.
now the-rashness now the-fewness to-scorn they-begin
Praecipue Bessus ferox verbis et parto per scelus regno
especially Bessus fierce in-words and with-won by crime the-kingdom
superbus ac vix potens mentis dicere orditur: socordia
arrogant and scarcely master of-his-mind to-speak begins by-the-sloth
Darei crevisse hostium famam. Occurrisse enim in Ciliciae
of-Darius to-have-grown of-the-enemy the-fame to-have-met for in of-Cilicia
angustissimis faucibus, cum retrocedendo posset perducere
the-narrowest jaws when by-retreating he-could to-draw
incautos in loca naturae situ tuta, tot fluminibus
the-unwary into places by-nature's position safe with-so-many rivers
obiectis, tot montium latebris, inter quas deprehensus
placed-across with-so-many of-mountains hiding-places among which caught
hostis ne fugae quidem, nedum resistendi occasionem
the-enemy not of-flight even much-less of-resisting the-opportunity
fuerit habiturus. Sibi placere in Sogdianos recedere:
was going-to-have to-himself to-please into the-Sogdians to-withdraw
Oxum amnem velut murum obiecturum hosti, dum ex
the-Oxus river as-if a-wall going-to-set-against the-enemy while from
finitimis gentibus valida auxilia concurrerent. Venturos
the-neighboring nations strong aid should-flock-together going-to-come
autem Chorasmios et Dahas Sacasque et Indos et ultra
moreover the-Chorasmii and the-Dahae and-the-Sacae and the-Indians and beyond
Tanain amnem colentes Scythas: quorum neminem adeo
the-Tanais river dwelling the-Scythians of-whom none so
humilem esse, ut humeri eius non possent Macedonis
low to-be that the-shoulders his not could of-a-Macedonian

militis verticem aequare. Conclamant temulenti unam hanc
soldier the-crown equal they-shout-together drunk one this
sententiam salubrem esse: et Bessus circumferri merum
opinion wholesome to-be and Bessus to-be-passed-round the-wine
largius iubet debellaturus super mensam Alexandrum. Erat
more-freely orders going-to-defeat over the-table Alexander there-was
in eo convivio Gobares, natione Medus, sed magicae artis —
at that banquet Gobares by-nation a-Mede but of-the-magic art
si modo ars est, non vanissimi cuiusque ludibrium —
if indeed an-art it-is not of-the-emptiest each a-mockery
magis professione quam scientia celeber, alioqui moderatus
more by-profession than by-knowledge famous otherwise moderate
et probus. Is cum praefatus esset, scire servo utilius esse
and upright he when prefaced he-had to-know for-a-slave more-useful to-be
parere dicto quam adferre consilium, cum illos, qui pareant,
to-obey an-order than to-bring advice since those who obey
idem quod ceteros maneat, qui vero suadeant, proprium
the-same as the-rest awaits those-who however advise their-own
subeant periculum: Bessus eum dicere iussit intrepidum,
undergo danger Bessus him to-speak ordered undaunted
poculum etiam, quod habebat in manu, tradidit. Quo
the-cup even which he-had in his-hand he-handed-over with-which
accepto Gobares: 'Natura,' inquit, 'mortalium hoc quoque
received Gobares the-nature he-says of-mortals by-this also
nomine prava et sinistra dici potest, quod in suo
name perverse and unlucky to-be-called can that in his-own
quisque negotio hebetior est quam in alieno. Turbida sunt
each business duller is than in another's confused are
consilia eorum, qui sibi suadent. Obstat metus, alias
the-counsels of-those who themselves advise there-obstructs fear at-other-times
cupiditas, nonnumquam naturalis eorum, quae excogitaveris,
desire sometimes natural of-those-things which you-have-devised

amor: nam in te superbia non cadit. Expertus es utique,
love for in you arrogance not falls found you-have at-any-rate
quod ipse reppereris, aut solum aut optimum ducere.
what yourself you-found either the-only or the-best to-consider
Magnum onus sustines capite, regium insigne: hoc aut
a-great burden you-bear on-your-head the-royal emblem this either
moderate perferendum est, aut, quod abominor, in te ruet.
with-moderation to-be-carried is or what I-pray-not on you will-fall
Consilio, non impetu, opus est.' Adicit deinde, quod apud
of-counsel not of-impetuosity need there-is be-adds then what among
Bactrianos vulgo usurpabant, canem timidum vehementius
the-Bactrians commonly they-used-to-say a-dog timid more-vehemently
latrare quam mordere altissimaque flumina minimo sono
to-bark than to-bite and-the-deepest rivers with-the-least sound
labi. Quae inserui, ut, qualiscumque inter barbaros
to-glide which I-have-inserted that whatever-sort among the-barbarians
potuit esse prudentia, traderetur. His audientium
could have-been wisdom might-be-handed-down by-these of-the-listeners
expectationem suspenderat. Tum consilium aperit utilius
the-expectation he-had-suspended then his-advice discloses more-useful
Besso quam gratius. 'In vestibulo,' inquit, 'regiae tuae
to-Bessus than more-welcome in the-vestibule he-says of-palace your
velocissimus consistit rex: ante ille agmen quam tu mensam
the-swiftest stands a-king sooner he his-column than you table
istam movebis. Nunc ab Tanai exercitum accerses et
that will-move now from the-Tanais an-army you-will-summon and
armis flumina oppones. Scilicet, qua tu fugiturus es,
with-arms rivers you-will-set-against doubtless where you going-to-flee are
hostis sequi non potest. Iter utrique commune est,
the-enemy to-follow not can the-route to-both common is
victori tutius. Licet strenuum metum putes esse,
for-the-victor safer granted energetic fear you-may-think to-be

velocior tamen spes est. Quin validioris occupas gratiam
swifter yet hope is why-not of-the-stronger you-seize the-favor
dedisque te, utcumque cesserit, meliorem fortunam
and-surrender yourself however it-may-turn-out a-better fortune
deditus quam hostis habiturus? Alienum habes
having-surrendered than as-an-enemy going-to-have another's you-have
regnum, quo facilius eo careas. Incipias forsitan
kingdom by-which the-more-easily it you-may-do-without you-may-begin perhaps
iustus esse rex, cum ipse fecerit, qui tibi et dare
rightful to-be king when he-himself has-made-you who to-you both to-give
potest regnum et eripere. Consilium habes fidele, quod
can a-kingdom and to-snatch-away counsel you-have faithful which
diutius exequi supervacuum est. Nobilis equus umbra
longer to-pursue superfluous is a-noble horse by-the-shadow
quoque virgae regitur, ignavus ne calcari quidem concitari
even of-the-whip is-guided a-sluggish-one not by-the-spur even to-be-roused
potest.' Bessus et ingenio et multo mero ferox adeo
can Bessus both by-temper and by-much wine fierce so
exarsit, ut vix ab amicis, quo minus occideret eum, —
blazed-up that scarcely by his-friends by-which less he-should-kill him
nam strinxerat quoque acinacem — contineretur. Certe
for he-had-drawn also his-scimitar he-was-restrained certainly
convivio prosiluit haudquaquam potens mentis. Gobares
from-the-banquet he-leapt not-at-all master of-his-mind Gobares
inter tumultum elapsus ad Alexandrum transfugit. VIII
amid the-uproar having-slipped-away to Alexander deserted eight
milia Bactrianorum habebat armata Bessus. Quae quamdiu
thousand of-Bactrians had armed Bessus who as-long-as
propter caeli intemperiem Indiam potius Macedonas
because-of of-the-climate the-harshness India rather the-Macedonians
petituros crediderant, oboedienter imperata fecerunt: postquam
going-to-seek they-had-believed obediently the-orders carried-out after

adventare Alexandrum conpertum est, in suos quisque
to-be-approaching Alexander learned it-was into their-own each
vicos dilapsi Bessum reliquerunt. Ille cum clientium
villages having-scattered Bessus abandoned he with of-clients
manu, qui non mutaverant fidem, Oxo amne superato
a-band who not had-changed their-loyalty with-the-Oxus river crossed
exustisque navigiis, quibus transierat, ne isdem hostis
and-burned the-boats by-which he-had-crossed lest the-same the-enemy
uteretur, novas copias in Sogdianis contrahebat. Alexander
should-use new forces in the-Sogdians was-gathering Alexander
Caucasum quidem, ut supra dictum est, transierat, sed
the-Caucasus indeed as above said it-has-been had-crossed but
inopia frumenti quoque prope ad famem ventum erat.
by-want of-grain also almost to famine come it-had-been
Suco ex sesima expresso haud secus quam oleo artus
with-juice from sesame pressed not otherwise than with-oil their-limbs
perunguebant, sed huius suci ducenis quadragenis
they-were-anointing but of-this juice at-two-hundred-each forty-each
denariis amphorae singulae, mellis denariis trecenis
denarii the-jars single of-honey at-denarii at-three-hundred-each
nonagenis, trecenis vini aestimabantur: tritici nihil aut
ninety-each three-hundred-each of-wine were-valued of-wheat nothing or
admodum exiguum reperiebatur. Siros vocabant barbari,
very little was-found siros called the-barbarians
quos ita sollerter abscondunt, ut, nisi qui defoderunt,
which so skillfully they-hide that unless those-who dug-them
invenire non possint: in his conditae fruges erant. In quarum
to-find not could in these stored crops were in whose
penuria milites fluviatili pisce et herbis sustinebantur. Iamque
want the-soldiers on-river fish and herbs were-sustained and-now
haec ipsa alimenta defecerant, cum iumenta, quibus
these very foods had-failed when the-pack-animals with-which

onera portabant, caedere iussi sunt: horum carne, dum
loads they-carried to-slaughter ordered they-were on-their flesh until
in Bactrianos perventum est, traxere vitam. Bactrianae
into the-Bactrians come it-was they-drew-out life of-the-Bactrian
terrae multiplex et varia natura est. Alibi multa arbor
land manifold and varied the-nature is elsewhere many a-tree
et vitis largos mitesque fructus alit, solum pingue crebri
and vine abundant and-mellow fruits nourishes the-soil fat frequent
fontes rigant, quae mitiora sunt, frumento conseruntur,
springs water-it which milder are with-grain are-sown
cetera armentorum pabulo cedunt. Magnam deinde partem
the-rest to-the-herds' pasture are-given-over a-great then part
eiusdem terrae steriles harenae tenent: squalida siccitate
of-the-same land barren sands hold squalid with-dryness
regio non hominem, non frugem alit. Cum vero venti
the-region not man not crop nourishes when however the-winds
a Pontico mari spirant, quidquid sabuli in campis iacet,
from the-Pontic sea blow whatever of-sand in the-plains lies
converrunt: quod ubi cumulatum est, magnorum collium
they-sweep-together which when heaped it-is of-great hills
procul species est, omniaque pristini itineris vestigia
from-afar the-appearance is and-all of-the-former route the-traces
intereunt. Itaque, qui transeunt campos, navigantium
perish and-so those-who cross the-plains of-sailors
modo noctu sidera observant, ad quorum cursum iter
in-the-manner by-night the-stars observe by whose course their-route
dirigunt: et propemodum clarior est noctis umbra quam
they-direct and almost clearer is of-night the-shadow than
lux. Ergo interdiu invia est regio, quia nec vestigium,
the-light therefore by-day pathless is the-region because neither a-trace
quod sequantur, inveniunt et nitor siderum caligine
which they-may-follow they-find and the-brightness of-the-stars by-darkness

absconditur. Ceterum si quos ille ventus, qui a mari
is-hidden but if any that wind which from the-sea
exoritur, deprehendit, harena obruit. Sed, qua mitior terra
arises has-caught the-sand overwhelms but where milder the-land
est, ingens hominum equorumque multitudo gignitur. Itaque
is a-huge of-men and-horses multitude is-born and-so
Bactriani equites XXX milia expleverant. Ipsa Bactra,
the-Bactrian horsemen thirty thousand had-made-up itself Bactra
regionis eius caput, sita sunt sub monte Parapaniso.
of-region that the-capital situated is under the-mountain Parapanisus
Bactrus amnis praeterit moenia. Is urbi et regioni dedit
the-Bactrus river passes the-walls it to-the-city and to-the-region gave
nomen. Hic regi stativa habenti nuntiatur ex Graecia
its-name here to-the-king a-standing-camp keeping is-announced from Greece
Peloponnesiorum Laconumque defectio — nondum enim
of-the-Peloponnesians and-Laconians the-revolt not-yet for
victi erant, cum proficiscerentur tumultus eius principia
conquered they-were when they-set-out of-the-uprising its the-beginnings
nuntiaturi — et alius praesens terror adfertur, Scythas,
going-to-announce and another present terror is-brought the-Scythians
qui ultra Tanaim amnem colunt, adventare Besso ferentis
who beyond the-Tanais river dwell to-be-approaching to-Bessus bringing
opem. Eodem tempore, quae in gente Ariorum Caranus et
help at-the-same time what in the-nation of-the-Arii Caranus and
Erigyius gesserant, perferuntur. Commissum erat proelium
Erigyius had-done is-reported joined had-been battle
inter Macedonas Ariosque. Transfuga Satibarzanes barbaris
between the-Macedonians and-the-Arii the-deserter Satibarzanes the-barbarians
praeerat: qui cum pugnam segnem utrimque aequis viribus
commanded who when the-fight sluggish on-both-sides with-equal strength
stare vidisset, in primos ordines adequitavit demptaque
to-stand he-had-seen into the-first ranks rode-up and-with-removed

galea inhibitis, qui tela iaciebant, si quis viritim
helmet with-checked those-who missiles were-throwing if anyone man-to-man
dimicare vellet, provocavit ad pugnam: nudum se caput in
to-fight wished challenged-him to fight bare himself his-head in
certamine habiturum. Non tulit ferociam barbari ducis
the-contest going-to-have not did-bear the-ferocity of-the-barbarian leader
Erigyius, gravis quidem aetate, sed et animi et corporis
Erigyius heavy indeed with-age but both of-mind and of-body
robore nulli iuvenum postferendus. Is galea dempta
in-strength to-none of-the-young-men to-be-ranked-below he with-helmet removed
canitiem ostentans: 'Venit,' inquit, 'dies, quo aut victoria
his-gray-hair showing has-come he-says the-day on-which either by-victory
aut morte honestissima, quales amicos et milites Alexander
or by-death most-honorable what-sort-of friends and soldiers Alexander
habeat, ostendam.' Nec plura elocutus equum in hostem
has I-shall-show nor more having-spoken his-horse against the-enemy
egit. Crederes imperatum, ut acies utraeque tela
drove you-would-believe ordered that the-lines both their-missiles
cohiberent: protinus certe recesserunt dato libero spatio,
should-hold-back at-once certainly they-drew-back with-given free space
intenti in eventum non ducum modo, sed etiam suae
intent on the-outcome not of-the-leaders only but also of-their-own
sortis, quippe alienum discrimen secuturi. Prior barbarus
lot for another's crisis going-to-follow first the-barbarian
emisit hastam: quam Erigyius modica capitis declinatione
hurled his-spear which Erigyius with-a-slight of-the-head bending
evitavit atque ipse infestam sarisam equo calcaribus
avoided and himself his-hostile sarissa with-his-horse by-spurs
concitato in medio barbari gutture ita fixit, ut per
roused into the-middle the-barbarian's throat so fixed that through
cervicem emineret. Praecipitatus ex equo barbarus adhuc
the-neck it-stood-out thrown from his-horse the-barbarian still

tamen repugnabat. Sed ille extractam e vulnere hastam
yet was-fighting-back but he the-drawn from the-wound spear
rursus in os dirigit. Satibarzanes manu conplexus,
again into his-face directs Satibarzanes with-his-hand grasping-it
quo maturius interiret, ictum hostis adiuvit. Et barbari
that the-sooner he-might-die the-blow of-the-enemy helped and the-barbarians
duce amisso, quem magis necessitate quam sponte
with-their-leader lost whom more from-necessity than of-their-own-accord
secuti erant, tunc haud inmemores meritorum Alexandri
followed they-had then not unmindful of-the-services of-Alexander
arma Erigyio tradunt. Rex his quidem laetus, de
their-arms to-Erigyius hand-over the-king by-these indeed glad about
Spartanis haudquaquam securus magno tamen animo defectum
the-Spartans by-no-means untroubled with-great yet spirit the-revolt
eorum tulit, dicens non ante ausos consilia nudare quam
their bore saying not before to-have-dared their-plans to-lay-bare than
ipsum ad fines Indiae pervenisse cognossent. Ipse Bessum
himself to the-borders of-India to-have-come they-had-learned himself Bessus
persequens copias movit: cui Erigyius barbari caput,
pursuing his-forces moved whom Erigyius of-the-barbarian the-head
opimum belli decus, praeferens occurrit.
the-rich of-war glory carrying-before met

V · THE OXUS AND THE BRANCHIDAE

Alexander crosses the Sogdian desert by night and refuses the water two soldiers carry for their sons; at the Oxus more die of drinking than in any battle. Spitamenes, Dataphernes, and Catanes seize Bessus. Alexander razes the Branchidae's town for their ancestors' sacrilege, and Bessus is handed over in chains.

Igitur Bactrianorum regione Artabazo tradita sarcinas et
therefore of-the-Bactrians with-the-region to-Artabazus handed-over the-packs and
inpedimenta ibi cum praesidio relinquit, ipse cum expedito
baggage there with a-guard he-leaves himself with a-light-armed
agmine loca deserta Sogdianorum intrat nocturno itinere
column the-places desert of-the-Sogdians enters by-a-nocturnal march
exercitum ducens. Aquarum, ut ante dictum est, penuria
the-army leading of-waters as before said it-has-been the-want
prius desperatione quam desiderio bibendi sitim accendit. Per
sooner by-despair than by-desire of-drinking the-thirst kindles for
CCCC stadia ne modicus quidem humor existit. Harenas
four-hundred stades not a-modest even moisture appears the-sands
vapor aestivi solis accendit: quae ubi flagrare coeperunt,
the-heat of-the-summer sun kindles which when to-blaze they-have-begun
haud secus quam continenti incendio cuncta torrentur. Caligo
not otherwise than by-a-continuous conflagration all-things are-scorched a-haze
deinde inmodico terrae fervore excitata lucem tegit,
then by-the-immoderate of-the-earth heat roused the-light covers
camporumque non alia quam vasti et profundi aequoris
and-of-the-plains not other than of-a-vast and deep sea
species est. Nocturnum iter tolerabile videbatur, quia
the-appearance is the-nocturnal march bearable seemed because
rore et matutino frigore corpora levabantur. Ceterum cum
by-the-dew and the-morning cold their-bodies were-relieved but when
ipsa luce aestus oritur, omnemque naturalem absorbet
with-the-very light the-heat rises and-all natural absorbs
humorem siccitas: ora visceraque penitus uruntur. Itaque
moisture the-dryness the-mouths and-entrails deep-within are-burned and-so
primum animi, deinde corpora deficere coeperunt: pigebat
first the-spirits then the-bodies to-fail began it-was-irksome
et consistere et progredi. Pauci a peritis regionis admoniti
both to-halt and to-advance a-few by men-skilled of-the-region warned

praepararant aquam: haec paulisper repressit sitim, deinde
had-prepared water this for-a-little checked the-thirst then
crescente aestu rursus desiderium humoris accensum est. Ergo,
with-growing heat again the-desire for-moisture inflamed was therefore
quidquid vini oleique erat omnibus, ingerebatur, tantaque
whatever of-wine and-oil there-was into-all was-poured and-so-great
dulcedo bibendi fuit, ut in posterum sitis non timeretur.
the-sweetness of-drinking was that for the-future the-thirst not was-feared
Graves deinde avide hausto humore non sustinere arma,
heavy then with-greedily drunk moisture not to-bear their-arms
non ingredi poterant, et feliciores videbantur, quos
not to-walk they-could and more-fortunate seemed those-whom
aqua defecerat, cum ipsi sine modo infusam vomitu
the-water had-failed since they-themselves without measure poured-in by-vomiting
cogerentur egerere. Anxium regem tantis malis circumfusi
were-compelled to-throw-up the-anxious king by-so-great evils surrounded
amici, ut meminisset, orabant, animi sui magnitudinem
the-friends that he-should-remember they-begged of-mind his-own the-greatness
unicum remedium deficientis exercitus esse: cum ex iis, qui
the-only remedy of-the-failing army to-be when of those who
praecesserant ad capiendum locum castris, duo occurrunt
had-gone-ahead for taking a-site for-the-camp two meet-him
utribus aquam gestantes, ut filiis suis, quos in eodem
in-skins water carrying that to-sons their-own whom in the-same
agmine esse et aegre pati sitim non ignorabant,
column to-be and with-difficulty to-bear thirst not they-were-unaware
succurrerent. Qui cum in regem incidissent, alter ex his
they-might-help who when on the-king they-had-chanced one of them
utre resoluto vas, quod simul ferebat, inplet
with-the-skin untied the-vessel which at-the-same-time he-was-carrying fills
porrigens regi. Ille accipit: percontatus, quibus aquam
offering-it to-the-king he takes-it having-asked to-whom water

portaret, filiis ferre cognoscit. Tunc poculo pleno,
he-was-carrying for-their-sons to-carry-it he-learns then with-the-cup full
sicut oblatum est, reddito: 'Nec solus,' inquit, 'bibere sustineo
as offered it-was returned neither alone he-says to-drink do-I-endure
nec tam exiguum dividere omnibus possum: vos currite et
nor so little to-divide among-all can-I you run and
liberis vestris, quod propter illos attulistis, date.' Tandem
to-children your what because-of them you-have-brought give at-last
ad flumen Oxum ipse pervenit prima fere vespera. Sed
to the-river Oxus he-himself came at-early about evening but
exercitus magna pars non potuerat consequi: in edito monte
of-the-army a-great part not had-been-able to-keep-up on a-lofty mountain
ignes iubet fieri, ut ii, qui aegre sequebantur,
fires he-orders to-be-made that those who with-difficulty were-following
haud procul castris ipsos abesse cognoscerent, eos
not far from-the-camp themselves to-be-distant might-learn those
autem, qui primi agminis erant, mature cibo ac potione
moreover who of-the-first column were promptly with-food and drink
firmatos inplere alios utres, alios vasa, iis quibuscumque
strengthened to-fill some skins others vessels with-those by-whatever
aqua portari posset, ac suis opem ferre. Sed
water to-be-carried could and to-their-comrades help to-bring but
qui intemperantius hauserant, intercluso spiritu extincti
those-who too-immoderately had-drunk with-blocked breath extinguished
sunt, multoque maior horum numerus fuit, quam ullo
were and-much greater of-these the-number was than in-any
amiserat proelio. At ille thoracem adhuc indutus nec aut
he-had-lost battle but he his-breastplate still wearing nor either
cibo refectus aut potu, qua veniebat exercitus, constitit
with-food refreshed or with-drink where was-coming the-army stood
nec ante ad curandum corpus recessit, quam praeterierat
nor before for tending his-body did-he-withdraw than had-passed

omne agmen, totamque eam noctem cum magno animi
the-whole column and-the-whole that night with great of-mind
motu perpetuis vigiliis egit. Nec postero die laetior
agitation in-perpetual watches he-spent nor on-the-following day more-glad
erat, quia nec navigia habebat nec pons erigi poterat
was-he because neither boats he-had nor a-bridge to-be-built could
terra circum amnem nuda et materia maxime sterili.
with-the-land around the-river bare and of-timber most barren
Consilium igitur, quod unum necessitas subiecerat, init:
the-plan therefore which alone necessity had-suggested he-enters-on
utres quam plurimos stramentis refertos dividit. His
skins as many-as-possible with-straw stuffed he-distributes on-these
incubantes transnavere amnem, quique primi transierant,
lying they-swam-across the-river and-those-who first had-crossed
in statione erant, dum traicerent ceteri. Hoc modo sexto
on guard were while crossed the-rest in-this manner on-the-sixth
demum die in ulteriore ripa totum exercitum exposuit.
at-last day on the-farther bank the-whole army he-landed
Iamque ad persequendum Bessum statuerat progredi, cum
and-now for pursuing Bessus he-had-decided to-advance when
ea, quae in Sogdianis evenerint, cognoscit. Spitamenes
those-things which among the-Sogdians had-happened he-learns Spitamenes
erat inter omnes amicos praecipuo honore cultus a Besso,
was among all the-friends with-especial honor treated by Bessus
sed nullis meritis perfidia mitigari potest, quae tamen
but by-no services treachery to-be-softened can which yet
iam minus in eo invisa esse poterat, quia nihil ulli
now less in him hateful to-be could because nothing to-anyone
nefastum in Bessum, interfectorem regis sui, videbatur.
wicked against Bessus the-killer of-king his-own seemed
Titulus facinori speciosus praeferebatur, vindicta Darei, sed
the-title for-the-deed fair was-held-before the-avenging of-Darius but

fortunam, non scelus oderat Bessi. Namque ut Alexandrum
the-fortune not the-crime he-hated of-Bessus for when Alexander
flumen Oxum superasse cognovit, Dataphernem et Catanen,
the-river Oxus to-have-crossed he-learned Dataphernes and Catanes
quibus a Besso maxima fides habebatur, in societatem
in-whom by Bessus the-greatest trust was-placed into the-partnership
cogitatae rei adsciscit. Illi promptius adnuunt, quam
of-the-planned thing he-admits they more-readily assent than
rogabantur, adsumptisque VIII fortissimis iuvenibus talem
they-were-asked and-with-taken-on eight bravest young-men such
dolum intendunt. Spitamenes pergit ad Bessum et remotis
a-trick they-devise Spitamenes goes to Bessus and with-removed
arbitris conperisse ait se, insidiari ei Dataphernen
witnesses to-have-learned says himself to-be-plotting-against him Dataphernes
et Catanen, ut vivum Alexandro traderent, agitantes:
and Catanes that alive to-Alexander they-might-hand-him-over pondering
a semet occupatos esse et vinctos teneri. Bessus tanto
by himself seized to-be and bound to-be-held Bessus by-so-great
merito, ut credebat, obligatus partim gratias agit, partim
a-service as he-believed obliged partly thanks gives partly
avidus expetendi supplicii adduci eos iubet. Illi manibus
eager of-demanding punishment to-be-brought them orders they with-hands
sua sponte religatis a participibus consilii trahebantur:
of-their-own accord bound by the-sharers of-the-plot were-dragged
quos Bessus truci vultu intuens consurgit manibus non
whom Bessus with-a-savage face looking-at rises his-hands not
temperaturus. Atque illi simulatione omissa circumsistunt
going-to-restrain and they with-the-pretense dropped surround
eum et frustra repugnantem vinciunt derepto ex capite
him and in-vain resisting bind-him with-snatched from his-head
regni insigni lacerataque veste, quam e spoliis occisi
of-kingship the-emblem and-with-torn the-garment which from the-spoils of-the-slain

regis induerat. Ille deos sui sceleris ultores adesse
king he-had-put-on he the-gods his-own of-crime the-avengers to-be-present
confessus adiecit non Dareo iniquos fuisse, quem
having-confessed added not to-Darius unfair to-have-been whom
sic ulciscerentur, sed Alexandro propitios, cuius victoriam
thus they-avenged but to-Alexander favorable whose victory
semper etiam hostes adiuvissent. Multitudo an vindicatura
always even enemies had-helped the-multitude whether going-to-avenge
Bessum fuerit, incertum est, nisi illi, qui vinxerant,
Bessus would-have-been uncertain is unless those who had-bound-him
iussu Alexandri fecisse ipsos ementiti dubios
at-the-order of-Alexander to-have-done themselves falsely-claiming the-wavering
adhuc animi terruissent. In equum inpositum Alexandro
still in-mind had-terrified onto a-horse put to-Alexander
traditurі ducunt. Inter haec rex, quibus matura
going-to-hand-over they-lead-him among these-things the-king for-whom ripe
erat missio, electis nongentis fere bina talenta equiti
was the-discharge with-chosen nine-hundred about two-each talents to-the-horseman
dedit, pediti terna denarium milia monitosque, ut
gave to-the-infantryman three-each of-denarii thousand and-warned that
liberos generarent, remisit domum. Ceteris gratiae actae,
children they-should-beget he-sent-back home to-the-rest thanks were-given
quod ad reliqua belli navaturos operam pollicebantur.
because for the-rest of-the-war going-to-render service they-were-promising
Dum Bessum persequitur, perventum erat in parvulum
while Bessus he-pursues come it-had-been into a-tiny
oppidum. Branchidae eius incolae erant: Mileto quondam
town the-Branchidae its inhabitants were from-Miletus once
iussu Xerxis, cum e Graecia rediret, transierant et
at-the-order of-Xerxes when from Greece he-returned they-had-moved and
in ea sede constiterant, quia templum, quod Didymeon
in that seat had-settled because the-temple which the-Didymeum

appellatur, in gratiam Xerxis violaverant. Mores patrii
is-called for the-favor of-Xerxes they-had-violated the-customs ancestral
nondum exoleverant, sed iam bilingues erant paulatim a
not-yet had-faded but already bilingual they-were gradually from
domestico externo sermone degeneres. Magno igitur gaudio
their-native by-a-foreign tongue degenerate with-great therefore joy
regem excipiunt urbem seque dedentes. Ille Milesios,
the-king they-receive the-city and-themselves surrendering he the-Milesians
qui apud ipsum militarent, convocari iubet. Vetus odium
who with him were-serving to-be-called-together orders an-old hatred
Milesii gerebant in Branchidarum gentem. Proditis
the-Milesians bore against the-Branchidae's race to-the-betrayed
ergo, sive iniuriae sive originis meminisse mallent,
therefore whether the-wrong or their-origin to-remember they-preferred
liberum de Branchidis permittit arbitrium. Variantibus
a-free about the-Branchidae he-allows judgment with-varying
deinde sententiis se ipsum consideraturum, quid optimum
then opinions himself personally going-to-consider what best
factu esset, ostendit. Postero die occurrentibus Branchidis
to-do was showed on-the-following day with-meeting the-Branchidae
secum procedere iubet, cumque ad urbem ventum esset,
with-him to-advance he-orders and-when to the-city come it-was
ipse cum expedita manu portam intrat: phalanx moenia
himself with a-light-armed band the-gate enters the-phalanx the-walls
oppidi circumire iussa et dato signo diripere urbem,
of-the-town to-go-round ordered and with-given signal to-plunder the-city
proditorum receptaculum, ipsosque ad unum caedere. Illi
of-traitors the-refuge and-themselves to one to-slaughter they
inermes passim trucidantur, nec aut commercio linguae
unarmed everywhere are-slaughtered nor either by-the-sharing of-language
aut supplicum velamentis precibusque inhiberi crudelitas
or of-suppliants by-the-veils and-prayers to-be-restrained the-cruelty

potest. Tandem, ut deicerent, fundamenta murorum
can at-last that they-might-throw-down the-foundations of-the-walls
ab imo moliuntur, ne quod urbis vestigium extaret.
from the-bottom they-heave lest any of-the-city trace should-exist
Nemora quoque et lucos sacros non caedunt modo, sed
groves also and woods sacred not they-cut only but
etiam extirpant, ut vasta solitudo et sterilis humus exustis
even uproot that a-vast solitude and barren soil with-burned
etiam radicibus linqueretur. Quae si in ipsos proditionis
even the-roots might-be-left which if against the-very of-the-betrayal
auctores excogitata essent, iusta ultio esse, non crudelitas
authors devised had-been a-just vengeance to-be not cruelty
videretur: nunc culpam maiorum posteri luere, qui ne
it-would-seem now the-guilt of-their-ancestors the-descendants pay who not
viderant quidem Miletum, adeo et Xerxi non potuerant
had-seen even Miletus so-far-were-they and to-Xerxes not could
prodere. Inde processit ad Tanain amnem. Quo perductus
betray from-there he-advanced to the-Tanais river to-where brought
est Bessus non vinctus modo, sed etiam omni velamento
was Bessus not bound only but even of-every covering
corporis spoliatus. Spitamenes eum tenebat collo
of-the-body stripped Spitamenes him was-holding with-around-his-neck
inserta catena, tam barbaris quam Macedonibus gratum
put a-chain as-much to-the-barbarians as to-the-Macedonians a-welcome
spectaculum. Tum Spitamenes: ‘Et te,’ inquit, ‘et Dareum,
spectacle then Spitamenes both you he-says and Darius
reges meos, ultus interfectorem domini sui adduxi,
kings my having-avenged the-killer of-master his-own I-have-brought
eo modo captum, cuius ipse fecit exemplum. Aperiat
in-that manner captured of-which he-himself made the-example let-open
ad hoc spectaculum oculos Dareus! existat ab inferis,
to this spectacle his-eyes Darius let-him-come-forth from the-dead

qui illo supplicio indignus fuit et hoc solacio dignus
who of-that punishment unworthy was and of-this consolation worthy
est!' Alexander multum conlaudato Spitamene conversus ad
is Alexander with-much praised Spitamenes turning to
Bessum: 'Cuius,' inquit, 'ferae rabies occupavit animum
Bessus of-what he-says beast the-madness seized mind
tuum, cum regem de te optime meritum prius vincire,
your when a-king of you best deserving first to-bind
deinde occidere sustinuisti? Sed huius parricidii mercedem
then to-kill you-endured but of-this parricide the-reward
falso regis nomine persolvisti tibi.' Ille facinus purgare
with-false of-king name you-have-paid to-yourself he the-crime to-excuse
non ausus regis titulum se usurpare dixit, ut gentem
not daring of-king the-title himself to-usurp said that the-nation
suam tradere ipsi posset: quippe, si cessasset,
his-own to-hand-over to-him-himself he-might-be-able for if he-had-hesitated
alium fuisse regnum occupaturum. Et Alexander Oxathren,
another to-have-been the-kingdom going-to-seize and Alexander Oxathres
fratrem Darei, quem inter corporis custodes habebat, propius
the-brother of-Darius whom among of-the-body guards he-had nearer
iussit accedere tradique Bessum ei, ut cruci
ordered to-approach and-to-be-handed-over Bessus to-him so-that to-a-cross
adfixum mutilatis auribus naribusque sagittis configerent
fastened with-mutilated ears and-nose with-arrows they-might-transfix-him
barbari adservarentque corpus, ut ne aves quidem
the-barbarians and-should-guard the-body so-that not the-birds even
contingerent. Oxathres cetera sibi curae fore pollicetur:
should-touch-it Oxathres the-rest to-himself a-care going-to-be promises
aves non ab alio quam a Catane posse prohiberi adicit
the-birds not by another than by Catanes to-be-able to-be-kept-off he-adds
eximiam eius artem cupiens ostendere: namque adeo certo
the-exceptional his skill wishing to-show for so with-sure

ictu destinata feriebat, ut aves quoque exciperet. Nunc
aim marked-things he-was-striking that birds even he-would-catch now
forsitan sagittarum celebri usu minus admirabilis videri
perhaps of-arrows by-the-frequent use less admirable to-seem
ars haec possit: tum ingens visentibus miraculum magnoque
art this might then a-huge to-those-seeing marvel and-a-great
honori Catani fuit. Dona deinde omnibus, qui Bessum
honor to-Catanes it-was gifts then to-all who Bessus
adduxerant, data sunt. Ceterum supplicium eius distulit, ut
had-brought given were but the-punishment his he-postponed that
eo loco, in quo Dareum occiderat, ipse necaretur.
in-that place in which Darius he-had-killed he-himself might-be-put-to-death

VI · THE WOUND IN THE LEG

Storming a height, Alexander is shot in the leg, and horse and foot compete to carry his litter. Envoys of the Abian Scythians come, and he sends Derdas to the European Scythians. He takes Cyropolis and other towns, and at the town of the Memaceni he is struck on the neck by a stone. Spitamenes seizes Maracanda, and Menedemus is sent against him. On the Tanais Alexander walls a city, Alexandria, and finishes its houses in seventeen days; captives ransomed from their masters become its people.

Interea Macedones ad petendum pabulum inconposito
meanwhile the-Macedonians for seeking fodder in-disordered
agmine egressi a barbaris, qui de proximis montibus
column having-gone-out by the-barbarians who from the-nearest mountains
decurrerunt, opprimuntur pluresque capti sunt quam occisi:
ran-down are-overwhelmed and-more captured were than killed
barbari autem captivos prae se agentes rursus in
the-barbarians moreover the-captives before themselves driving again into
montem recesserunt. XX milia latronum erant: fundis
the-mountain withdrew twenty thousand of-brigands they-were with-slings

sagittisque pugnam invadunt. Quos dum obsidet rex, inter
and-arrows the-fight they-begin whom while besieges the-king among
promptissimos dimicans sagitta ictus est, quae in medio
the-readiest fighting by-an-arrow struck he-was which in the-middle-of
crure fixa reliquerat spiculum. Illum quidem maesti et
the-leg fixed had-left its-point him indeed sorrowful and
attoniti Macedones in castra referebant, sed nec barbaros
stunned the-Macedonians into the-camp were-carrying-back but nor the-barbarians
fefellit subductus ex acie — quippe ex edito monte
did-it-escape withdrawn from the-line for from a-lofty mountain
cuncta prospexerant—: itaque postero die misere legatos
everything they-had-viewed and-so on-the-following day they-sent envoys
ad regem. Quos ille protinus iussit admitti solutisque
to the-king whom he at-once ordered to-be-admitted and-with-loosened
fasciis magnitudinem vulneris dissimulans crus barbaris
bandages the-size of-the-wound concealing his-leg to-the-barbarians
ostendit. Illi iussi considere adfirmant non Macedonas quam
shows they ordered to-sit-down affirm not the-Macedonians than
ipsos tristiores fuisse cognito vulnere ipsius: cuius si
themselves sadder to-have-been with-learned the-wound his whose if
auctorem repperissent, dedituros fuisse: cum dis enim
the-author they-had-found going-to-surrender to-have-been with gods for
pugnare sacrilegos tantum. Ceterum se gentem in
to-fight the-sacrilegious only but themselves their-nation into
fidem dedere superatos vulnere illius. Rex fide
allegiance to-surrender overcome by-the-wound his the-king with-pledge
data et captivis receptis gentem in deditionem accepit.
given and with-the-captives recovered the-nation into surrender received
Castris inde motis lectica militari ferebatur. Quam
with-the-camp then moved on-a-litter military he-was-carried which
pro se quisque eques pedesque subire certabant:
for himself each horseman and-infantryman to-go-under were-competing

equites, cum quibus rex proelia inire solitus erat,
the-horsemen with whom the-king battles to-enter accustomed had-been
sui muneris id esse censebant, pedites contra,
of-their-own duty that to-be judged the-infantry on-the-other-hand
cum saucios commilitones ipsi gestare adsuevissent,
since wounded comrades they-themselves to-carry had-been-accustomed
eripi sibi proprium officium tum potissimum, cum
to-be-snatched from-them their-own office then especially when
rex gestandus esset, querebantur. Rex in tanto utriusque
the-king to-be-carried was complained the-king in so-great of-each
partis certamine et sibi difficilem et praeteritis gravem
side contest both for-himself difficult and to-the-passed-over grievous
electionem futuram ratus invicem subire eos iussit. Hinc
a-choice going-to-be thinking in-turn to-go-under them ordered from-here
quarto die ad urbem Maracanda perventum est: LXX
on-the-fourth day to the-city Maracanda come it-was seventy
stadia murus urbis amplectitur, arx alio cingitur
stades the-wall of-the-city embraces the-citadel by-another is-girded
muro. Mille praesidio urbis relictis proximos vicos
wall with-a-thousand as-a-garrison of-the-city left the-nearest villages
depopulatur atque urit. Legati deinde Abiorum Scytharum
he-ravages and burns envoys then of-the-Abian Scythians
superveniunt, liberi, ex quo decesserat Cyrus, tum imperata
arrive free since when had-died Cyrus then the-orders
facturi. Iustissimos barbarorum constabat: armis
going-to-do the-most-just of-barbarians it-was-agreed-they-were from-arms
abstinebant nisi lacessiti, libertatis modico et aequali usu
they-abstained unless provoked of-freedom by-moderate and equal use
principibus humiliores pares fecerant. Hos benigne adlocutus
to-the-chief-men the-humbler equals had-made these kindly having-addressed
ad eos Scythas, qui Europam incolunt, Derdam quendam
to those Scythians who Europe inhabit Derdas a-certain

misit ex amicis, qui denuntiaret his, ne Tanain amnem
he-sent from-among the-friends who should-warn them not the-Tanais river
iniussu regis transirent. Eidem mandatum, ut
without-the-order of-the-king they-should-cross the-same-man instructed that
contemplaretur locorum situm et illos quoque Scythas,
he-should-observe of-the-places the-situation and those also Scythians
qui super Bosphorum colunt, viseret. Condendae urbi
who above the-Bosporus dwell he-should-visit for-founding a-city
sedem super ripam Tanais elegerat, claustrum et iam
a-site above the-bank of-the-Tanais he-had-chosen a-barrier both now
perdomitorum et, quot deinde adire decreverat:
of-the-thoroughly-subdued and of-as-many-as then to-approach he-had-decided
sed consilium distulit Sogdianorum nuntiata defectio, quae
but the-plan put-off of-the-Sogdians announced the-revolt which
Bactrianos quoque traxit. VII milia equitum erant, quorum
the-Bactrians also drew seven thousand of-horsemen they-were whose
auctoritatem ceteri sequebantur. Alexander Spitamenen et
authority the-rest followed Alexander Spitamenes and
Catanen, a quibus ei traditus erat Bessus, haud dubius,
Catanes by whom to-him handed-over had-been Bessus not doubtful
quin eorum opera redigi possent in potestatem, qui
that by-their service to-be-brought could into power those-who
novaverant res, iussit accersi. At illi, defectionis, ad
had-made-new things ordered to-be-summoned but they of-the-revolt to
quam coercendam evocabantur, auctores, vulgaverant fama
which to-be-checked they-were-called-out the-authors had-spread by-rumor
Bactrianos equites a rege omnes, ut occiderentur, accersi,
the-Bactrian horsemen by the-king all that they-might-be-killed to-be-summoned
idque imperatum ipsis non sustinuisse tamen exequi, ne
and-that ordered to-themselves not to-have-endured yet to-carry-out lest
inexpiabile in populares facinus admitterent. Non magis
an-inexpiable against their-countrymen crime they-should-commit not more

Alexandri saevitiam quam Bessi parricidium ferre potuisse.
Alexander's cruelty than Bessus' parricide to-bear to-have-been-able
Itaque sua sponte iam motos metu poenae haud
and-so of-their-own accord already moved by-fear of-punishment not
difficulter ad arma concitaverunt. Alexander transfugarum
with-difficulty to arms they-roused Alexander of-the-deserters
defectione conperta Craterum obsidere Cyropolim iubet: ipse
with-the-revolt learned Craterus to-besiege Cyropolis orders himself
aliam urbem regionis eiusdem corona capit, signoque,
another city of-region the-same with-a-ring takes and-with-the-signal
ut puberes interficerentur, dato reliqui in praedam cessere
that the-grown should-be-killed given the-rest into plunder passed
victoris. Urbs diruta est, ut ceteri cladis eius exemplo
of-the-victor the-city destroyed was that the-others of-disaster its by-the-example
continerentur. Memaceni, valida gens, obsidionem non ut
might-be-restrained the-Memaceni a-strong race a-siege not as
honestiorem modo, sed etiam ut tutiorem ferre decreverant: ad
more-honorable only but also as safer to-bear had-decided for
quorum pertinaciam mitigandam rex L equites praemisit,
whose obstinacy to-be-softened the-king fifty horsemen sent-ahead
qui clementiam ipsius in deditos simulque
who the-clemency his-own toward the-surrendered and-at-the-same-time
inexorabilem animum in devictos ostenderent. Illi nec
the-inexorable mind toward the-conquered should-show they neither
de fide nec de clementia regis ipsos dubitare
about the-good-faith nor about the-clemency of-the-king themselves to-doubt
respondent equitesque tendere extra munimenta urbis
answer and-the-horsemen to-camp outside the-fortifications of-the-city
iubent: hospitaliter deinde exceptos gravesque epulis et
order hospitably then received and-heavy with-feasting and
somno intempesta nocte adorti interfecerunt. Alexander haud
sleep at-dead-of night attacking they-killed Alexander not

secus, quam par erat, motus urbem corona circumdedit,
otherwise than proper was moved the-city with-a-ring surrounded
munitiorem, quam ut primo impetu capi posset.
better-fortified than that at-the-first assault to-be-taken it-could
Itaque Meleagrum et Perdiccan in obsidionem iungit:
and-so Meleager and Perdiccas into the-siege joins
ipse ad Craterum pergit Cyropolim, ut ante dictum est,
himself to Craterus proceeds Cyropolis as before said it-was
obsidentem. Statuerat autem parcere urbi conditae a Cyro:
besieging he-had-decided moreover to-spare the-city founded by Cyrus
quippe non alium gentium illarum magis admiratus est
for not another of-the-nations those more admired he-has
quam hunc regem et Samiramin, quos et magnitudine
than this king and Semiramis whom both by-greatness
animi et claritate rerum longe emicuisse credebat. Ceterum
of-mind and by-fame of-deeds far to-have-shone he-believed but
pertinacia oppidanorum iram eius accendit: itaque captam
the-obstinacy of-the-townsfolk the-anger his kindled and-so taken
urbem diripi iussit. Deleta ea Memacenis haud
the-city to-be-plundered he-ordered with-destroyed it to-the-Memaceni not
iniuria infestus ad Meleagrum et Perdiccam redit. Sed non
unjustly hostile to Meleager and Perdiccas returns but not
alia urbs fortius obsidionem tulit: quippe et militum
another city more-bravely a-siege bore for both of-the-soldiers
promptissimi cecidere et ipse rex ad ultimum periculum
the-readiest fell and himself the-king to the-ultimate danger
venit. Namque cervix eius saxo ita icta est, ut oculis
came for the-neck his by-a-stone so struck was that with-his-eyes
caligine offusa conlaberetur, ne mentis quidem compos:
by-darkness overspread he-collapsed not of-mind even master
exercitus certe velut erepto iam eo ingemuit. Sed
the-army certainly as-if with-snatched-away already him groaned but

invictus adversus ea, quae ceteros terrent, nondum
unconquered against those-things which the-rest terrify not-yet
percurato vulnere acrius obsidioni institit naturalem
with-fully-healed the-wound more-keenly the-siege pressed his-natural
celeritatem ira concitante. Cuniculo ergo suffossa moenia
speed with-anger rousing by-a-mine therefore undermined the-walls
ingens nudavere spatium, per quod inrupit, victorque urbem
a-huge laid-bare space through which he-burst-in and-as-victor the-city
dirui iussit. Hinc Menedemum cum tribus milibus
to-be-destroyed ordered from-here Menedemus with three thousand
peditum et DCCC equitibus ad urbem Maracanda misit.
of-infantry and eight-hundred horsemen to the-city Maracanda he-sent
Spitamenes transfuga praesidio Macedonum inde deiecto
Spitamenes the-deserter with-the-garrison of-the-Macedonians from-there driven-out
muris urbis eius incluserat se non adeo oppidanis
within-the-walls of-city that had-shut himself not so-much with-the-townsfolk
consilium defectionis adprobantibus: sequi tamen videbantur,
the-plan of-revolt approving to-follow yet they-seemed
quia prohibere non poterant. Interim Alexander ad Tanain
because to-prevent not they-could meanwhile Alexander to the-Tanais
amnem redit et, quantum soli occupaverat castris,
river returns and as-much of-ground he-had-occupied for-the-camp
muro circumdedit: LX stadiorum urbis murus fuit. Hanc
with-a-wall surrounded of-sixty stades the-city's wall was this
quoque urbem Alexandriam appellari iussit. Opus tanta
also city Alexandria to-be-called he-ordered the-work with-such
celeritate perfectum est, ut XVII die, quam munimenta
speed completed was that on-the-seventeenth day after the-fortifications
excitata erant, tecta quoque urbis absolverentur. Ingens
raised had-been the-roofs also of-the-city were-finished a-huge
militum certamen inter ipsos fuerat, ut suum quisque
of-the-soldiers contest among themselves there-had-been that his-own each

munus — nam divisum erat — primus ostenderet. Incolae
task for divided it-was first should-show as-inhabitants
novae urbi dati captivi, quos reddito pretio dominis
for-the-new city were-given captives whom with-paid price to-their-masters
liberavit: quorum posteri nunc quoque non apud eos tam
he-freed whose descendants now also not among them in-so
longa aetate propter memoriam Alexandri exoleverunt.
long an-age because-of the-memory of-Alexander have-faded

VII · THE OMENS AT THE TANAIS

The Scythian king sends his brother Carthasis to destroy the new city. Alexander, still weak, will cross; Erigyius reports that Aristander found the omens bad. Alexander rebukes Aristander for telling another man, and Aristander soon reports the omens as favorable as he has ever seen. Menedemus, sent against Spitamenes, is ambushed by the Dahae and killed with two thousand foot and three hundred horse. Alexander hides the disaster on pain of death.

At rex Scytharum, cuius tum ultra Tanaim imperium
but the-king of-the-Scythians whose then beyond the-Tanais the-rule
erat, ratus eam urbem, quam in ripa amnis Macedones
was thinking that city which on the-bank of-the-river the-Macedonians
condiderant, suis inpositam esse cervicibus, fratrem,
had-founded on-his-own placed to-be necks his-brother
Carthasim nomine, cum magna equitum manu misit ad
Carthasis by-name with a-great of-horsemen band sent for
diruendam eam proculque amne submovendas Macedonum
destroying it and-far from-the-river to-be-driven-off the-Macedonians'
copias. Bactrianos Tanais ab Scythis, quos Europaeos
forces the-Bactrians the-Tanais from the-Scythians whom European
vocant, dividit, idem Asiam et Europam finis interfluit.
they-call divides the-same Asia and Europe as-boundary flows-between

Ceterum Scytharum gens haud procul Thracia sita ab
but of-the-Scythians the-race not far from-Thrace situated from
oriente ad septentrionem se vertit Sarmatarumque, ut quidam
the-east to the-north itself turns and-of-the-Sarmatians as some
credidere, non finitima, sed pars est. Recta deinde regione
have-believed not neighboring but a-part is in-a-straight then direction
saltum ultra Istrum iacentem colit, ultima Asiae,
the-forest beyond the-Ister lying it-inhabits the-farthest-parts of-Asia
qua Bactra sunt, stringit. Habitant, quae septentrioni
where Bactra is it-touches they-inhabit the-parts-which to-the-north
propiora sunt: profundae inde silvae vastaeque solitudines
nearer are deep from-there forests and-vast solitudes
excipiunt. Rursus quae Tanain et Bactra spectant, humano
take-over again what the-Tanais and Bactra face in-human
cultu haud disparia sunt primis. Cum hac gente non
cultivation not unlike are to-the-first with this race not
provisum bellum Alexander gesturus, cum in conspectu eius
foreseen a-war Alexander going-to-wage when in sight his
obequitaret hostis, adhuc aeger ex vulnere, praecipue voce
rode-up the-enemy still sick from the-wound especially in-voice
deficiens, quam et modicus cibus et cervicis extenuabat
failing which both the-modest food and of-the-neck was-weakening
dolor, amicos in consilium advocari iubet. Terrebat eum
the-pain his-friends into council to-be-called orders frightened him
non hostis, sed iniquitas temporis: Bactriani defecerant,
not the-enemy but the-unfairness of-the-time the-Bactrians had-defected
Scythae etiam lacessebant, ipse non insistere in terra,
the-Scythians even were-provoking-him he not to-stand on the-ground
non equo vehi, non docere, non hortari suos poterat.
not on-a-horse to-be-carried not to-instruct not to-exhort his-men could
Ancipiti periculo inplicitus deos quoque incusans querebatur,
in-a-twofold danger entangled the-gods also accusing he-complained

se iacere segnem, cuius velocitatem nemo antea valuisset
himself to-lie idle whose speed no-one before had-been-able
effugere: vix suos credere non simulari valitudinem.
to-escape scarcely his-men to-believe not to-be-feigned his-illness
Itaque, qui post Dareum victum hariolos et vates consulere
and-so he-who after Darius conquered soothsayers and seers to-consult
desierat, rursus ad superstitionem, humanarum mentium
had-ceased again to superstition of-human minds
ludibrium, revolutus Aristandrum, cui credulitatem suam
the-mockery reverting Aristander to-whom credulity his-own
addixerat, explorare eventum rerum sacrificiis iubet. Mos
he-had-given-over to-find-out the-outcome of-things by-sacrifices orders the-custom
erat haruspicibus exta sine rege spectare et, quae
was for-the-haruspices the-entrails without the-king to-inspect and what
portenderentur, referre. Inter haec rex, dum fibris
was-portended to-report among these-things the-king while in-the-entrails
pecudum explorantur eventus latentium rerum, propius
of-the-cattle are-explored the-outcomes of-hidden things nearer
ipsum considere de industria amicos iubet, ne contentione
himself to-sit on purpose his-friends orders lest by-the-straining
vocis cicatricem infirmam adhuc rumperet. Hephaestio et
of-his-voice the-scar weak still he-should-break Hephaestion and
Craterus et Erigyius erant cum custodibus in tabernaculum
Craterus and Erigyius were with the-guards into the-tent
admissi. 'Discrimen,' inquit, 'me occupavit meliore hostium
admitted the-crisis he-says me has-seized at-a-better for-the-enemy
quam meo tempore: sed necessitas ante rationem est, maxime
than for-me time but necessity before reason is especially
in bello, quo raro permittitur tempora eligere. Defecere
in war in-which rarely it-is-permitted the-times to-choose have-defected
Bactriani, in quorum cervicibus stamus, et, quantum in nobis
the-Bactrians on whose necks we-stand and how-much in us

animi sit, alieno Marte experiuntur. Haud dubia fortuna:
of-spirit there-is by-another's Mars they-are-testing not doubtful the-fortune
si omiserimus Scythas ultro arma inferentes, contempti ad
if we-pass-over the-Scythians voluntarily arms bringing despised to
illos, qui defecerunt, revertemur: si vero Tanaim transierimus
those who have-defected we-shall-return if however the-Tanais we-cross
et ubique invictos esse nos Scytharum pernicie ac sanguine
and everywhere unconquered to-be us by-the-Scythians' destruction and blood
ostenderimus, quis dubitabit parere etiam Europae victoribus?
we-show who will-doubt to-obey even of-Europe to-the-victors
Fallitur, qui terminos gloriae nostrae metitur spatio, quod
he-is-deceived who the-bounds of-glory our measures by-the-space which
transituri sumus. Unus amnis interfluit: quem si traicimus,
going-to-cross we-are one river flows-between which if we-cross
in Europam arma proferimus. Et quanti aestimandum
into Europe arms we-carry-forward and how-much to-be-valued
est, dum Asiam subigimus, in alio quodammodo orbe
is-it while Asia we-subdue in another in-a-way world
tropaea statuere et, quae tam longo intervallo natura videtur
trophies to-set-up and what by-so long an-interval nature seems
diremisse, una victoria subito committere? At, hercule, si
to-have-separated by-one victory suddenly to-join but by-Hercules if
paulum cessaverimus, in tergis nostris Scythae haerebunt.
a-little we-delay on backs our the-Scythians will-cling
An soli sumus, qui flumina transnare possumus? Multa
or alone are-we who rivers to-swim-across can many-things
in nosmetipsos recident, quibus adhuc vicimus. Fortuna
upon ourselves will-fall-back by-which till-now we-have-conquered fortune
belli artem victos quoque docet. Utribus amnem traiciendi
of-war the-art the-conquered also teaches with-skins a-river of-crossing
exemplum fecimus nuper: hoc ut Scythae imitari nesciant,
the-example we-made recently this that the-Scythians to-imitate not-know

Bactriani docebunt. Praeterea unus gentis huius exercitus
the-Bactrians will-teach besides one of-race this army
adhuc venit, ceteri expectantur. Ita bellum vitando alemus
so-far has-come the-others are-awaited so the-war by-avoiding we-shall-feed
et, quod inferre possumus, accipere cogemur. Manifesta
and what to-bring we-can to-receive we-shall-be-compelled plain
est consilii mei ratio: sed, an permissuri sint mihi
is of-plan my the-reasoning but whether going-to-allow are me
Macedones animo uti meo, dubito, quia, ex quo hoc vulnus
the-Macedonians mind to-use my I-doubt because from which this wound
accepi, non equo vectus sum, non pedibus ingressus.
I-received not on-a-horse carried have-I-been not on-foot walked
Sed si me sequi vultis, valeo, amici. Satis virium est
but if me to-follow you-wish I-am-well friends enough of-strength there-is
ad toleranda ista: aut, si iam adest vitae meae finis, in
for enduring these-things or if now is-at-hand of-life my the-end in
quo tandem opere melius extinguar?' Haec quassa adhuc
what pray work better could-I-die these-things in-shaken still
voce subdeficiens vix proximis exaudientibus dixerat,
voice half-failing scarcely with-the-nearest hearing he-had-said
cum omnes a tam praecipiti consilio regem deterrere
when all from so headlong a-plan the-king to-deter
coeperunt, Erigyius maxime, qui haud sane auctoritate
began Erigyius most who not at-all by-authority
proficiens apud obstinatum animum superstitionem, cuius
prevailing with an-obstinate mind superstition of-which
potens non erat rex, incutere temptavit dicendo, deos
master not was the-king to-instill tried by-saying the-gods
quoque obstare consilio magnumque periculum, si flumen
also to-oppose the-plan and-great danger if the-river
transisset, ostendi. Intranti Erigyio tabernaculum regis
he-crossed to-be-shown entering to-Erigyius the-tent of-the-king

Aristander occurrerat tristia exta fuisse significans: haec
Aristander had-met sad entrails to-have-been indicating these-things
ex vate conperta Erigyius nuntiabat. Quo inhibito
from the-seer learned Erigyius was-reporting with-whom checked
Alexander non ira solum, sed etiam pudore confusus,
Alexander not by-anger only but also by-shame confused
quod superstitio, quam celaverat, detegebatur, Aristandrum
that the-superstition which he-had-concealed was-exposed Aristander
vocari iubet. Qui ut venit, intuens eum: 'Non rex,'
to-be-called orders who when he-came looking-at him not as-king
inquit, 'sed privatus clam, sacrificium ut faceres,
he-says but as-private-man secretly a-sacrifice that you-should-make
mandavi: quid eo portenderetur, cur apud alium quam
I-commissioned what by-it was-portended why before another than
apud me professus es? Erigyius arcana mea et secreta
before me declared you-have Erigyius secrets my and secret-things
te prodente cognovit, quem certum, mehercule, habeo
with-you betraying has-learned whom sure by-Hercules I-hold
extorum interprete uti metu suo. Tibi autem, qui sapis,
of-the-entrails as-interpreter to-use fear his-own to-you moreover who are-wise
quam potest, denuntio, ipsi mihi indices, quid ex eis
as-much-as is-possible I-declare yourself to-me you-should-tell what from them
cognoveris, ne possis infitiari dixisse, quae dixeris.' Ille
you-have-learned lest you-be-able to-deny to-have-said what you-have-said he
exanguis attonitoque similis stabat per metum etiam
bloodless and-to-a-stunned-man like stood through fear even
voce suppressa tandemque eodem metu stimulante,
with-his-voice suppressed and-at-last with-the-same fear spurring
ne regis expectationem moraretur: 'Magni,' inquit, 'laboris,
lest the-king's expectation he-should-delay of-great he-says toil
non inriti discrimen instare praedixi: nec me tam
not fruitless a-crisis to-be-imminent I-foretold nor me so-much

ars mea quam benivolentia tua perturbat. Infirmitatem
art my as goodwill your disturbs the-infirmity
valitudinis tuae video et, quantum in uno te sit, scio:
of-health your I-see and how-much in one you there-is I-know
vereor, ne praesenti fortunae tu sufficere non possis.' Rex
I-fear lest for-the-present fortune you to-be-equal not can the-king
iussit eum confidere felicitati suae: ut alias sibi
ordered him to-trust in-good-fortune his-own as at-other-times to-himself
ait gloriam concedere deos. Consultanti inde cum isdem,
he-says glory to-grant the-gods to-him-consulting then with the-same
quonam modo flumen transirent, supervenit Aristander non
in-what manner the-river they-should-cross came-up Aristander not
alias laetiora exta vidisse se adfirmans, utique
at-other-times more-joyful entrails to-have-seen himself affirming certainly
prioribus longe diversa: tum sollicitudinis causas adparuisse,
from-the-former far different then of-anxiety causes to-have-appeared
nunc prorsus egregie litatum esse. Ceterum, quae
now altogether outstandingly favorably-sacrificed to-have-been but what
subinde nuntiata sunt regi, continuae felicitati rerum
soon-after announced were to-the-king on-the-continuous good-fortune of-affairs
eius inposuerant labem. Menedemum, ut supra dictum est,
his had-put a-blemish Menedemus as above said it-is
miserat ad obsidendum Spitamenen, Bactrianae defectionis
he-had-sent for besieging Spitamenes of-the-Bactrian revolt
auctorem: qui conperto hostis adventu, ne muris
the-author who with-learned of-the-enemy the-coming lest within-the-walls
urbis includeretur, simul fretus excipi posse, qua
of-the-city he-should-be-shut-in at-the-same-time trusting to-be-caught to-be-able where
eum venturum sciebat, consedit occultus. Silvestre iter aptum
him going-to-come he-knew sat-down hidden a-wooded route suited
insidiis tegendis erat: ibi Dahas condidit. Equi binos
to-ambushes to-be-concealed was there the-Dahae he-hid the-horses two-each

armatos vehunt, quorum invicem singuli repente desiliunt et
armed-men carry of-whom in-turn one-each suddenly leap-down and
equestris pugnae ordinem turbant. Equorum velocitati par
of-cavalry battle the-order disturb of-the-horses to-the-speed equal
est hominum pernicitas. Hos Spitamenes saltum circumire
is of-the-men the-nimbleness these Spitamenes the-forest to-go-round
iussos pariter et a lateribus et a fronte et a tergo
ordered alike both from the-flanks and from the-front and from the-rear
hosti ostendit. Menedemus undique inclusus, ne numero
to-the-enemy shows Menedemus on-all-sides shut-in not in-number
quidem par, diu tamen resistit clamitans nihil aliud superesse
even equal long yet resists shouting nothing else to-remain
locorum fraude deceptis quam honestae mortis
of-the-places by-the-treachery to-those-deceived than of-an-honorable death
solacium ex hostium caede. Ipsum praevalens equus
the-consolation from of-the-enemy the-slaughter him a-very-strong horse
vehebat, quo saepius in cuneos barbarorum effusis
was-carrying on-which more-often into the-wedges of-the-barbarians with-loosened
habenis evectus magna strage eos fuderat. Sed cum
reins having-charged with-great slaughter them he-had-routed but since
unum omnes peterent, multis vulneribus exanguis Hypsiclem
one-man all were-attacking by-many wounds bloodless Hypsicles
quendam ex amicis hortatus est, ut in equum suum
a-certain from the-friends urged he-has that onto horse his-own
escenderet et se fuga eriperet. Haec agentem
he-should-mount and himself by-flight should-snatch-away these-things him-doing
anima defecit, corpusque ex equo defluxit in terram.
his-breath failed and-the-body from the-horse slid onto the-ground
Hypsicles poterat quidem effugere, sed amisso amico mori
Hypsicles could indeed to-escape but with-lost his-friend to-die
statuit. Una erat cura, ne inultus occideret: itaque
he-decided one was care that-not unavenged he-should-fall and-so

subditis calcaribus equo in medios hostis se inmisit
with-applied spurs to-the-horse into the-midst-of the-enemy himself he-sent
et memorabili edita pugna obrutus telis est. Quod
and with-a-memorable given fight overwhelmed by-missiles he-was which
ubi videre, qui caedi supererant, tumulum paulo
when saw those-who the-slaughter survived a-mound a-little
quam cetera editiorem capiunt: quos Spitamenes fame
than the-rest higher they-take whom Spitamenes by-hunger
in deditionem subacturus obsedit. Cecidere eo proelio
into surrender going-to-subdue besieged there-fell in-that battle
peditum II milia, CCC equites. Quam cladem Alexander
of-infantry two thousand three-hundred horsemen which disaster Alexander
sollerti consilio texit, morte denuntiata his, qui ex
by-a-skillful plan covered with-death threatened to-those who from
proelio advenerant, si acta vulgassent.
the-battle had-arrived if what-was-done they-should-spread

VIII · THE SCYTHIAN ENVOYS

Alexander spends the night in his tent weighing the crossing, and at dawn goes out to the soldiers, who now demand the war; he announces that he will cross on rafts and skins, and the rafts are built in three days. Twenty Scythian envoys arrive, and the eldest speaks: Alexander covets what he cannot hold; the Scythians' gifts are a yoke of oxen, a plow, an arrow, a spear, and a bowl; they are hard to catch and better as friends than as enemies at his border. Let him choose.

Ceterum cum animo disparem vultum diutius ferre non
but since to-his-mind a-differing face longer to-bear not
posset, in tabernaculum super ripam fluminis de industria
he-could into his-tent above the-bank of-the-river on purpose
locatum secessit. Ibi sine arbitris singula animi consulta
placed he-withdrew there without witnesses each his-mind's resolutions

pensando noctem vigiliis extraxit saepe pellibus tabernaculi
by-weighing the-night in-vigils he-drew-out often with-the-hides of-the-tent
adlevatis, ut conspiceret hostium ignes, e quibus coniectare
raised that he-might-see of-the-enemy the-fires from which to-guess
poterat, quanta hominum multitudo esset. Iamque lux
he-could how-great of-men the-multitude was and-now the-light
adpetebat, cum thoracem indutus procedit ad milites,
was-approaching when in-his-breastplate dressed he-comes-forward to the-soldiers
tum primum post vulnus proxime acceptum. Tanta
then for-the-first-time after the-wound most-recently received so-great
erat apud eos veneratio regis, ut facile periculi, quod
was among them the-veneration of-the-king that easily of-the-danger which
horrebant, cogitationem praesentia eius excuteret. Laeti ergo
they-dreaded the-thought the-presence his shook-off glad therefore
et manantibus gaudio lacrimis consalutant eum et, quod
and with-flowing from-joy tears they-salute him and what
ante recusaverant bellum, feroces deposcunt. Ille se ratibus
before they-had-refused the-war fierce they-demand he himself on-rafts
equitem phalangemque transportaturum esse pronuntiat,
the-horsemen and-the-phalanx going-to-carry-across to-be proclaims
super utres iubet nare levius armatos. Plura nec
on skins he-orders to-swim the-more-lightly armed more neither
dici res desideravit nec rex dicere per valitudinem
to-be-said the-matter required nor the-king to-say through his-illness
potuit. Ceterum tanta alacritate militum rates iunctae
could but with-such eagerness of-the-soldiers the-rafts joined
sunt, ut intra triduum ad XII milia effecta sint. Iamque
were that within three-days about twelve thousand made were and-now
ad transeundum omnia aptaverant, cum legati Scytharum
for crossing everything they-had-fitted when envoys of-the-Scythians
XX more gentis per castra equis vecti nuntiare
twenty in-the-manner of-the-nation through the-camp on-horses carried to-announce

iubent regi, velle ipsos ad eum mandata perferre.
order to-the-king to-wish themselves to him a-message to-convey
Admissi in tabernaculum iussique considere in vultu regis
admitted into the-tent and-ordered to-sit on the-face of-the-king
defixerant oculos: credo, quis magnitudine corporis animum
they-had-fixed their-eyes I-believe to-whom by-the-size of-the-body the-mind
aestimantibus modicus habitus haudquaquam famae par
judging the-modest bearing by-no-means to-his-fame equal
videbatur. Scythis autem non, ut ceteris barbaris, rudis
seemed to-the-Scythians however not as to-the-other barbarians rough
et inconditus sensus est: quidam eorum sapientiam quoque
and uncivilized the-sense is some of-them wisdom also
capere dicuntur, quantamcumque gens capit semper armata.
to-grasp are-said as-much-as a-race grasps always armed
Sic, quae locutos esse apud regem memoriae proditum
thus what spoken to-have before the-king to-memory handed-down
est, abhorrent forsitan moribus oratoribusque nostris et
it-is shrink-from perhaps from-the-customs and-orators our both
tempora et ingenia cultiora sortitis. Sed, ut possit
times and talents more-cultivated having-obtained but though could
oratio eorum sperni, tamen fides nostra non debet:
the-speech their to-be-scorned yet the-good-faith our not ought
quae, utcumque sunt tradita, incorrupta proferemus. Igitur
which however they-are handed-down uncorrupted we-shall-set-forth therefore
unum ex his maximum natu locutum accepimus: ‘Si di
one of them the-greatest by-birth to-have-spoken we-have-heard if the-gods
habitum corporis tui aviditati animi parem esse voluissent,
the-build of-body your to-the-greed of-mind equal to-be had-wished
orbis te non caperet: altera manu Orientem, altera
the-world you not would-contain with-one hand the-East with-the-other
Occidentem contingeres et hoc adsecutus scire velles,
the-West you-would-touch and this having-attained to-know you-would-wish

ubi tanti numinis fulgor conderetur. Sic quoque
where of-so-great a-deity the-brightness is-hidden thus also
concupiscis, quae non capis. Ab Europa petis Asiam, ex
you-covet what not you-contain from Europe you-seek Asia from
Asia transis in Europam: deinde, si humanum genus omne
Asia you-cross into Europe then if the-human race all
superaveris, cum silvis et nivibus et fluminibus ferisque
you-shall-have-overcome with woods and snows and rivers and-wild
bestiis gesturus es bellum. Quid? tu ignoras arbores
beasts going-to-wage you-are war what do-you not-know trees
magnas diu crescere, una hora extirpari? Stultus est, qui
great long to-grow in-one hour to-be-uprooted foolish is he-who
fructus earum spectat, altitudinem non metitur. Vide, ne,
the-fruits of-them watches the-height not measures see lest
dum ad cacumen pervenire contendis, cum ipsis ramis, quos
while to the-top to-arrive you-strive with the-very branches which
conprehenderis, decidas. Leo quoque aliquando minimarum
you-have-grasped you-fall-down the-lion also sometimes of-the-smallest
avium pabulum fuit, et ferrum robigo consumit. Nihil
birds the-food has-been and iron rust consumes nothing
tam firmum est, cui periculum non sit etiam ab
so firm is for-which danger not there-is even from
invalido. Quid nobis tecum est? Numquam terram tuam
the-weak what to-us with-you is never land your
attigimus. Quis sis, unde venias, licetne ignorare in
have-we-touched who you-are whence you-come is-it-allowed to-be-ignorant in
vastis silvis viventibus? Nec servire ulli possumus nec
vast woods to-those-living neither to-serve anyone can-we nor
imperare desideramus. Dona nobis data sunt, ne Scytharum
to-command do-we-desire gifts to-us given are lest of-the-Scythians
gentem ignores, iugum boum et aratrum, sagitta, hasta,
the-race you-not-know a-yoke of-oxen and a-plow an-arrow a-spear

patera. His utimur et cum amicis et adversus inimicos.
a-bowl these we-use both with friends and against enemies
Fruges amicis damus boum labore quaesitas, patera cum
crops to-friends we-give of-oxen by-the-labor sought with-the-bowl with
isdem vinum dis libamus, inimicos sagitta eminus,
the-same wine to-the-gods we-pour enemies with-the-arrow from-afar
hasta comminus petimus. Sic Syriae regem et postea
with-the-spear hand-to-hand we-attack thus of-Syria the-king and afterward
Persarum Medorumque superavimus, patuitque nobis iter
of-the-Persians and-Medes we-overcame and-lay-open to-us the-route
usque in Aegyptum. At tu, qui te gloriaris ad latrones
right into Egypt but you who yourself boast for brigands
persequendos venire, omnium gentium, quas adisti,
pursuing to-come of-all the-nations which you-have-approached
latro es. Lydiam cepisti, Syriam occupasti, Persidem
the-brigand are Lydia you-took Syria you-seized Persis
tenes, Bactrianos habes in potestate, Indos petisti:
you-hold the-Bactrians you-have in power the-Indians you-have-sought
iam etiam ad pecora nostra avaras et insatiabiles manus
now even to flocks our greedy and insatiable hands
porrigis. Quid tibi divitiis opus est, quae esurire te
you-stretch what for-you of-riches need is which to-hunger you
cogunt? Primus omnium satietate parasti famem, ut,
compel first of-all by-surfeit you-have-prepared hunger so-that
quo plura haberes, acrius, quae non habes, cuperes.
the more-things you-had the-more-keenly what not you-have you-might-desire
Non succurrit tibi, quam diu circum Bactra haereas? Dum
not does-it-occur to-you how long around Bactra you-stick while
illos subigis, Sogdiani bellare coeperunt. Bellum tibi ex
them you-subdue the-Sogdians to-wage-war have-begun war for-you from
victoria nascitur. Nam, ut maior fortiorque sis quam
victory is-born for though greater and-braver you-be than

quisquam, tamen alienigenam dominum pati nemo vult.
anyone yet a-foreign master to-bear no-one wishes
Transi modo Tanain: scies, quam late pateant, numquam
cross only the-Tanais you-will-know how widely they-lie-open never
tamen consequeris Scythas. Paupertas nostra velocior erit
yet will-you-overtake the-Scythians poverty our swifter will-be
quam exercitus tuus, qui praedam tot nationum vehit.
than army your which the-plunder of-so-many nations carries
Rursus, cum procul abesse nos credes, videbis in tuis
again when far to-be-distant us you-believe you-will-see-us in your
castris. Eadem enim velocitate et sequimur et fugimus.
camp with-the-same for speed both we-pursue and we-flee
Scytharum solitudines Graecis etiam proverbiis audio eludi:
of-the-Scythians the-solitudes in-Greek even proverbs I-hear to-be-mocked
at nos deserta et humano cultu vacua magis quam
but we deserts and of-human cultivation empty more than
urbes et opulentos agros sequimur. Proinde fortunam tuam
cities and wealthy fields we-follow therefore fortune your
pressis manibus tene: lubrica est nec invita teneri potest.
with-pressed hands hold slippery she-is nor unwilling to-be-held can
Salubre consilium sequens quam praesens tempus ostendit
wholesome counsel the-following than the-present time shows
melius. Inpone felicitati tuae frenos: facilius illam reges.
better put on-good-fortune your reins more-easily it you-will-rule
Nostri sine pedibus dicunt esse Fortunam, quae manus et
our-people without feet say to-be Fortune who hands and
pinnas tantum habet: cum manus porrigit, pinnas quoque
wings only has when her-hand she-stretches-out the-wings also
conprehende. Denique, si deus es, tribuere mortalibus
grasp finally if a-god you-are to-bestow on-mortals
beneficia debes, non sua eripere: sin autem homo
kindnesses you-ought not their-own to-snatch-away but-if however a-man

es, id quod es, semper esse te cogita. Stultum est
you-are that which you-are always to-be yourself consider foolish it-is
eorum meminisse, propter quae tui obliviscaris. Quibus
those to-remember because-of which yourself you-forget those-on-whom
bellum non intuleris, bonis amicis poteris uti. Nam
war not you-have-brought as-good friends you-will-be-able to-use for
et firmissima est inter pares amicitia, et videntur pares,
both firmest is between equals friendship and seem equals
qui non fecerunt inter se periculum virium. Quos
those-who not have-made among themselves a-test of-strength those-whom
viceris, amicos tibi esse, cave, credas. Inter dominum
you-have-conquered friends to-you to-be beware you-believe between master
et servum nulla amicitia est: etiam in pace belli tamen iura
and slave no friendship is even in peace of-war yet the-laws
servantur. Iurando gratiam Scythas sancire ne credideris:
are-kept by-swearing friendship the-Scythians to-ratify do-not believe
colendo fidem iurant. Graecorum ista cautio est, qui
by-keeping good-faith they-swear of-the-Greeks that precaution is who
pacta consignant et deos invocant: nos religionem in ipsa
pacts seal and the-gods invoke we religion in the-very
fide ponimus. Qui non reverentur homines, fallunt deos.
good-faith place who not revere men deceive the-gods
Nec tibi amico opus est, de cuius benivolentia dubites.
nor for-you of-a-friend need is of whose goodwill you-would-doubt
Ceterum nos et Asiae et Europae custodes habebis: Bactra,
but us both of-Asia and of-Europe as-guards you-will-have Bactra
nisi dividat Tanais, contingimus, ultra Tanain terras usque
unless should-divide the-Tanais we-touch beyond the-Tanais lands right
ad Thraciam colimus, Thraciae Macedoniam coniunctam esse
to Thrace we-inhabit to-Thrace Macedonia joined to-be

fama fert. Utrumne imperio tuo finitimos hostes an amicos
report says whether to-empire your neighboring enemies or friends
velis esse, considera.' Haec barbarus.
you-wish to-be consider these-things the-barbarian

IX · THE BATTLE WITH THE SCYTHIANS

Alexander will follow his fortune and their advice. He crosses the Tanais on rafts under a hail of arrows, his artillery striking the Scythians on the bank, and his cavalry breaks their line. Though weak, he pursues for eighty stades until he faints. The Sacae submit. Spitamenes flees Maracanda for Bactra; four days on, at the place of Menedemus' defeat, Alexander buries the dead, then divides his forces to punish the rebels, burning their fields and killing the grown men.

Contra rex fortuna sua et consiliis eorum se usurum
in-reply the-king fortune his-own and counsels their himself going-to-use
esse respondet: nam et fortunam, cui confidat, et
to-be replies for both the-fortune in-which he-trusts and
consilium suadentium, ne quid temere et audacter
the-counsel of-those-advising that-not anything rashly and boldly
faciat, secuturum. Dimissisque legatis in praeparatas rates
he-should-do going-to-follow and-with-dismissed envoys onto the-prepared rafts
exercitum inposuit. In proris clipeatos locaverat iussos
the-army he-put on the-prows the-shield-bearers he-had-placed ordered
in genua subsidere, quo tutiores essent adversus ictus
on their-knees to-crouch that safer they-might-be against the-blows
sagittarum. Post hos, qui tormenta intenderent, stabant et
of-arrows behind these those-who the-artillery should-aim stood and
ab utroque latere et a fronte circumdati armatis. Reliqui,
on each side and in front surrounded by-armed-men the-rest
qui post tormenta constiterant, remigem lorica non tutum
who behind the-artillery had-stood the-rower by-breastplate not protected

scutorum testudine armati protegebant. Idem ordo in illis
of-shields with-a-tortoise armed were-protecting the-same order in those
quoque ratibus, quae equitem vehebant, servatus est. Maior
also rafts which the-cavalry were-carrying kept was the-greater
pars a puppe nantes equos loris trahebat. At illos, quos
part from the-stern swimming horses by-reins was-dragging but those whom
utres stramento repleti vehebant, obiectae rates tuebantur.
skins with-straw filled were-carrying set-against rafts protected
Ipse rex cum delectis primus ratem solvit et in ripam
himself the-king with picked-men first his-raft cast-off and onto the-bank
dirigi iussit. Cui Scythae admotos ordines equitum in
to-be-steered ordered against-whom the-Scythians moved-up ranks of-horsemen on
primo ripae margine opponunt, ut ne adplicari quidem
the-first of-the-bank edge set that not to-be-brought-to even
terrae rates possent. Ceterum praeter hanc speciem ripis
the-land the-rafts could but besides this sight on-the-banks
praesidentis exercitus ingens navigantes terror invaserat:
guarding of-an-army a-huge the-sailing terror had-seized
namque cursum gubernatores, cum obliquo flumine
for the-course the-helmsmen since by-the-slanting river
inpellerentur, regere non poterant, vacillantesque milites et,
they-were-driven to-steer not could and-wavering the-soldiers and
ne excuterentur, solliciti nautarum ministeria turbaverant. Ne
lest they-be-thrown-out anxious of-the-sailors the-duties had-disturbed not
tela quidem conati nisu vibrare poterant, cum prior
missiles even having-tried with-effort to-hurl could since sooner
standi sine periculo quam hostem incessendi cura esset.
of-standing without danger than the-enemy of-attacking the-care was
Tormenta saluti fuerunt, quibus in confertos ac temere
the-artillery for-safety were by-which against the-crowded and rashly
se offerentes haud frustra excussa sunt tela. Barbari
themselves offering not in-vain hurled were missiles the-barbarians

quoque ingentem vim sagittarum infudere ratibus, vixque
also a-huge quantity of-arrows poured onto-the-rafts and-scarcely
ullum fuit scutum, quod non pluribus simul spiculis
any there-was shield which not by-several at-once points
perforaretur. Iamque terrae rates adplicabantur, cum acies
was-pierced and-now to-the-land the-rafts were-brought when the-line
clipeata consurgit et hastas certo ictu, utpote libero
shield-bearing rises and spears with-sure aim as-being with-free
nisu, mittit e ratibus. Et ut territos recipientesque equos
effort hurls from the-rafts and when terrified and-backing the-horses
videre, alacres mutua adhortatione in terram desilire et
they-saw eager by-mutual exhortation onto the-land to-leap-down and
turbatis acriter pedem inferre coeperunt. Equitum deinde
on-the-disordered keenly their-foot to-carry began of-horsemen then
turmae, quae frenatos habebant equos, perfregere barbarorum
the-squadrons which bridled had horses broke-through of-the-barbarians
aciem. Interim ceteri agmine dimicantium tecti aptavere
the-line meanwhile the-rest by-the-column of-the-fighters covered fitted
se pugnae. Ipse rex, quod vigoris aegro adhuc corpori
themselves for-battle himself the-king what of-vigor to-his-sick still body
deerat, animi firmitate supplebat. Vox adhortantis non
was-lacking of-mind by-the-firmness supplied the-voice of-him-exhorting not
poterat audiri nondum bene obducta cicatrice cervicis, sed
could to-be-heard not-yet well with-closed the-scar of-the-neck but
dimicantem cuncti videbant. Itaque ipsi quidem ducum
fighting all saw and-so they-themselves indeed of-generals
fungebantur officio aliusque alium adhortati in hostem
were-performing the-duty and-one another having-exhorted against the-enemy
salutis inmemores ruere coeperunt. Tum vero non ora, non
of-safety unmindful to-rush began then indeed not the-faces not
arma, non clamorem hostium barbari tolerare potuerunt
the-arms not the-shout of-the-enemy the-barbarians to-bear could

omnesque effusis habenis — namque equestris acies erat —
and-all with-loosened reins for a-cavalry line it-was
capessunt fugam. Quos rex, quamquam vexationem invalidi
take-to flight whom the-king although the-strain of-his-weak
corporis pati non poterat, per LXXX tamen stadia insequi
body to-bear not he-could for eighty yet stades to-pursue
perseveravit. Iamque linquente animo suis praecepit, ut,
persisted and-now with-failing spirit his-men he-instructed that
donec lucis aliquid superesset, fugientium tergis inhaererent:
while of-light some remained to-the-fleeing's backs they-should-cling
ipse exhaustis etiam animi viribus in castra se recepit
himself with-exhausted even of-mind the-strength into the-camp himself withdrew
ibique substitit. Transierant iam Liberi Patris terminos,
and-there halted they-had-crossed now of-Liber Father the-boundaries
quorum monumenta lapides erant crebris intervallis dispositi
whose monuments stones were at-frequent intervals placed
arboresque procerae, quarum stipites hedera contexerat. Sed
and-trees tall whose trunks ivy had-covered but
Macedonas ira longius provexit: quippe media fere nocte
the-Macedonians anger farther carried for at-mid about night
in castra redierunt multis interfectis, pluribus captis
into the-camp they-returned with-many killed with-more captured
equosque M et DCCC abegere. Ceciderunt autem
and-horses a-thousand and eight-hundred they-drove-off fell however
Macedonum equites LX, pedites C fere, M saucii
of-the-Macedonians horsemen sixty infantry a-hundred about a-thousand wounded
fuerunt. Haec expeditio deficientem magna ex parte Asiam
were this expedition the-wavering a-great in part Asia
fama tam opportunae victoriae domuit. Invictos Scythas
by-the-fame of-so timely a-victory tamed unconquered the-Scythians
esse crediderant: quibus fractis nullam gentem Macedonum
to-be they-had-believed with-whom broken no nation of-the-Macedonians

armis parem fore confitebantur. Itaque Sacae misere
to-the-arms equal going-to-be they-confessed and-so the-Sacae sent
legatos, qui pollicerentur gentem imperata facturam: moverat
envoys who should-promise the-nation the-orders going-to-do had-moved
eos regis non virtus magis, quam clementia in devictos
them the-king's not valor more than clemency toward the-conquered
Scythas. Quippe captivos omnes sine pretio remiserat,
Scythians for the-captives all without ransom he-had-sent-back
ut fidem faceret sibi cum ferocissimis gentium de
that credit he-might-make to-himself with the-fiercest of-nations about
fortitudine, non de ira fuisse certamen. Benigne igitur
bravery not about anger to-have-been the-contest kindly therefore
exceptis Sacarum legatis comitem Euxenippon dedit, adhuc
with-received of-the-Sacae envoys as-companion Euxenippus he-gave still
admodum iuvenem, aetatis flore conciliatum sibi,
very young of-age by-the-flower endeared to-himself
qui cum specie corporis aequaret Hephaestionem, ei
who though in-beauty of-body he-equaled Hephaestion to-him
lepore haud sane virili par non erat. Ipse Cratero
in-charm not at-all manly equal not was he-himself with-Craterus
cum maiore parte exercitus modicis itineribus sequi iusso
with the-greater part of-the-army by-moderate marches to-follow ordered
adiit Maracanda urbem. Inde Spitamenes conperto eius
approached Maracanda the-city from-there Spitamenes with-learned his
adventu Bactra perfugerat. Itaque quadriduo rex longum
arrival to-Bactra had-fled and-so in-four-days the-king a-long
itineris spatium emensus pervenerat in eum locum, in
of-route stretch having-traversed had-come into that place in
quo Menedemo duce duo milia peditum et CCC
which with-Menedemus as-leader two thousand of-infantry and three-hundred
equites amiserat. Horum ossa tumulo contegi iussit
horsemen he-had-lost of-these the-bones by-a-mound to-be-covered he-ordered

et inferias more patrio dedit. Iam Craterus cum
and offerings-to-the-dead in-the-manner ancestral gave now Craterus with
phalange subsequi iussus ad regem pervenerat: itaque, ut
the-phalanx to-follow ordered to the-king had-come and-so that
omnes, qui defecerant, pariter belli clade premerentur,
all who had-defected alike of-the-war by-the-disaster might-be-pressed
copias dividit urique agros et interfici puberes iubet.
his-forces he-divides and-to-be-burned the-fields and to-be-killed the-grown he-orders

X · SOGDIANA

The Polytimetus vanishes underground in Sogdiana. Thirty Sogdian nobles, led to death, rejoice to die by so great a king; Alexander spares them and keeps four as guards. He sends Bessus to Ecbatana for execution. At the Oxus a spring appears in his tent, which he lets pass for a gift of the gods. In Margiana he picks sites for six towns on high hills, close enough to help one another; once they curbed the conquered, now they serve them.

Sogdiana regio maiore ex parte deserta est: octingenta fere
the-Sogdian region the-greater for part desert is eight-hundred about
stadia in latitudinem vastae solitudines tenent. Ingens spatium
stades in breadth vast solitudes hold a-huge stretch
rectae regionis est, per quam amnis — Polytimetum
of-straight country is through which a-river Polytimetus
vocant incolae — fertur. Torrentem eum ripae in tenuem
call-it the-inhabitants is-carried torrent it the-banks into narrow
alveum cogunt, deinde caverna accipit et sub terram rapit.
channel compress then a-cavern receives-it and under the-earth sweeps-it
Cursus absconditi indicium est aquae meantis sonus,
of-the-course hidden the-sign is of-the-water flowing the-sound
cum ipsum solum, sub quo tantus amnis fluit, ne modico
since the-very soil under which so-great a-river flows not with-moderate

quidem resudet humore. Ex captivis Sogdianorum ad
even sweats moisture from-among the-captives of-the-Sogdians to
regem XXX nobilissimi corporum robore eximio perducti
the-king thirty most-noble of-bodies in-strength exceptional brought
erant: qui ubi per interpretem cognoverunt iussu
had-been who when through an-interpreter they-learned at-the-order
regis ipsos ad supplicium trahi, carmen laetantium
of-the-king themselves to execution to-be-dragged a-song of-rejoicing-men
modo canere tripudiisque et lasciviori corporis motu
in-the-manner to-sing and-with-dances and more-wanton of-the-body motion
gaudium quoddam animi ostentare coeperunt. Admiratus
joy a-certain of-mind to-display began having-admired
rex tanta magnitudine animi oppetere mortem revocari
the-king at-such greatness of-mind to-meet death to-be-called-back
eos iussit, causam tam effusae laetitiae, cum supplicium
them ordered the-cause of-so unrestrained joy when the-execution
ante oculos haberent, requirens. Illi, si ab alio occiderentur,
before their-eyes they-had asking they if by another they-were-killed
tristes morituros fuisse respondent: nunc a tanto rege,
sad going-to-die to-have-been reply now by so-great a-king
victore omnium gentium, maioribus suis redditos honestam
the-victor of-all nations to-ancestors their-own restored an-honorable
mortem, quam fortes viri voto quoque expeterent, carminibus
death which brave men with-vow even would-seek with-songs
sui moris laetitiaque celebrare. Tantam rex admiratus
of-their-own custom and-with-joy to-celebrate such the-king having-admired
magnitudinem animi: ‘Quaero,’ inquit, ‘an vivere velitis
greatness of-mind I-ask he-says whether to-live you-wish
non inimici mihi, cuius beneficio victuri estis?’ Illi
not as-enemies to-me by-whose kindness going-to-live you-are they
numquam se inimicos ei, sed bello lacessitos se
never themselves enemies to-him but in-war provoked themselves

inimicos hosti fuisse respondent: si quis ipsos beneficio
enemies to-the-enemy to-have-been reply if anyone them by-kindness
quam iniuria experiri maluisset, certaturos fuisse, ne
than by-injury to-test had-preferred going-to-contend to-have-been that-not
vincerentur officio. Interrogantique, quo pignore fidem
they-be-outdone in-service and-to-him-asking by-what pledge their-good-faith
obligaturi essent, vitam, quam acciperent, pignori futuram
going-to-bind they-were the-life which they-were-receiving as-a-pledge going-to-be
esse dixerunt: reddituros, quandoque repetisset. Nec
to-be they-said going-to-return-it whenever he-should-ask-it-back nor
promissum fefellerunt. Nam, qui remissi domos erant,
the-promise did-they-break for those-who sent-back home were
fide continuere populares: quattuor inter custodes corporis
in-loyalty kept their-countrymen four among the-guards of-the-body
retenti nulli Macedonum in regem caritate cesserunt. In
kept to-none of-the-Macedonians toward the-king in-affection yielded in
Sogdianis Peucolao cum III milibus peditum — neque enim
the-Sogdians with-Peucolaus with three thousand of-infantry nor for
maiore praesidio indigebat — relicto Bactra pervenit. Inde
a-greater garrison it-needed left to-Bactra he-came from-there
Bessum Ecbatana duci iussit interfecto Dareo poenas
Bessus to-Ecbatana to-be-led ordered to-the-slain Darius the-penalty
capite persoluturum. Isdem fere diebus Ptolomaeus et
with-his-head going-to-pay at-the-same about days Ptolemy and
Melanidas peditum IIII milia et equites M adduxerunt
Melanidas of-infantry four thousand and horsemen a-thousand brought
mercede militaturos. Asander quoque ex Lycia cum pari
for-pay going-to-serve Asander also from Lycia with an-equal
numero peditum et D equitibus venit. Totidem ex
number of-infantry and five-hundred horsemen came as-many from
Syria Asclepiodorum sequebantur. Antipater Graecorum VIII
Syria Asclepiodorus followed Antipater of-Greeks eight

milia, in quis DC equites erant, miserat. Itaque
thousand among whom six-hundred horsemen were had-sent and-so
exercitu aucto ad ea, quae defectione turbata erant,
with-the-army increased for those-things which by-the-revolt disturbed were
conponenda processit, interfectisque consternationis auctoribus
to-be-settled he-advanced and-with-killed of-the-commotion the-authors
quarto die ad flumen Oxum perventum est. Hic, quia
on-the-fourth day to the-river Oxus come it-was this because
limum vehit, turbidus semper, insalubris est potui. Itaque
silt it-carries muddy always unhealthy is for-drinking and-so
puteos miles coeperat fodere, nec tamen humo alte
wells the-soldier had-begun to-dig nor yet with-the-earth deep
egesta existebat humor. Tandem in ipso tabernaculo regis
dug-out appeared moisture at-last in the-very tent of-the-king
conspectus est fons: quem quia tarde notaverant, subito
seen was a-spring which because late they-had-noticed suddenly
extitisse finxerunt, rexque ipse credi voluit, deum
to-have-arisen they-pretended and-the-king himself to-be-believed wished of-the-gods
donum id fuisse. Superatis deinde amnibus Ocho et
a-gift that to-have-been with-crossed then the-rivers Ochus and
Oxo ad urbem Margianam pervenit. Circa eam VI oppidis
Oxus to the-city Margiana he-came around it six for-towns
condendis electa sedes est, duo ad meridiem versa, IIII
to-be-founded chosen a-site was two toward the-south turned four
spectantia orientem: modicis inter se spatiis distabant, ne
facing the-east by-moderate among themselves spaces were-distant lest
procul repetendum esset mutuum auxilium. Haec omnia sita
far to-be-sought might-be mutual help these all situated
sunt in editis collibus. Tunc velut freni domitarum gentium,
are on lofty hills then as-if bridles of-tamed nations
nunc originis suae oblita serviunt, quibus imperaverunt.
now of-origin their-own forgetful they-serve those-whom they-commanded

Ariamazes holds a sheer rock with thirty thousand men and provisions for two years. When Alexander asks him to surrender, he asks whether Alexander can fly. Three hundred young climbers scale the cliff on iron wedges and ropes, losing thirty-two, and at dawn signal from the summit. Ariamazes, unable to count how few they are, surrenders; Alexander has him and his chief men scourged and crucified, gives the captives to the new cities, and leaves Artabazus to guard the region.

Et cetera quidem pacaverat rex. Una erat petra, quam
and the-rest indeed had-pacified the-king one there-was rock which
Ariamazes Sogdianus cum XXX milibus armatorum obtinebat
Ariamazes the-Sogdian with thirty thousand armed-men was-holding
alimentis ante congestis, quae tantae multitudini vel
with-provisions beforehand gathered which for-so-great a-multitude even
per biennium suppeterent. Petra in altitudinem XXX eminet
for two-years would-suffice the-rock in height thirty rises
stadia, circuitu C et L conplectitur: undique abscisa et
stades in-circuit a-hundred and fifty it-embraces on-all-sides cut-off and
abrupta semita perangusta aditur. In medio altitudinis
sheer by-a-path very-narrow it-is-approached in the-middle of-the-height
spatio habet specum, cuius os artum et obscurum est:
space it-has a-cave whose mouth narrow and dark is
paulatim deinde ulteriora panduntur, ultima etiam altos
gradually then the-farther-parts open-out the-last even deep
recessus habent. Fontes per totum fere specum manant,
recesses have springs through the-whole nearly cave flow
e quibus collatae aquae per prona montis flumen
from which collected the-waters down the-slopes of-the-mountain a-river
emittunt. Rex loci difficultate spectata statuerat inde
send-out the-king of-the-place with-the-difficulty observed had-decided from-there
abire: cupido deinde incessit animo naturam quoque fatigandi.
to-depart a-desire then came-into his-mind nature also of-wearying

Prius tamen quam fortunam obsidionis experiretur, Cophen —
first yet than the-fortune of-a-siege he-tried Cophes
Artabazi hic filius erat — misit ad barbaros, qui suaderet,
of-Artabazus this-man the-son was he-sent to the-barbarians who should-urge
ut dederent rupem. Ariamazes loco fretus superbe
that they-should-surrender the-crag Ariamazes on-the-place relying arrogantly
multa respondit, ad ultimum, an Alexander etiam
many-things replied at the-last whether Alexander even
volare posset, interrogat. Quae nuntiata regi sic accendere
to-fly could he-asks which reported to-the-king so inflamed
animum, ut adhibitis, cum quibus consultare erat solitus,
his-mind that with-called-in with whom to-consult he-was accustomed
indicaret insolentiam barbari eludentis ipsos, quia pinnas
he-pointed-out the-insolence of-the-barbarian mocking them because wings
non haberent: se autem proxima nocte effecturum,
not they-had himself however on-the-next night going-to-bring-about
ut crederet Macedones etiam volare. 'CCC,' inquit,
that he-should-believe the-Macedonians even to-fly three-hundred he-says
'pernicissimos iuvenes ex suis quisque copiis perducite ad
the-nimblest young-men from his-own each forces bring to
me, qui per calles et paene invias rupes domi pecora agere
me who along paths and almost pathless crags at-home flocks to-drive
consueverant.' Illi praestantes et levitate corporum et ardore
were-accustomed they outstanding both in-lightness of-body and in-ardor
animorum strenue adducunt. Quos intuens rex: 'Vobiscum,'
of-spirit briskly bring whom looking-at the-king with-you
inquit, 'o iuvenes et mei aequales, urbium invictarum ante
he-says O young-men and my equals of-cities unconquered before
me munimenta superavi, montium iuga perenni nive
me the-fortifications I-have-overcome of-mountains the-ridges with-perpetual snow
obruta emensus sum, angustias Ciliciae intravi, Indiae sine
buried traversed I-have the-narrows of-Cilicia I-have-entered of-India without

lassitudine vim frigoris sum perpessus. Et mei documenta
weariness the-force of-the-cold I-have endured both of-myself proofs
vobis dedi et vestra habeo. Petra, quam videtis, unum
to-you I-have-given and yours I-have the-rock which you-see one
aditum habet, quem barbari obsident, cetera neglegunt:
approach has which the-barbarians beset the-rest they-neglect
nullae vigiliae sunt, nisi quae castra nostra spectant.
no watches are except those-which camp our face
Invenietis viam, si sollerter rimati fueritis aditus ferentis
you-will-find a-way if skillfully explored you-shall-have the-approaches leading
ad cacumen. Nihil tam alte natura constituit, quo virtus
to the-summit nothing so high nature has-set to-which valor
non possit eniti. Experiendo, quae ceteri desperaverunt,
not can struggle-up by-trying what the-rest have-despaired-of
Asiam habemus in potestate. Evadite in cacumen: quod
Asia we-hold in power climb-out onto the-summit which
cum ceperitis, candidis velis signum mihi dabitis: ego
when you-shall-have-taken with-white cloths the-signal to-me you-will-give I
copiis admotis hostem in nos a vobis convertam.
with-the-forces moved-up the-enemy against us from you shall-turn
Praemium erit ei, qui primus occupaverit verticem, talenta
the-reward will-be for-him who first shall-have-seized the-peak talents
X, uno minus accipiet, qui proximus ei venerit,
ten by-one less will-receive he-who next to-him shall-have-come
eademque ad decem homines servabitur portio. Certum
and-the-same to ten men will-be-kept the-proportion certain
autem habeo vos non tam liberalitatem intueri meam
however I-hold you not so-much the-generosity to-regard my
quam voluntatem.' His animis regem audierunt, ut iam
as the-will with-these spirits the-king they-heard that already
cepisse verticem viderentur: dimissique ferreos cuneos, quos
to-have-taken the-peak they-seemed and-dismissed iron wedges which

inter saxa defigerent, validosque funes parabant. Rex
among the-rocks they-might-drive and-strong ropes they-were-preparing the-king
circumvectus petram, qua minime asper ac praeruptus
having-ridden-round the-rock where least rough and sheer
aditus videbatur, secunda vigilia, quod bene verteret,
the-approach seemed at-the-second watch that well it-might-turn-out
ingredi iubet. Illi alimentis in biduum sumptis gladiis modo
to-enter orders they with-provisions for two-days taken with-swords only
atque hastis armati subire coeperunt. Ac primo pedibus ingressi
and spears armed to-climb began and at-first on-foot advanced
sunt: deinde, ut in praerupta perventum est, alii manibus
they-have then when onto the-sheer-parts come it-was some with-hands
eminentia saxa conplexi levavere semet, alii adiectis funium
the-projecting rocks grasping raised themselves others with-cast of-ropes
laqueis evasere, quidam, cum cuneos inter saxa defigerent,
nooses got-up some when the-wedges among the-rocks they-drove
gradus subdidere, quis insisterent. Diem inter metum
steps put-under on-which they-might-stand the-day between fear
laboremque consumpserunt. Per aspera enisis
and-toil they-spent through rough-places to-those-having-struggled
duriora restabant, et crescere altitudo petrae videbatur. Illa
harder-things remained and to-grow the-height of-the-rock seemed that
vero miserabilis erat facies, cum ii, quos instabilis gradus
indeed pitiable was the-sight when those whom an-unsteady step
fefellerat, ex praecipiti devolverentur: mox eadem in
had-deceived from the-precipice rolled-down soon the-same-things on
se patienda alieni casus ostendebat exemplum. Per has
themselves to-be-suffered another's fall showed the-example through these
tamen difficultates enituntur in verticem montis, omnes
yet difficulties they-struggle-up onto the-summit of-the-mountain all
fatigatione continuati laboris adfecti, quidam mulcati parte
by-the-weariness of-continued toil afflicted some maimed in-part

membrorum pariterque eos et nox et somnus oppressit.
of-their-limbs and-alike them both night and sleep overwhelmed
Stratis passim corporibus in inviis et asperis saxorum
with-strewn everywhere bodies on pathless and rough rocks
periculi instantis obliti in lucem quieverunt: tandemque velut
of-the-danger pressing forgetful into the-light they-rested and-at-last as-if
ex alto sopore excitati occultas subiectasque ipsis valles
from deep sleep roused the-hidden and-lying-beneath themselves valleys
rimantes, ignari, in qua parte petrae tanta vis hostium
searching ignorant in which part of-the-rock so-great a-force of-the-enemy
condita esset, fumum specu infra se ipsos evolutum
hidden was the-smoke from-the-cave below them themselves rolled-up
notaverunt. Ex quo intellectum, illam hostium latebram esse.
they-noticed from which it-was-understood that of-the-enemy the-hiding-place to-be
Itaque hastis inposuere, quod convenerat signum: totoque
and-so on-spears they-put what had-been-agreed the-signal and-the-whole
e numero II et XXX in ascensu interisse adgnoscunt.
from the-number two and thirty in the-ascent to-have-perished they-recognize
Rex non cupidine magis potiundi loci quam vice
the-king not by-desire more of-gaining the-place than by-the-lot
eorum, quos ad tam manifestum periculum miserat, sollicitus
of-those whom to so manifest a-danger he-had-sent anxious
toto die cacumina montis intuens restitit: noctu
for-the-whole day the-summits of-the-mountain looking-at stood-still by-night
demum, cum obscuritas conspectum oculorum ademisset, ad
at-last when the-darkness the-sight of-the-eyes had-taken-away to
curandum corpus recessit. Postero die nondum satis
tending his-body he-withdrew on-the-following day not-yet sufficiently
clara luce primus vela, signum capti verticis, conspexit.
clear the-light first the-cloths the-sign of-the-taken peak he-saw
Sed, ne falleretur acies, dubitare cogebat varietas caeli
but lest might-be-deceived his-sight to-doubt compelled the-variability of-the-sky

nunc internitente lucis fulgore, nunc condito. Verum, ut
now with-shining-through of-light the-brightness now hidden but when
liquidior lux adparuit caelo, dubitatio exempta est: vocatumque
clearer light appeared in-the-sky the-doubt removed was and-called
Cophen, per quem barbarorum animos temptaverat, mittit
Cophes through whom of-the-barbarians the-minds he-had-tested he-sends
ad eos, qui moneret, nunc saltem salubrius consilium
to them who should-warn now at-least a-more-wholesome plan
inirent: sin autem fiducia loci perseverarent, ostendi
they-should-enter but-if however in-confidence of-the-place they-persisted to-be-shown
a tergo iussit, qui ceperant verticem. Cophes admissus
from the-rear he-ordered those-who had-taken the-peak Cophes admitted
suadere coepit Ariamazi petram tradere, gratiam regis
to-urge began to-Ariamazes the-rock to-hand-over the-favor of-the-king
inituro, si tantas res molientem in unius rupis obsidione
going-to-gain if so-great things undertaking in of-one of-crag the-siege
haerere non coegisset. Ille ferocius superbiusque quam antea
to-stick not he-compelled he more-fiercely and-more-arrogantly than before
locutus abire Cophen iubet: at is prensum manu
having-spoken to-go-away Cophes orders but he grasped by-the-hand
barbarum rogat, ut secum extra specum prodeat. Quo
the-barbarian asks that with-him outside the-cave he-come-forth with-which
inpetrato iuvenes in cacumine ostendit et eius superbiae
obtained the-young-men on the-summit he-shows and his arrogance
haud inmerito inludens pinnas habere ait milites Alexandri.
not undeservedly mocking wings to-have he-says the-soldiers of-Alexander
Iamque e Macedonum castris signorum concentus et
and-now from the-Macedonians' camp of-the-trumpets the-harmony and
totius exercitus clamor audiebatur. Ea res, sicut pleraque
of-the-whole army the-shout was-heard that thing as most-things
belli, vana et inanis barbaros ad deditionem traxit: quippe
of-war empty and vain the-barbarians to surrender drew for

occupati metu paucitatem eorum, qui a tergo erant, aestimare
seized by-fear the-fewness of-those who at the-rear were to-assess
non poterant. Itaque Cophen — nam trepidantes reliquerat —
not they-could and-so Cophes for trembling-them he-had-left
strenue revocant et cum eo XXX principes mittunt, qui
briskly they-call-back and with him thirty chief-men they-send to
petram tradant et, ut incolumibus abire liceat,
the-rock hand-over and that unharmed to-depart they-might-be-allowed
paciscantur. Ille quamquam verebatur, ne conspecta iuvenum
to-bargain he although he-feared lest with-seen of-the-young-men
paucitate, deturbarent eos barbari, tamen et fortunae
the-fewness would-dislodge them the-barbarians yet both in-fortune
suae confisus et Ariamazi superbiae infensus, nullam
his-own trusting and at-Ariamazes' arrogance angered no
se condicionem deditionis accipere respondit. Ariamazes
himself condition of-surrender to-accept replied Ariamazes
desperatis magis quam perditis rebus cum propinquis
with-despaired-of more than lost affairs with his-kinsmen
nobilissimisque gentis suae descendit in castra: quos omnis
and-the-noblest of-nation his-own goes-down into the-camp whom all
verberibus adfectos sub ipsis radicibus petrae crucibus
with-lashes afflicted under the-very roots of-the-rock on-crosses
iussit adfigi. Multitudo deditorum incolis novarum
he-ordered to-be-fastened the-multitude of-the-surrendered to-the-inhabitants of-the-new
urbium cum pecunia capta dono data est, Artabazus in
cities with the-money captured as-a-gift given was Artabazus for
petrae regionisque, quae adposita esset ei, tutelam relictus.
of-the-rock and-of-the-region which adjoining was to-it the-protection was-left

BOOK VIII

I · THE DEATH OF CLITUS

Alexander divides his army; Attinas falls into an ambush, and Craterus crushes the Dahae. In Bazaira Alexander kills a lion himself, and he gives Artabazus' province to Clitus. At a banquet in Maracanda he boasts and belittles Philip. Clitus, drunk, recites Euripides on kings who take the credit for their soldiers' work and defends Philip and Parmenio. His friends lead Clitus away, but Alexander takes a sentry's spear, waits at the door, and runs him through as he leaves last.

Alexander maiore fama quam gloria in dicionem redacta
Alexander with-greater fame than glory into dominion brought
petra, cum propter vagum hostem spargendae manus essent,
the-rock since because-of the-roving enemy to-be-scattered the-bands were
in tres partes divisit exercitum. Hephaestionem uni, Coenon
into three parts divided the-army Hephaestion to-one Coenus
alteri duces dederat, ipse ceteris praeerat. Sed non
to-the-second as-leaders he-had-given himself the-rest commanded but not
eadem mens omnibus barbaris fuit: armis quidam subacti,
the-same mind to-all the-barbarians was by-arms some subdued
plures ante certamen imperata fecerunt. Quibus eorum, qui in
more before the-contest the-orders carried-out to-whom of-those who in
defectione perseveraverant, urbes agrosque iussit attribui.
the-revolt had-persisted the-cities and-fields he-ordered to-be-assigned
At exules Bactriani cum DCCC Massagetarum equitibus
but the-exiled Bactrians with eight-hundred of-the-Massagetae horsemen
proximos vicos vastaverunt. Ad quos coercendos Attinas,
the-nearest villages laid-waste for whom to-be-checked Attinas
regionis eius praefectus, CCC equites insidiarum, quae
of-region that the-governor three-hundred horsemen of-the-ambush which
parabantur, ignarus eduxit. Namque hostis in silvis —
was-being-prepared ignorant led-out for the-enemy in woods

et erant forte campo iunctae — armatum militem
and they-were by-chance to-the-plain joined armed soldiery
condidit paucis propellentibus pecora, ut inprovidum ad
hid with-a-few driving-forward the-cattle that the-unwary-man to
insidias praeda perduceret. Itaque inconposito agmine
the-ambush the-plunder might-lead and-so in-disordered column
solutisque ordinibus Attinas praedabundus sequebatur: quem
and-with-loosened ranks Attinas eager-for-plunder was-following whom
praetergressum silvam, qui in ea consederant, ex inproviso
having-passed the-wood those-who in it had-settled from the-unforeseen
adorti cum omnibus interemerunt. Celeriter ad Craterum
attacking with all killed quickly to Craterus
huius cladis fama perlata est, qui cum omni equitatu
of-this disaster the-report carried was who with all his-cavalry
supervenit. Et Massagetae quidem iam refugerant, Dahae
came-up and the-Massagetae indeed already had-fled-back the-Dahae
M oppressi sunt: quorum clade totius regionis finita
a-thousand overwhelmed were by-whose disaster of-the-whole region ended
defectio est. Alexander quoque Sogdianis rursus subactis
the-revolt was Alexander also with-the-Sogdians again subdued
Maracanda repetit. Ibi Derdas, quem ad Scythas super
Maracanda seeks-again there Derdas whom to the-Scythians above
Bosphorum colentes miserat, cum legatis gentis occurrit.
the-Bosporus dwelling he-had-sent with envoys of-the-nation meets-him
Phrataphernes quoque, qui Chorasmiis praeerat, Massagetis
Phrataphernes also who over-the-Chorasmii ruled to-the-Massagetae
et Dahis regionum confinio adiunctus miserat, qui
and the-Dahae by-the-regions' border joined had-sent men-who
facturum imperata pollicerentur. Scythae petebant, ut regis
going-to-do the-orders should-promise the-Scythians were-asking that of-king
sui filiam matrimonio sibi iungeret: si dedignaretur
their the-daughter in-marriage to-himself he-should-join if he-disdained

adfinitatem, principes Macedonum cum primoribus suae
the-alliance the-chief-men of-the-Macedonians with the-foremost of-their-own
gentis conubio coire pateretur: ipsum quoque regem
nation in-wedlock to-unite he-should-allow himself also the-king
venturum ad eum pollicebantur. Utraque legatione benigne
going-to-come to him they-were-promising with-both embassies kindly
audita Hephaestionem et Artabazum opperiens stativa
heard Hephaestion and Artabazus awaiting a-standing-camp
habuit: quibus adiunctis in regionem, quae appellatur Bazaira,
he-had with-whom joined into the-region which is-called Bazaira
pervenit. Barbarae opulentiae in illis locis haud ulla sunt
he-came of-barbarian wealth in those places not any are
maiora indicia quam magnis nemoribus saltibusque nobilium
greater signs than in-great groves and-forests of-noble
ferarum greges clusi. Spatiosas ad hoc eligunt silvas crebris
wild-beasts herds shut-in spacious for this they-choose woods with-frequent
perennium aquarum fontibus amoenas: muris nemora
of-perennial waters springs pleasant with-walls the-groves
cinguntur turresque habent venantium receptacula. Quattuor
are-girded and-towers they-have of-the-hunters as-shelters for-four
continuis aetatibus intactum saltum fuisse constabat, cum
continuous generations untouched the-forest to-have-been it-was-agreed when
Alexander cum toto exercitu ingressus agitari undique
Alexander with the-whole army having-entered to-be-driven on-all-sides
feras iussit. Inter quas cum leo magnitudinis rarae
the-wild-beasts ordered among which when a-lion of-size rare
ipsum regem invasurus incurreret, forte Lysimachus, qui
himself the-king going-to-attack rushed-at-him by-chance Lysimachus who
postea regnavit, proximus Alexandro venabulum obicere
afterward reigned nearest to-Alexander a-hunting-spear to-set-against
ferae coeperat: quo rex repulso et abire iusso
the-beast had-begun with-whom the-king pushed-away and to-go-away ordered

adiecit tam a semet uno quam a Lysimacho leonem interfici
added as-well by himself alone as by Lysimachus a-lion to-be-killed
posse. Lysimachus enim quondam, cum venarentur in
to-be-able Lysimachus for once when they-were-hunting in
Syria, occiderat quidem eximiae magnitudinis feram solus,
Syria had-killed indeed of-exceptional size a-beast alone
sed laevo humero usque ad ossa lacerato ad ultimum
but with-the-left shoulder right to the-bones torn to the-last
periculi pervenerat. Id ipsum exprobrans ei rex fortius,
of-danger had-come that very-thing reproaching to-him the-king more-bravely
quam locutus est, fecit: nam feram non excepit modo, sed
than spoken he-had did for the-beast not he-received only but
etiam uno vulnere occidit. Fabulam, quae obiectum leoni
also with-one wound killed the-tale which thrown to-a-lion
a rege Lysimachum temere vulgavit, ab eo casu, quem
by the-king Lysimachus rashly spread from that incident which
supra diximus, ortam esse crediderim. Ceterum Macedones,
above we-mentioned sprung to-have I-would-believe but the-Macedonians
quamquam prospero eventu defunctus erat Alexander, tamen
although with-favorable outcome done he-had Alexander yet
scivere gentis suae more, ne aut pedes venaretur
decreed of-nation their-own by-the-custom that-not either on-foot he-should-hunt
aut sine delectis principum atque amicorum. Ille IIII
or without picked of-the-chief-men and friends he with-four
milibus ferarum deiectis in eodem saltu cum toto
thousand wild-beasts brought-down in the-same forest with the-whole
exercitu epulatus est. Inde Maracanda reditum est:
army feasted has from-there to-Maracanda the-return was-made
acceptaque aetatis excusatione ab Artabazo provinciam eius
and-with-accepted of-age the-excuse from Artabazus the-province his
destinat Clito. Hic erat, qui apud Granicum amnem
he-assigns to-Clitus this-man was who at the-Granicus river

nudo capite regem dimicantem clipeo suo texit et
with-bare head the-king fighting with-shield his-own covered and
Rhosacis manum capiti regis inminentem gladio
of-Rhosaces the-hand over-the-head of-the-king hanging with-his-sword
amputavit, vetus Philippi miles multisque bellicis operibus
cut-off an-old of-Philip soldier and-for-many warlike deeds
clarus. Et Lanice, quae Alexandrum educaverat, soror eius,
famous and Lanice who Alexander had-reared sister his
haud secus quam mater a rege diligebatur. Ob
not otherwise than a-mother by the-king was-loved on-account-of
has causas validissimam imperii partem fidei eius
these reasons the-strongest of-the-empire part to-the-loyalty his
tutelaeque commisit. Iamque iter parare in posterum iussus
and-protection he-entrusted and-now his-route to-prepare for the-next-day ordered
sollemni et tempestivo adhibetur convivio. In quo rex
at-a-solemn and early is-included banquet at which the-king
cum multo incaluisset mero, inmodicus aestimator sui
when with-much he-had-grown-hot wine immoderate appraiser of-himself
celebrare, quae gesserat, coepit, gravis etiam eorum auribus,
to-celebrate what he-had-done began burdensome even of-those to-the-ears
qui sentiebant vera memorari. Silentium tamen habuere
who perceived true-things to-be-told silence yet held
seniores, donec Philippi res orsus obterere nobilem
the-elders until Philip's deeds having-begun to-belittle the-famous
apud Chaeroneam victoriam sui operis fuisse iactavit
at Chaeronea victory of-his-own work to-have-been he-boasted
ademptamque sibi malignitate et invidia patris tantae
and-taken-away from-himself by-the-malice and envy of-his-father of-so-great
rei gloriam. Illum quidem seditione inter Macedones
a-deed the-glory him indeed with-a-mutiny between the-Macedonian
milites et Graecos mercennarios orta debilitatum vulnere,
soldiers and the-Greek mercenaries arisen weakened by-the-wound

quod in ea consternatione acceperat, iacuisse, non
which in that commotion he-had-received to-have-lain-prostrate by-no
alia re quam simulatione mortis tutiorem: se corpus eius
other thing than by-pretense of-death more-safe himself the-body his
protexisse clipeo suo, ruentesque in illum sua
to-have-protected with-shield his-own and-those-rushing upon him with-his-own
manu occisos. Quae patrem numquam aequo animo
hand to-have-been-killed which his-father never with-even mind
esse confessum, invitum filio debentem salutem suam.
to-have confessed unwilling to-his-son owing safety his-own
Atque post expeditionem, quam sine eo fecisset ipse in
and after the-expedition which without him he-had-made himself into
Illyrios, victorem scripsisse se patri fusos fugatosque
the-Illyrians as-victor to-have-written himself to-his-father the-routed and-put-to-flight
hostes: nec adfuisse usquam Philippum. Laude dignos
enemy nor to-have-been-present anywhere Philip of-praise worthy
esse, non qui Samothracum initia viserent, cum Asiam
to-be not those-who of-the-Samothracians the-mysteries visited when Asia
uri vastarique oporteret, sed eos, qui magnitudine
to-be-burned and-ravaged it-was-needful but those who by-the-greatness
rerum fidem antecessissent. Haec et his similia laeti
of-their-deeds belief had-surpassed these-things and to-these similar glad
audiere iuvenes, ingrata senioribus erant, maxime propter
heard the-young-men unwelcome to-the-elders they-were especially because-of
Philippum, sub quo diutius vixerant, cum Clitus ne ipse
Philip under whom longer they-had-lived when Clitus not himself
quidem satis sobrius ad eos, qui infra ipsum cubabant,
even sufficiently sober to those who below him were-reclining
conversus Euripidis rettulit carmen, ita ut sonus magis
turned of-Euripides recited a-song so that the-sound rather
quam sermo exaudiri posset a rege, quo significabatur
than the-words to-be-heard could by the-king by-which it-was-meant

male instituisse Graecos, quod tropaeis regum dumtaxat
badly to-have-established the-Greeks that on-trophies of-kings only
nomina inscriberent: alieno enim sanguine partam gloriam
the-names they-inscribed by-another's for blood won the-glory
intercipi. Itaque rex, cum suspicaretur malignius habitum
to-be-intercepted and-so the-king since he-suspected more-spitefully held
esse sermonem, percontari proximos coepit, quid ex
to-have-been the-talk to-ask the-nearest began what from
Clito audissent. Et illis ad silendum obstinatis Clitus
Clitus they-had-heard and with-them for keeping-silent obstinate Clitus
paulatim maiore voce Philippi acta bellaque in Graecia
gradually with-a-greater voice of-Philip the-acts and-the-wars in Greece
gesta commemorat omnia praesentibus praeferens. Hinc
waged recalls all-things to-the-present preferring from-here
inter iuniores senesque orta contentio est. Et rex,
between the-younger-men and-the-old arisen a-dispute was and the-king
velut patienter audiret, quis Clitus obterebat laudes eius,
as-if patiently he-heard by-which Clitus was-belittling the-praises his
ingentem iram conceperat. Ceterum cum animo videretur
a-huge anger had-conceived but since his-temper he-seemed
imperaturus, si finem procaciter orto sermoni Clitus
going-to-command if an-end insolently to-the-arisen talk Clitus
inponeret, nihil eo remittente magis exasperabatur. Iamque
put with-nothing him remitting the-more he-was-exasperated and-now
Clitus etiam Parmenionem defendere audebat et Philippi de
Clitus even Parmenio to-defend dared and of-Philip over
Atheniensibus victoriam Thebarum praeferebat excidio non
the-Athenians the-victory of-Thebes was-preferring to-the-destruction not
vino modo, sed etiam animi prava contentione provectus.
by-wine only but also by-the-mind's perverse contentiousness carried-on
Ad ultimum: 'Si moriendum,' inquit, 'est pro te, Clitus est
at the-last if to-be-died he-says it-is for you Clitus is

primus: at cum victoriae arbitrium agis, praecipuum ferunt,
first but when of-victory the-judgment you-hold the-chief-prizes carry
qui procacissime patris tui memoriae inludunt. Sogdianam
those-who most-insolently of-father your at-the-memory mock the-Sogdian
regionem mihi attribuis, totiens rebellem et non modo
region to-me you-assign so-often rebellious and not only
indomitam, sed quae ne subigi quidem possit. Mittor ad
untamed but which not to-be-subdued even can I-am-sent to
feras bestias, praecipitia ingenia sortitas. Sed, quae ad me
wild beasts headlong natures having-been-allotted but what to me
pertinent, transeo. Philippi milites spernis, oblitus, nisi hic
pertains I-pass-over Philip's soldiers you-spurn forgetting unless this
Atarrhias senex iuniores pugnam detrectantes revocasset,
Atarrhias old-man the-younger-men the-fight shirking had-called-back
adhuc nos circa Halicarnasum haesuros fuisse. Quomodo
still us around Halicarnassus going-to-stick to-have-been how
igitur Asiam totam cum istis iunioribus subegisti? Verum
then Asia the-whole with those young-men have-you-subdued true
est, ut opinor, quod avunculum tuum in Italia dixisse
it-is as I-think what uncle your in Italy to-have-said
constat, ipsum in viros incidisse, te in feminas.' Nihil
it-is-agreed himself upon men to-have-fallen you upon women nothing
ex omnibus inconsulte ac temere iactis regem magis
of all-things ill-advisedly and rashly hurled the-king more
moverat quam Parmenionis cum honore mentio inlata.
had-moved than of-Parmenio with honor the-mention brought-in
Dolorem tamen repressit, contentus iussisse, ut convivio
his-pain yet he-suppressed content to-have-ordered that from-the-banquet
excederet. Nec quicquam aliud adiecit quam forsitan eum, si
he-should-leave nor anything else he-added than perhaps him if
diutius locutus foret, exprobraturum sibi fuisse vitam
longer spoken he-had going-to-reproach to-himself to-have-been his-life

a semetipso datam: hoc enim superbe saepe iactasse.
by himself given this for arrogantly often to-have-boasted
Atque illum cunctantem adhuc surgere, qui proximi
and him hesitating still to-rise those-who nearest
ei cubuerant, iniectis manibus iurgantes monentesque
to-him had-reclined with-laid-on hands rebuking and-warning
conabantur abducere. Clitus cum abstraheretur, ad pristinam
were-trying to-lead-away Clitus when he-was-dragged-away to his-former
vinolentiam ira quoque adiecta suo pectore tergum
drunkenness with-anger also added by-his-own breast the-back
illius esse defensum, nunc, postquam tanti meriti
of-him to-have-been defended now after of-so-great a-service
praeterierit tempus, etiam memoriam invisam esse proclamat.
has-passed the-time even the-memory hateful to-be proclaims
Attali quoque caedem obiciebat et ad ultimum Iovis,
of-Attalus also the-murder he-was-throwing-at-him and at the-last of-Jupiter
quem patrem sibi Alexander adsereret, oraculum eludens
whom as-father to-himself Alexander claimed the-oracle mocking
veriora se regi quam patrem eius respondisse dicebat.
truer-things himself to-the-king than the-father his to-have-answered he-was-saying
Iam tantum irae conceperat rex, quantum vix sobrius
now so-much of-anger had-conceived the-king as-much-as scarcely sober
ferre potuisset. Enimvero olim mero sensibus victis ex
to-bear he-could-have in-truth long-since by-wine with-his-senses overcome from
lecto repente prosiluit. Attoniti amici ne positis quidem,
his-couch suddenly he-leapt-up astonished the-friends not with-set-down even
sed abiectis poculis consurgunt in eventum rei,
but thrown-away their-cups rise toward the-outcome of-the-thing
quam tanto impetu acturus esset, intenti. Alexander
which with-so-great impetus going-to-do he-was intent Alexander
rapta lancea ex manibus armigeri Clitum adhuc
with-snatched a-lance from the-hands of-an-armor-bearer Clitus still

eadem linguae intemperantia furentem percutere conatus
with-the-same tongue's intemperance raging to-strike having-tried
a Ptolomaeo et Perdicca inhibetur. Medium conplexi
by Ptolemy and Perdiccas is-checked by-the-middle having-embraced-him
et obluctari perseverantem morabantur, Lysimachus et
and to-struggle persisting they-were-delaying Lysimachus and
Leonnatus etiam lanceam abstulerant: ille militum fidem
Leonnatus even the-lance had-taken-away he of-the-soldiers the-loyalty
inplorans conprehendi se a proximis amicorum, quod
imploring to-be-seized himself by the-nearest of-his-friends which
Dareo nuper accidisset, exclamat signumque tuba dari,
to-Darius recently had-happened cries-out and-the-signal by-trumpet to-be-given
ut ad regiam armati coirent, iubet. Tum vero
that to the-palace armed they-should-assemble orders then indeed
Ptolomaeus et Perdiccas genibus advoluti orant,
Ptolemy and Perdiccas at-his-knees having-thrown-themselves beg
ne in tam praecipiti ira perseveret spatiumque potius
that-not in so headlong anger he-persist and-time rather
animo det: omnia postero die iustius executurum. Sed
to-his-mind he-give all-things on-the-following day more-justly going-to-carry-out but
clausae erant aures obstrepente ira: itaque inpotens animi
shut were his-ears with-clamoring anger and-so out-of-control of-mind
procurrit in regiae vestibulum et vigili excubanti
he-runs-forward into of-the-palace the-vestibule and from-a-sentry on-watch
hasta ablata constitit in aditu, quo necesse erat his,
with-a-spear taken stood in the-entrance by-which necessary it-was for-those
qui simul cenaverant, egredi. Abierant ceteri, Clitus ultimus
who together had-dined to-go-out had-gone the-rest Clitus last
sine lumine exibat: cum rex, quisnam esset, interrogat.
without a-light was-coming-out when the-king who he-was asks
Eminebat etiam in voce sceleris, quod parabat, atrocitas.
there-stood-out even in his-voice of-the-crime which he-was-preparing the-atrocity

Et ille iam non suae, sed regis irae memor Clitum
and he now not of-his-own but the-king's anger mindful Clitus
esse et de convivio exire respondit. Haec dicentis
to-be and from the-banquet to-be-going-out replied these-things of-him-saying
latus hasta transfixit morientisque sanguine adspersus: 'I
the-side with-the-spear he-pierced and-of-the-dying with-the-blood spattered go
nunc,' inquit, 'ad Philippum et Parmenionem et Attalum.'
now he-says to Philip and Parmenio and Attalus

II · REMORSE

Sober, Alexander turns the spear on himself; he lies three days in his tent until his guards make him eat, and the Macedonians decree that Clitus was justly killed. Bactrian exiles attack Amyntas, are beaten, and pardoned. At Nautaca Sisimithres surrenders against his mother's counsel and is restored to his rule. Philip, Lysimachus' brother, runs five hundred stades beside the mounted king, shields him in a fight, then collapses and dies; Erigyius has died too, and both are buried with honors.

Male humanis ingeniis natura consuluit, quod plerumque
badly for-human natures nature has-provided because mostly
non futura, sed transacta perpendimus. Quippe rex,
not the-future but the-past we-weigh for the-king
postquam ira mente decesserat, etiam ebrietate
after anger from-his-mind had-gone also with-drunkenness
discussa magnitudinem facinoris sera aestimatione perspexit.
dispelled the-greatness of-the-deed with-late assessment perceived
Videbat tunc inmodice libertate abusum, sed alioqui egregium
he-saw then immoderately freedom having-abused but otherwise outstanding
bello virum et, nisi erubesceret fateri, servatorem sui
in-war a-man and unless he-were-ashamed to-confess the-savior of-himself

occisum. Detestabile carnificis ministerium occupaverat
killed the-detestable of-an-executioner office had-seized
rex, verborum licentiam, quae vino poterat inputari,
the-king of-words the-license which to-wine could to-be-imputed
nefanda caede ultus. Manabat toto vestibulo
with-unspeakable slaughter having-avenged there-flowed in-the-whole vestibule
cruor paulo ante convivae: vigiles attoniti et stupentibus
the-gore a-little before of-the-guest the-sentries stunned and to-the-dazed
similes procul stabant, liberioremque paenitentiam solitudo
like far-off stood and-more-free repentance the-solitude
eliciebat. Ergo hastam ex corpore iacentis evolsam
was-drawing-out therefore the-spear from the-body of-the-man-lying wrenched
retorsit in semet. Iamque admoverat pectori, cum advolant
he-turned against himself and-now he-had-moved-it to-his-breast when fly-up
vigiles et repugnanti e manibus extorquent adlevatumque
the-sentries and from-him-resisting from his-hands wrest-it and-raised
in tabernaculum deferunt. Ille humi prostraverat corpus
into his-tent carry-him he on-the-ground had-thrown his-body
gemitu eiulatuque miserabili tota personante regia.
with-groaning and-wailing pitiable with-the-whole resounding palace
Laniare deinde os unguibus et circumstantes rogare,
he-tore then his-face with-his-nails and those-standing-round he-asked
ne se tanto dedecori superstitem esse paterentur. Inter
that-not him to-so-great a-disgrace surviving to-be they-should-allow amid
has preces tota nox extracta est. Scrutantemque, num
these prayers the-whole night drawn-out was and-him-inquiring whether
ira deorum ad tantum nefas actus esset, subit
by-the-anger of-the-gods to so-great a-wrong driven he-had-been comes-to-mind
anniversarium sacrificium Libero Patri non esse redditum
the-annual sacrifice to-Liber Father not to-have-been rendered
stato tempore. Itaque inter vinum et epulas caede
at-the-fixed time and-so amid wine and feasting with-the-murder

commissa iram dei fuisse manifestam. Ceterum magis
committed the-anger of-the-god to-have-been manifest but more
eo movebatur, quod omnium amicorum animos videbat
by-this he-was-moved that of-all his-friends the-minds he-saw
attonitos: neminem cum ipso sociare sermonem postea
stunned no-one with him to-share talk afterward
ausurum, vivendum esse in solitudine velut ferae bestiae
going-to-dare to-be-lived it-was in solitude like a-wild beast
terrenti alias timentique. Prima deinde luce tabernaculo
frightening at-other-times and-afraid at-first then light into-the-tent
corpus, sicut adhuc cruentum erat, iussit inferri. Quo
the-body as still bloody it-was he-ordered to-be-brought with-which
posito ante ipsum lacrimis obortis: 'Hanc,' inquit, 'nutrici
placed before him with-tears welling-up this he-says to-nurse
meae gratiam rettuli, cuius duo filii apud Miletum
my thanks I-have-returned whose two sons at Miletus
pro mea gloria occubuere mortem, hic frater, unicum
for my glory met death this-man the-brother the-only
orbitatis solacium, a me inter epulas occisus est. Quo
of-bereavement consolation by me amid feasts killed has-been where
nunc se conferet misera? Omnibus eius unus supersum,
now herself will-she-take the-wretched of-all her one I-survive
quem solum aequis oculis videre non poterit. Et ego,
whom alone with-even eyes to-see not she-will-be-able and I
servatorum meorum latro, revertar in patriam, ut ne
of-saviors my the-robber I-shall-return to the-homeland so-that not
dexteram quidem nutrici sine memoria calamitatis eius
my-right-hand even to-my-nurse without the-memory of-calamity her
offerre possim!' Et cum finis lacrimis querellisque non
to-offer I-can and since an-end to-tears and-complaints not
fieret, iussu amicorum corpus ablatum est. Rex triduum
was-made at-the-order of-the-friends the-body removed was the-king for-three-days

iacuit inclusus. Quem ut armigeri corporisque custodes
lay shut-in whom when the-armor-bearers and-of-the-body the-guards
ad moriendum obstinatum esse cognoverunt, universi in
for dying determined to-be learned all into
tabernaculum inrumpunt diuque precibus ipsorum reluctatum
the-tent burst and-long by-the-prayers of-themselves him-resisting
aegre vicerunt, ut cibum caperet. Quoque minus
with-difficulty prevailed that food he-should-take and-that less
caedis puderet, iure interfectum Clitum Macedones
of-the-murder he-should-be-ashamed rightly killed Clitus the-Macedonians
decernunt, sepultura quoque prohibituri, ni rex humari
decree from-burial also going-to-bar-him unless the-king to-be-buried
iussisset. Igitur X diebus maxime ad confirmandum
had-ordered therefore with-ten days chiefly for strengthening
pudorem apud Maracanda consumptis cum parte exercitus
shame at Maracanda spent with part of-the-army
Hephaestionem in regionem Bactrianam misit commeatus
Hephaestion into the-region Bactrian he-sent supplies
in hiemem paraturum. Quam Clito ante destinaverat
for winter going-to-prepare which for-Clitus before he-had-marked-out
provinciam, Amyntae dedit: ipse Xenippa pervenit. Scythiae
the-province to-Amyntas he-gave himself to-Xenippa came of-Scythia
confinis est regio habitaturque pluribus ac frequentibus
bordering is the-region and-is-inhabited by-many and populous
vicis, quia ubertas terrae non indigenas modo detinet,
villages because the-fertility of-the-land not natives only holds
sed etiam advenas invitat. Bactrianorum exulum, qui ab
but even strangers invites of-the-Bactrian exiles who from
Alexandro defecerant, receptaculum fuerat: sed, postquam
Alexander had-defected the-refuge it-had-been but after
regem adventare conpertum est, pulsi ab incolis II
the-king to-be-approaching learned it-was driven-out by the-inhabitants two

milia fere et D congregantur. Omnes equites erant
thousand about and five-hundred gather all horsemen they-were
etiam in pace latrociniis adsueti: tum ferocia ingenia non
even in peace to-brigandage accustomed then the-fierce natures not
bellum modo, sed etiam veniae desperatio efferaverat. Itaque
war only but also of-pardon despair had-made-wild and-so
ex inproviso adorti Amyntan, praetorem Alexandri, diu
from the-unforeseen having-attacked Amyntas the-governor of-Alexander long
anceps proelium fecerant: ad ultimum DCC suorum
doubtful battle they-had-made at the-last with-seven-hundred of-their-own
amissis, quorum CCC hostis cepit, dedere terga
lost of-whom three-hundred the-enemy captured they-gave their-backs
victoribus haud sane inulti: quippe LXXX Macedonum
to-the-victors not at-all unavenged for eighty of-the-Macedonians
interfecerunt, praeterque eos CCC et L saucii facti sunt.
they-killed and-besides them three-hundred and fifty wounded made were
Veniam tamen etiam post alteram defectionem inpetraverunt.
pardon yet even after a-second revolt they-obtained
His in fidem acceptis in regionem, quam Nautaca
with-these into allegiance received into the-region which Nautaca
appellant, rex cum toto exercitu venit. Satrapes erat
they-call the-king with the-whole army came the-satrap was
Sisimithres duobus ex sua matre filiis genitis: quippe
Sisimithres with-two from his-own mother sons begotten for
apud eos parentibus stupro coire cum liberis fas est.
among them for-parents in-debauchery to-unite with children lawful it-is
Is armatis popularibus fauces regionis, qua in artissimum
he with-armed countrymen the-jaws of-the-region where into the-narrowest
cogitur, valido munimento saepserat. Praeterfluebat
it-is-compressed with-a-strong fortification had-fenced there-flowed-past
torrens amnis, terga petra claudebat: hanc manu perviam
a-torrent river the-rear a-rock closed this by-hand passable

incolae fecerant, sed aditu specus accipit lucem,
the-inhabitants had-made but at-the-entrance of-the-cave it-receives light
interiora nisi inlato lumine obscura sunt. Perpetuus
the-inner-parts unless with-brought-in light dark are a-continuous
cuniculus iter praebet in campos ignotum nisi indigenis.
tunnel a-route affords into the-plains unknown except to-natives
At Alexander, quamquam angustias naturali situ munitas
but Alexander although the-narrows by-natural position fortified
valida manu barbari tuebantur, tamen arietibus admotis
with-a-strong band the-barbarians were-guarding yet with-rams moved-up
munimenta, quae manu adiuncta erant, concussit fundisque
the-fortifications which by-hand added had-been shook and-with-slings
et sagittis propugnantium plerosque deiecit. Quos ubi
and arrows of-the-defenders most dislodged whom when
dispersos fugavit, ruinas munimentorum supergressus ad
scattered he-had-routed the-ruins of-the-fortifications having-crossed to
petram admovit exercitum. Ceterum interveniebat fluvius
the-rock he-moved the-army but there-intervened a-river
coeuntibus aquis ex superiore fastigio in vallem, magnique
with-meeting waters from the-higher top into the-valley and-of-great
operis videbatur tam vastam voraginem explere: caedi tamen
labor it-seemed so vast a-chasm to-fill to-be-cut yet
arbores et saxa congeri iussit. Ingensque barbaros pavor
trees and rocks to-be-heaped he-ordered and-huge the-barbarians a-panic
rudes ad talia opera concusserat excitatam molem subito
untrained for such works had-struck the-raised mass suddenly
cernentes. Itaque rex ad deditionem metu posse conpelli
seeing and-so the-king to surrender by-fear to-be-able to-be-driven
ratus Oxarten misit nationis eiusdem, sed dicionis suae,
thinking Oxartes sent of-nation the-same but of-dominion his-own
qui suaderet duci, ut traderet petram. Interim ad
who should-urge the-leader that he-should-hand-over the-rock meanwhile for

augendam formidinem et turres admovebantur et excussa
increasing the-dread both towers were-moved-up and hurled
tormentis tela micabant. Itaque verticem petrae omni
by-the-artillery missiles flashed and-so the-top of-the-rock with-every
alio praesidio damnato petiverunt. At Oxartes trepidum
other defense condemned they-sought but Oxartes the-trembling
diffidentemque rebus suis Sisimithren coepit hortari, ut
and-distrustful in-affairs his-own Sisimithres began to-urge that
fidem quam vim Macedonum mallet experiri neu
the-good-faith than the-force of-the-Macedonians he-should-prefer to-test and-not
moraretur festinationem victoris exercitus in Indiam
he-should-delay the-haste of-the-victorious army into India
tendentis: cui quisquis semet offerret, in suum caput
heading on-which whoever himself offered onto his-own head
alienam cladem esse versurum. Et ipse quidem Sisimithres
another's disaster to-be going-to-turn and himself indeed Sisimithres
deditionem non abnuebat, ceterum mater eademque coniunx
surrender not was-refusing but his-mother and-the-same wife
morituram se ante denuntians, quam in ullius veniret
going-to-die herself before declaring than into anyone's she-should-come
potestatem, barbari animum ad honestiora quam tutiora
power the-barbarian's mind to more-honorable than safer-things
converterat, pudebatque libertatis maius esse apud feminas
had-turned and-it-shamed-him of-freedom greater to-be among women
quam apud viros pretium. Itaque dimisso internuntio pacis
than among men the-price and-so with-dismissed the-go-between of-peace
obsidionem ferre decreverat. Sed cum hostis vires
the-siege to-bear he-had-decided but when of-the-enemy the-strength
suasque pensaret, rursus muliebris consilii, quod praeceps
and-his-own he-weighed again the-woman's counsel which headlong
magis quam necessarium esse credebat, paenitere eum coepit.
more than necessary to-be he-believed to-repent him began

Revocatoque strenue Oxarte futurum se in regis potestate
and-with-called-back briskly Oxartes going-to-be himself in the-king's power
respondit, unum id precatus, ne voluntatem et consilium
he-replied one-thing that having-prayed that-not the-will and plan
matris suae proderet, quo facilius venia illi quoque
of-mother his he-should-betray so-that more-easily pardon for-her also
inpetraretur. Praemissum igitur Oxarten cum matre liberisque
might-be-obtained sent-ahead therefore Oxartes with his-mother and-children
et totius cognationis grege sequebatur ne expectato
and of-the-whole kindred the-herd he-was-following not with-awaited
quidem fidei pignore, quod Oxartes promiserat. Rex
even of-good-faith the-pledge which Oxartes had-promised the-king
equite praemisso, qui reverti eos iuberet opperirique
with-a-horseman sent-ahead who to-return them should-order and-to-await
praesentiam ipsius, supervenit et victimis Minervae Victoriae
the-presence his-own came-up and with-victims to-Minerva Victory
caesis imperium Sisimithri restituit spe maioris etiam
slain the-rule to-Sisimithres he-restored with-hope of-a-greater even
provinciae facta, si cum fide amicitiam ipsius coluisset.
province made if with good-faith the-friendship his he-should-cultivate
Duos illi iuvenes patre tradente secum militaturos
two to-him young-men with-their-father handing-them-over with-him going-to-serve
sequi iussit. Relicta deinde phalange ad subigendos, qui
to-follow he-ordered with-left then the-phalanx for subduing those-who
defecerant, cum equite processit. Arduum et inpeditum
had-defected with the-cavalry he-advanced steep and obstructed
saxis iter primo utcumque tolerabant, mox equorum
by-rocks the-route at-first somehow they-bore soon of-the-horses
non ungulis modo attritis, sed corporibus etiam fatigatis
not with-the-hoofs only worn but with-the-bodies also exhausted
sequi plerique non poterant, et rarius subinde agmen
to-follow most not could and more-thinly repeatedly the-column

fiebat pudorem, ut fere fit, inmodico labore vincente.
became shame as generally it-happens with-immoderate toil overcoming
Rex tamen subinde equos mutans sine intermissione
the-king yet repeatedly horses changing without interruption
fugientes insequebatur. Nobiles iuvenes comitari eum soliti
the-fleeing pursued the-noble young-men to-accompany him accustomed
defecerant praeter Philippum: Lysimachi erat frater tum
had-dropped-out except Philip of-Lysimachus he-was the-brother then
primum adultus et, quod facile adpareret, indolis rarae. Is
first grown and as easily appeared of-nature rare he
pedes, incredibile dictu, per D stadia vectum regem
on-foot incredible to-say for five-hundred stades the-riding king
comitatus est saepe equum suum offerente Lysimacho, nec
accompanied has often with-horse his-own offering Lysimachus nor
tamen, ut digrederetur a rege, effici potuit, cum
yet that he-should-part from the-king brought-about could-it-be although
lorica indutus arma gestaret. Idem, cum perventum
in-a-breastplate dressed arms he-carried the-same-man when come
esset in saltum, in quo se barbari abdiderant, nobilem
it-was into the-forest in which themselves the-barbarians had-hidden a-noble
edidit pugnam regemque comminus cum hoste dimicantem
gave fight and-the-king hand-to-hand with the-enemy fighting
protexit. Sed postquam barbari in fugam effusi deseruere
protected but after the-barbarians into flight poured-out deserted
silvas, animus, qui in ardore pugnae corpus sustentaverat,
the-woods the-spirit which in the-ardor of-the-fight the-body had-sustained
liquit, subitoque ex omnibus membris profuso sudore
left-him and-suddenly from all his-limbs with-poured sweat
arboris proximae stipiti se adplicuit. Deinde ne illo
of-a-tree nearest to-the-trunk himself he-leaned then not with-that
quidem adminiculo sustinente manibus regis exceptus est:
even support holding-him-up in-the-hands of-the-king caught he-was

inter quas conlapsus extinguitur. Maestum regem alius haud
among which collapsing he-dies the-sorrowful king another not
levis dolor excepit. Erigyius inter claros duces fuerat: quem
light grief took Erigyius among the-famous generals had-been whom
extinctum esse paulo ante, quam reverteretur in castra,
dead to-be a-little before than he-returned into the-camp
cognovit. Utriusque funus omni apparatu atque honore
he-learned of-both the-funeral with-every pomp and honor
celebratum est.
celebrated was

III · THE HEAD OF SPITAMENES

Alexander means to march on the Dahae, where Spitamenes is. Spitamenes' wife urges him to surrender; he draws his sword on her, then begs her to drop the plan. She cuts off his head as he sleeps drunk, comes to the Macedonian camp in bloodstained clothes, and has her slave show the head. Alexander, torn between service and crime, orders her out of the camp. The Dahae hand over Dataphernes, and Alexander replaces his oppressive governors with Phrataphernes, Stasanor, Arsaces, and Stamenes.

Dahas deinde statuerat petere: ibi namque Spitamenen
the-Dahae then he-had-decided to-seek there for Spitamenes
esse cognoverat. Sed hanc quoque expeditionem, ut pleraque
to-be he-had-learned but this also expedition as most
alia, fortuna indulgendo ei numquam fatigata pro
other-things fortune by-indulging him never wearied in-place-of
absente transegit. Spitamenes uxoris inmodico amore
the-absent completed Spitamenes for-his-wife with-immoderate love
flagrabat, quam aegre fugam et nova subinde exilia
was-burning whom reluctantly flight and new repeatedly exiles

tolerantem in omne discrimen comitem trahebat. Illa
bearing into every crisis as-companion he-was-dragging she
malis fatigata identidem muliebres adhibere blanditias, ut
by-evils exhausted repeatedly womanish she-applied blandishments that
tandem fugam sisteret victorisque Alexandri clementiam
at-last flight he-should-halt and-of-the-victorious Alexander the-clemency
expertus placaret, quem effugere non posset. Tres adulti
having-tried he-should-appease whom to-escape not he-could three grown
erant liberi ex eo geniti: quos cum pectori patris
were children from him born whom when to-the-breast of-their-father
admovisset, ut saltem eorum misereri vellet, orabat: et,
she-had-moved that at-least them to-pity he-would-wish she-begged and
quo efficaciores essent preces, haud procul erat Alexander.
that more-effective might-be her-prayers not far was Alexander
Ille se prodi, non moneri ratus et formae profecto
he himself to-be-betrayed not to-be-advised thinking and of-her-beauty surely
fiducia cupere eam quam primum dedi Alexandro
in-confidence to-desire her as-soon as-possible to-be-surrendered to-Alexander
acinacem strinxit percussurus uxorem, nisi prohibitus esset
his-scimitar drew going-to-strike his-wife unless prevented he-had-been
fratrum eius occursu. Ceterum abire e conspectu
of-brothers her by-the-intervention but to-depart from sight
iubet addito metu mortis, si se oculis eius obtulisset,
he-orders with-added fear of-death if herself to-the-eyes his she-offered
et ad desiderium levandum noctes agere inter pelices coepit.
and for longing to-be-relieved the-nights to-spend among concubines he-began
Sed penitus haerens amor fastidio praesentium accensus est.
but deep-within clinging love by-disgust for-those-present inflamed was
Itaque rursus uni ei deditus orare non destitit, ut tali
and-so again to-one her devoted to-beg not he-ceased that from-such
consilio abstineret patereturque sortem, quamcumque iis
a-plan she-should-abstain and-should-allow the-lot whatever to-them

fortuna fecisset: sibi mortem deditione esse leviorem. At
fortune should-make for-himself death than-surrender to-be lighter but
illa purgare se, quod, quae utilia esse censebat, muliebriter
she cleared herself because what useful to-be she-judged womanishly
forsitan, sed fida tamen mente suasisset: de cetero
perhaps but with-loyal yet mind she-had-advised as-for the-rest
futuram in viri potestate. Spitamenes simulato captus
going-to-be in her-husband's power Spitamenes by-the-feigned taken
obsequio de die convivium apparari iubet vinoque et epulis
obedience by day a-banquet to-be-prepared orders and-with-wine and feasts
gravis et semisomnus in cubiculum fertur. Quem ut alto
heavy and half-asleep into his-bedroom is-carried whom when by-deep
et gravi somno sopitum esse sensit uxor, gladium, quem
and heavy sleep lulled to-be perceived his-wife the-sword which
veste occultaverat, stringit caputque eius abscisum cruore
in-her-clothing she-had-hidden draws and-the-head his cut-off with-blood
respersa servo suo conscio facinoris tradit. Eodem
spattered to-a-slave her-own aware of-the-deed hands-over with-the-same-man
comitante, sicuti erat cruenta veste, in Macedonum castra
accompanying just-as she-was in-bloody clothing into the-Macedonians' camp
pervenit nuntiarique Alexandro iubet, esse, quae ex
she-came and-to-be-announced to-Alexander orders to-be things-which from
ipsa deberet agnoscere. Ille protinus barbaram iussit
herself he-ought to-learn he at-once the-barbarian-woman ordered
admitti. Quam ut respersam cruore conspexit, ratus
to-be-admitted whom when spattered with-blood he-saw thinking
ad deplorandam contumeliam venisse, dicere, quae vellet,
for lamenting an-outrage to-have-come to-say what she-wished
iubet. At illa servum, quem in vestibulo stare iusserat,
he-orders but she the-slave whom in the-vestibule to-stand she-had-ordered
introduci desideravit. Qui, quia caput Spitamenis veste
to-be-brought-in desired who because the-head of-Spitamenes in-his-clothing

tectum habebat, suspectus scrutantibus, quid occuleret,
covered he-had suspected to-the-searchers what he-was-hiding
ostendit. Confuderat oris exsanguis notas pallor, nec,
showed had-confused of-the-face bloodless the-marks the-pallor nor
quis esset, nosci satis poterat: ergo rex certior
who he-was to-be-recognized sufficiently could therefore the-king more-certain
factus, humanum caput adferre eum, tabernaculo excessit
made a-human head to-be-bringing him from-the-tent went-out
percontatusque, quid rei sit, illo profitente cognoscit.
and-having-asked what of-the-matter was with-him declaring learns
Variae hinc cogitationes invicem animum diversa agitantem
various hence thoughts in-turn his-mind different-things pondering
commoverant. Meritum ingens in semet esse credebat,
had-stirred a-service huge toward himself to-be he-believed
quod transfuga et proditor, tantis rebus, si vixisset,
because the-deserter and traitor on-so-great affairs if he-had-lived
iniecturus moram, interfectus esset: contra facinus ingens
going-to-throw delay killed had-been on-the-other-hand the-crime huge
aversabatur, cum virum optime meritum de ipsa, communium
he-shrank-from since a-husband best deserving of herself of-common
parentem liberum per insidias interemisset. Vicit tamen
the-parent of-children through treachery she-had-slain prevailed yet
gratiam meriti sceleris atrocitas, denuntiarique iussit,
over-the-favor of-the-service of-the-crime the-atrocity and-to-be-announced he-ordered
ut excederet castris, ne licentiae barbarae exemplar in
that she-should-leave the-camp lest of-license barbarian the-example into
Graecorum mores et mitia ingenia transferret. Dahae
of-the-Greeks the-customs and gentle natures she-should-transfer the-Dahae
Spitamenis caede conperta Dataphernen, defectionis
of-Spitamenes with-the-murder learned Dataphernes of-revolt
eius participem, vinctum Alexandro seque dedunt. Ille
his the-sharer bound to-Alexander and-themselves surrender he

maxima praesentium curarum parte liberatus convertit
from-the-greatest of-present cares part freed turned
animum ad vindicandas iniurias eorum, quibus a praetoribus
his-mind to avenging the-wrongs of-those over-whom by governors
suis avare ac superbe imperabatur. Ergo Phratapherni
his greedily and arrogantly it-was-ruled therefore to-Phrataphernes
Hyrcaniam et Mardos cum Tapuris tradidit mandavitque,
Hyrcania and the-Mardi with the-Tapuri he-handed-over and-instructed
ut Phradaten, cui succedebat, ad se in custodiam
that Phradates whom he-was-succeeding to himself into custody
mitteret. Arsami, Drangarum praefecto, substitutus est
he-should-send for-Arsames of-the-Drangae the-governor substituted was
Stasanor, Arsaces in Mediam missus, ut Oxydates inde
Stasanor Arsaces into Media sent so-that Oxydates from-there
discederet. Babylonia demortuo Mazaeo Stameni subiecta est.
should-depart Babylonia with-dead Mazaeus to-Stamenes subjected was

IV · THE STORM AND ROXANE

Marching toward Gazaca, the army is caught in a storm of hail and lightning, and two thousand die of cold; Alexander gives his own seat by the fire to a frozen soldier. Sisimithres makes good the losses with cattle and camels, and Alexander ravages the Sacae. He comes to Oxyartes, a satrap, whose banquet of thirty maidens includes his daughter Roxane. Alexander falls in love and marries her by the Macedonian rite of breaking bread with a sword; his friends are ashamed, but no one dares to speak.

His conpositis tertio mense ex hibernis movit
with-these settled in-the-third month from winter-quarters he-moved
exercitum regionem, quae Gazaca appellatur, aditurus.
the-army the-region which Gazaca is-called going-to-approach
Primus dies quietum iter praebuit, proximus ei nondum
the-first day a-quiet march afforded the-next to-it not-yet

quidem procellosus et tristis, obscurior tamen pristino
indeed stormy and grim darker yet than-the-former
non sine minis crescentis mali praeteriit, tertio ab
not without threats of-growing evil passed on-the-third from
omni parte caeli emicare fulgura et nunc internitente
every part of-the-sky to-flash lightnings and now with-shining-through
luce, nunc condita non oculos modo meantis exercitus,
light now hidden not the-eyes only of-the-marching army
sed etiam animos terrere coeperunt. Erat prope continuus
but also the-minds to-terrify began there-was almost continuous
caeli fragor, et passim cadentium fulminum species
of-the-sky crashing and everywhere of-falling thunderbolts the-appearance
visebatur, attonitisque auribus stupens agmen nec progredi
was-seen and-with-stunned ears dazed the-column neither to-advance
nec consistere audebat: cum repente imber grandinem
nor to-halt dared when suddenly a-rain hail
incutiens torrentis modo effunditur. Ac primo quidem
hurling of-a-torrent in-the-manner is-poured and at-first indeed
armis suis tecti exceperant, sed iam nec retinere arma
by-arms their-own covered they-had-received-it but now neither to-hold the-arms
lubrica rigentes manus poterant nec ipsi destinare, in
slippery the-stiffening hands could nor themselves to-determine into
quam regionem obverterent corpora, cum undique tempestatis
what direction to-turn their-bodies since on-all-sides of-the-storm
violentia maior, quam vitabatur, occurreret. Ergo ordinibus
the-violence greater than was-avoided met-them therefore with-the-ranks
solutis per totum saltum errabundum agmen ferebatur,
loosened through the-whole forest the-wandering column was-carried
multique prius metu quam labore defetigati prostraverant
and-many sooner by-fear than by-toil exhausted had-thrown
humi corpora, quamquam imbrem vis frigoris concreto
on-the-ground their-bodies although the-rain the-force of-the-cold with-congealed

gelu adstrinxerat. Alii se stipitibus arborum admoverant:
frost had-bound others themselves to-the-trunks of-trees had-moved
id plurimis et adminiculum et suffugium erat. Nec fallebat
that for-very-many both a-support and a-refuge was nor did-it-escape
ipsos morti locum eligere se, cum inmobilis vitalis
them for-death a-place to-choose themselves when them-motionless vital
calor linqueret: sed grata erat pigritia corporum fatigatis,
heat was-leaving but welcome was the-sluggishness of-their-bodies to-the-weary
nec recusabant extingui quiescendo. Quippe non vehemens
nor did-they-refuse to-die by-resting for not violent
modo, sed etiam pertinax vis mali insistebat, lucemque,
only but also stubborn the-force of-the-evil pressed and-the-light
naturale solacium, praeter tempestatem haud disparem nocti
nature's consolation besides the-storm not unlike to-the-night
silvarum quoque umbra suppresserat. Rex unus tanti
of-the-woods also the-shade had-suppressed the-king alone of-so-great
mali patiens circumire milites, contrahere dispersos, adlevare
an-evil enduring goes-round the-soldiers gathers the-scattered raises
prostratos, ostendere procul evolutum ex tuguriis fumum
the-prostrate shows far-off rolled-up from huts the-smoke
hortarique, ut proxima quaeque suffugia occuparent. Nec
and-urges that the-nearest each refuges they-should-seize nor
ulla res magis saluti fuit, quam quod multiplicato labore
any thing more for-safety was than that with-multiplied toil
sufficientem malis, quis ipsi cesserant, regem deserere
holding-out to-the-evils to-which they-themselves had-yielded the-king to-desert
erubescebant. Ceterum efficacior in adversis necessitas quam
they-were-ashamed but more-effective in adversity necessity than
ratio frigoris remedium invenit: dolabris enim silvas sternere
reason of-the-cold a-remedy found with-axes for the-woods to-lay-low
adgressi passim acervos struesque accenderunt. Continenti
having-begun everywhere heaps and-piles they-kindled with-a-continuous

incendio ardere crederes saltum et vix inter flammas
fire to-burn you-would-believe the-forest and scarcely amid the-flames
agminibus relictum locum. Hic calor stupentia membra
for-the-columns left room this heat the-numb limbs
commovit, paulatimque spiritus, quem continuerat rigor,
stirred and-gradually the-breath which had-held-back the-stiffness
meare libere coepit. Excepere alios tecta barbarorum, quae
to-move freely began received some the-roofs of-the-barbarians which
in ultimo saltu abdita necessitas investigaverat, alios castra,
in the-farthest forest hidden necessity had-tracked-down others the-camp
quae in humido quidem, sed iam caeli mitescente
which in a-damp-place indeed but now of-the-sky with-growing-mild
saevitia locaverunt. Duo milia militum atque lixarum
the-savagery they-pitched two thousand of-soldiers and of-camp-followers
calonumque pestis illa consumpsit. Memoriae proditum
and-of-servants plague that consumed to-memory handed-down
est quosdam adplicatos arborum truncis et non solum
it-is some leaning of-trees on-the-trunks and not only
viventibus, sed etiam inter se conloquentibus similis esse
to-the-living but even among themselves conversing similar to-be
conspectos durante adhuc habitu, in quo mors quemque
seen with-lasting still the-posture in which death each
deprenderat. Forte Macedo gregarius miles seque et
had-caught by-chance a-Macedonian common soldier both-himself and
arma male sustentans tamen in castra pervenerat: quo
his-arms badly supporting yet into the-camp had-come with-whom
viso rex, quamquam ipse tum maxime admoto igne
seen the-king although himself then especially with-moved-up fire
refovebat artus, ex sella sua exiluit torpentemque militem
was-warming his-limbs from the-chair his-own leapt-out and-the-numb soldier
et vix compotem mentis demptis armis in sua sede
and scarcely master of-his-mind with-removed arms in his-own seat

iussit considere. Ille diu nec, ubi requiesceret, nec, a
ordered to-sit he long neither where he-was-resting nor by
quo esset exceptus, agnovit. Tandem recepto calore
whom he-had-been received recognized at-last with-recovered heat
vitali, ut regiam sedem regemque vidit, territus surgit.
vital when the-royal seat and-the-king he-saw terrified rises
Quem intuens Alexander: 'Ecquid intellegis, miles,' inquit,
whom looking-at Alexander at-all do-you-understand soldier he-says
'quanto meliore sorte quam Persae sub rege vivatis?
by-how-much better in-lot than the-Persians under a-king you-live
Illis enim in sella regis consedisse capital foret, tibi
for-them for on the-seat of-the-king to-have-sat capital would-be to-you
saluti fuit.' Postero die convocatis amicis copiarumque
for-safety it-was on-the-following day with-called-together the-friends and-of-the-forces
ducibus pronuntiari iussit, ipsum omnia, quae amissa essent,
the-generals to-be-proclaimed ordered himself everything which lost had-been
redditurum. Et promisso fides extitit. Nam Sisimithres
going-to-restore and to-the-promise fulfillment appeared for Sisimithres
multa iumenta et camelorum II milia adduxit pecoraque
many pack-animals and of-camels two thousand brought and-flocks
et armenta: quae distributa pariter militem et damno
and herds which distributed alike the-soldier both from-loss
et fame liberaverunt. Rex gratiam sibi relatam a
and from-hunger freed the-king the-favor to-himself returned by
Sisimithre perlaetus sex dierum cocta cibaria ferre milites
Sisimithres overjoyed of-six days cooked rations to-carry the-soldiers
iussit, Sacas petens. Totam hanc regionem depopulatus XXX
ordered the-Sacae seeking the-whole this region having-ravaged thirty
milia pecorum ex praeda Sisimithri dono dat. Inde
thousand of-cattle from the-plunder to-Sisimithres as-a-gift gives from-there
pervenit in regionem, cui Oxyartes, satrapes nobilis,
he-came into the-region over-which Oxyartes satrap noble

praeerat, qui se regis potestati fideique permisit. Ille
ruled who himself of-the-king to-the-power and-good-faith entrusted he
imperio ei reddito haud amplius quam, ut duo ex tribus
with-the-rule to-him returned not more than that two of three
filiis secum militarent, exegit. Satrapes etiam eo, qui penes
sons with-him should-serve demanded the-satrap even with-him who with
ipsum relinquebatur, tradito barbara opulentia convivium,
himself was-being-left handed-over with-barbarian opulence the-banquet
quo regem accipiebat, instruxerat: id cum multa comitate
with-which the-king he-was-receiving had-furnished it when with-much courtesy
celebraretur, introduci XXX nobiles virgines iussit. Inter
it-was-celebrated to-be-brought-in thirty noble maidens he-ordered among
quas erat filia ipsius, Roxane nomine, eximia corporis
whom was the-daughter his-own Roxane by-name of-exceptional of-body
specie et decore habitus in barbaris raro. Quae quamquam
beauty and grace of-bearing among barbarians rare who although
inter electas processerat, omnium tamen oculos convertit
among chosen-girls she-had-come-forth of-all yet the-eyes turned
in se, maxime regis minus iam cupiditatibus suis
to herself most of-the-king less now the-desires his-own
imperantis inter obsequia fortunae, contra quam non satis
commanding amid the-indulgences of-fortune against which not sufficiently
cauta mortalitas est. Itaque ille, qui uxorem Darei, qui duas
cautious mortality is and-so he who the-wife of-Darius who the-two
filias virgines, quibus forma praeter Roxanen conparari
daughters maidens to-whom in-beauty besides Roxane to-be-compared
nulla potuerat, haud alio animo quam parentis aspexerat,
none could not with-other mind than of-a-parent had-looked-at
tunc in amorem virgunculae, si regiae stirpi conpararetur,
then into love of-a-girl if to-royal stock she-were-compared
ignobilis ita effusus est, ut diceret ad stabiliendum
obscure so poured-out he-was that he-said for strengthening

regnum pertinere Persas et Macedones conubio iungi:
the-kingdom to-pertain the-Persians and the-Macedonians in-wedlock to-be-joined
hoc uno modo et pudorem victis et superbiam
in-this one way both shame from-the-conquered and arrogance
victoribus detrahi posse. Achillem quoque, a quo
from-the-victors to-be-removed to-be-able Achilles too from whom
genus ipse deduceret, cum captiva coisse: ne inferri
his-descent he-himself derived with a-captive to-have-united lest to-be-inflicted
nefas arbitrentur victi, matrimonii iure velle iungi.
a-wrong should-think the-conquered of-marriage by-the-right to-wish to-be-joined
Insperato gaudio elatus pater sermonem eius excipit, et
with-unhoped-for joy carried-away the-father the-speech his takes-up and
rex in medio cupiditatis ardore iussit adferri patrio
the-king in the-middle desire's ardor ordered to-be-brought in-the-ancestral
more panem — hoc erat apud Macedonas sanctissimum
manner bread this was among the-Macedonians the-most-sacred
coeuntium pignus—, quem divisum gladio uterque libabat.
of-those-marrying pledge which divided by-sword each tasted
Credo eos, qui gentis mores condiderunt, parco
I-believe those who of-the-nation the-customs founded with-sparing
et parabili victu ostendere voluisse iungentibus opes,
and easily-got fare to-show to-have-wished to-those-joining their-wealth
quantulo contenti esse deberent. Hoc modo rex Asiae et
with-how-little content to-be they-ought in-this manner the-king of-Asia and
Europae introductam inter convivales ludos matrimonio
Europe one-brought-in among the-convivial entertainments in-marriage
sibi adiunxit ex captiva geniturus, qui victoribus
to-himself joined from a-captive going-to-beget one-who over-the-victors
imperaret. Pudebat amicos super vinum et epulas socerum
should-rule it-shamed the-friends over wine and feasts a-father-in-law

ex deditis esse delectum, sed post Cliti caedem
from the-surrendered to-have-been chosen but after Clitus' murder
libertate sublata vultu, qui maxime servit, adsentiebantur.
with-freedom removed with-a-face which most is-servile they-assented

V · THE PROSTRATION

Before India, Alexander levies thirty thousand youths. He wants to be worshiped as a god, Persian fashion. At a banquet, while he listens behind a curtain, Cleo the Sicilian proposes that the guests prostrate themselves. Callisthenes answers that only posterity makes great men gods and that Macedonians should not learn worship from the conquered. Polyperchon mocks a Persian bowing; Alexander throws him down and has him taken into custody.

Ceterum Indiam et inde Oceanum petiturus, ne quid
but India and from-there the-Ocean going-to-seek lest anything
a tergo, quod destinata inpedire posset, moveretur, ex
at the-rear which the-plans to-hinder could should-stir from
omnibus provinciis XXX milia iuniorum legi iussit et
all the-provinces thirty thousand of-young-men to-be-picked he-ordered and
ad se armata perduci obsides simul habiturus et milites.
to himself armed to-be-brought as-hostages at-once going-to-have and as-soldiers
Craterum autem ad persequendos Haustanen et Catanen,
Craterus moreover for pursuing Haustanes and Catanes
qui ab ipso defecerant, misit: quorum Haustanes captus
who from him had-defected he-sent of-whom Haustanes captured
est, Catanes in proelio occisus. Polypercon quoque regionem,
was Catanes in battle killed Polyperchon also the-region
quae Bubacene appellatur, in dicionem redegit. Itaque
which Bubacene is-called into dominion brought and-so
omnibus conpositis cogitationes in bellum Indicum vertit.
with-everything settled his-thoughts to the-war Indian he-turned

Dives regio habebatur non auro modo, sed gemmis quoque
a-rich region it-was-held not in-gold only but in-gems also
margaritisque, ad luxum magis quam ad magnificentiam
and-pearls for luxury more than for magnificence
exculta. Periti militum res auro et ebore fulgere
adorned the-experienced the-soldiers' affairs with-gold and ivory to-gleam
dicebant: itaque, necubi vinceretur, cum ceteris praestaret,
said and-so lest-anywhere he-be-surpassed since in-all-else he-excelled
scutis argenteas laminas, equis frenos aureos addidit,
to-the-shields silver plates to-the-horses bridles golden he-added
loricas quoque alias auro, alias argento adornavit.
the-breastplates also some with-gold others with-silver he-adorned
CXX milia armatorum erant, quae regem ad
a-hundred-and-twenty thousand armed-men there-were who the-king to
id bellum sequebantur. Iamque omnibus praeparatis ratus,
that war were-following and-now with-everything prepared thinking
quod olim prava mente conceperat, tunc esse maturum,
what long-ago with-perverse mind he-had-conceived then to-be ripe
quonam modo caelestes honores usurparet, coepit agitare.
in-what manner heavenly honors he-might-usurp he-began to-ponder
Iovis filium non dici tantum se, sed etiam credi
of-Jupiter the-son not to-be-called only himself but also to-be-believed
volebat, tamquam perinde animis imperare posset ac linguis,
he-wished as-though equally minds to-command he-could as tongues
iussitque more Persarum Macedonas venerabundos
and-he-ordered in-the-manner of-the-Persians the-Macedonians doing-reverence
ipsum salutare prosternentes humi corpora. Non deerat
him to-salute throwing on-the-ground their-bodies not was-lacking
talia concupiscenti perniciosa adulatio, perpetuum malum
such-things to-one-coveting ruinous flattery the-perpetual evil
regum, quorum opes saepius adsentatio quam hostis evertit.
of-kings whose power more-often flattery than an-enemy overturns

Nec Macedonum haec erat culpa — nemo enim illorum
nor of-the-Macedonians this was the-fault no-one for of-them
quicquam ex patrio more labare sustinuit — sed Graecorum,
anything of the-ancestral custom to-totter endured but of-the-Greeks
qui professionem honestarum artium malis conruperant
who the-profession of-honorable arts by-bad had-corrupted
moribus, Agis quidem Argivus, pessimorum carminum post
morals Agis indeed the-Argive of-the-worst poems after
Choerilum conditor, et ex Sicilia Cleo, hic quidem
Choerilus the-composer and from Sicily Cleo this-man indeed
non ingenii solum, sed etiam nationis vitio adulator, et
not of-talent only but also of-nation by-the-vice a-flatterer and
cetera urbium suarum purgamenta, quae propinquis etiam
the-other of-cities their-own the-scum which to-the-kinsmen even
maximorumque exercituum ducibus a rege inserebantur.
and-of-the-greatest armies to-the-generals by the-king were-ranked-among
Hi tum caelum illi aperiebant Herculemque et Patrem
these then heaven to-him were-opening and-Hercules and Father
Liberum et cum Polluce Castorem novo numini cessuros
Liber and with Pollux Castor to-the-new divinity going-to-yield
esse iactabant. Igitur festo die omni opulentia convivium
to-be they-boasted therefore on-a-festal day with-all opulence a-banquet
exornari iubet, cui non Macedones modo et Graeci,
to-be-adorned he-orders to-which not the-Macedonians only and the-Greeks
principes amicorum, sed etiam hostium nobiles adhiberentur.
the-chief of-the-friends but also of-the-enemy the-nobles were-invited
Cum quibus cum discubuisset rex, paulisper epulatus
with whom when had-reclined the-king a-little having-feasted
convivio egreditur. Cleo, sicut praeparatum erat, sermonem
from-the-banquet goes-out Cleo as prepared it-was a-speech
cum admiratione laudum eius instituit. Merita deinde
with admiration of-praises his began the-merits then

percensuit: quibus uno modo referri gratiam posse, si,
he-reviewed for-which in-one way to-be-returned thanks to-be-able if
quem intellegerent deum esse, confiterentur exigua turis
whom they-understood a-god to-be they-should-confess by-a-small of-incense
inpensa tanta beneficia pensaturi. Persas quidem non pie
expense so-great kindnesses going-to-repay the-Persians indeed not dutifully
solum, sed etiam prudenter reges suos inter deos colere:
only but also wisely kings their among the-gods to-worship
maiestatem enim imperii salutis esse tutelam. Ne Herculem
the-majesty for of-empire of-safety to-be the-protection not Hercules
quidem et Patrem Liberum prius dicatos deos, quam
even and Father Liber before declared gods than
vicissent secum viventium invidiam: tantum de quoque
they-had-conquered with-them of-those-living the-envy so-much about each
posteros credere, quantum praesens aetas spopondisset. Quodsi
posterity to-believe as-much-as the-present age had-guaranteed but-if
ceteri dubitent, semetipsum, cum rex inisset convivium,
the-rest should-doubt himself when the-king had-entered the-banquet
prostraturum humi corpus. Debere idem facere ceteros
going-to-prostrate on-the-ground his-body to-be-obliged the-same to-do the-rest
et in primis sapientia praeditos: ab illis enim cultus
and in the-first-place with-wisdom endowed by them for of-worship
in regem exemplum esse prodendum. Haud perplexe in
toward the-king the-example to-be to-be-shown not ambiguously against
Callisthenen dirigebatur oratio. Gravitas viri et prompta
Callisthenes was-directed the-speech the-gravity of-the-man and ready
libertas invisa erat regi, quasi solus Macedonas paratos ad
frankness hateful were to-the-king as-if alone the-Macedonians ready for
tale obsequium moraretur. Is tum silentio facto unum illum
such obedience he-were-delaying he then with-silence made him alone
intuentibus ceteris: 'Si rex,' inquit, 'sermoni tuo adfuisset,
with-looking-at the-rest if the-king he-says at-speech your had-been-present

nullius profecto vox responsuri tibi desideraretur: ipse
of-no-one surely the-voice going-to-reply to-you would-be-lacked he-himself
enim peteret, ne in peregrinos ritus externosque degenerare
for would-beg that-not into foreign rites and-outside to-degenerate
se cogeres neu rebus felicissime gestis invidiam tali
him you-should-compel nor on-affairs most-happily done odium by-such
adulatione contraheres. Sed quoniam abest, ego tibi pro
flattery you-should-draw but since he-is-absent I to-you for
illo respondeo nullum esse eundem et diuturnum et
him reply none to-be the-same both lasting and
praecoquem fructum, caelestesque honores non dare te
premature fruit and-heavenly honors not to-give you
regi, sed auferre. Intervallo enim opus est, ut credatur
to-the-king but to-take-away an-interval for need there-is that he-be-believed
deus, semperque hanc gratiam magnis viris posteri reddunt.
a-god and-always this favor to-great men posterity returns
Ego autem seram inmortalitatem precor regi, ut et vita
I however a-late immortality pray for-the-king that both his-life
diuturna sit et aeterna maiestas. Hominem consequitur
lasting may-be and eternal his-majesty a-man follows
aliquando, numquam comitatur divinitas. Herculem modo et
sometimes never accompanies divinity Hercules just-now and
Patrem Liberum consecratae inmortalitatis exempla referebas.
Father Liber of-consecrated immortality as-examples you-were-citing
Credisne illos unius convivii decreto deos factos? Prius
do-you-believe them of-one of-banquet by-the-decree gods made sooner
ab oculis mortalium amolita natura est, quam in caelum
from the-eyes of-mortals removed nature was than into heaven
fama perveheret. Scilicet ego et tu, Cleo, deos facimus,
fame carried-them doubtless I and you Cleo gods make
a nobis divinitatis suae auctoritatem accepturus est rex.
from us of-divinity his-own the-authority going-to-receive is the-king

Potentiam tuam experiri libet: fac aliquem regem, si deum
the-power your to-test it-pleases make someone a-king if a-god
potes facere! Facilius est caelum dare quam imperium?
you-can make easier it-is heaven to-give than empire
Di propitii sine invidia, quae Cleo dixit, audierint
may-the-gods favorable without envy what Cleo said hear
eodemque cursu, quo fluxere adhuc res, ire patiantur.
and-in-the-same course in-which have-flowed hitherto affairs to-go allow
Nostris moribus velint nos esse contentos. Non pudet
with-our customs may-they-wish us to-be content not I-am-ashamed
patriae, nec desidero, ad quem modum rex mihi
of-my-homeland nor do-I-desire in what manner the-king by-me
colendus sit, discere a victis. Quos equidem victores
to-be-worshiped is to-learn from the-conquered whom I-indeed victors
esse confiteor, si ab illis leges, quis vivamus, accipimus.'
to-be confess if from them the-laws by-which we-are-to-live we-receive
Aequis auribus Callisthenes veluti vindex publicae
with-favorable ears Callisthenes as-if the-champion of-public
libertatis audiebatur. Expresserat non adsensionem modo, sed
freedom was-heard he-had-drawn-out not assent only but
etiam vocem, seniorum praecipue, quibus gravis erat inveterati
also voice of-the-elders especially to-whom grievous was of-ingrained
moris externa mutatio. Nec quicquam eorum, quae invicem
custom a-foreign change nor anything of-those-things which in-turn
iactata erant, rex ignorabat, cum post aulaea, quae
bandied had-been the-king was-ignorant-of since behind the-curtains which
lectis obduxerat, staret. Igitur ad Agin et Cleonem
on-the-couches he-had-drawn he-was-standing therefore to Agis and Cleo
misit, ut sermone finito barbaros tantum, cum intrasset,
he-sent that with-the-speech ended the-barbarians only when he-had-entered
procumbere suo more paterentur, et paulo post,
to-prostrate-themselves in-their-own manner they-should-allow and a-little later

quasi potiora quaedam egisset, convivium repetit.
as-if more-important some-things he-had-done the-banquet he-seeks-again
Quem venerantibus Persis Polypercon, qui cubabat super
whom with-doing-reverence the-Persians Polyperchon who was-reclining above
regem, unum ex iis mento contingentem humum per
the-king one of them with-his-chin touching the-ground in
ludibrium coepit hortari, ut vehementius id quateret ad
mockery began to-urge that more-vehemently it he-should-strike against
terram, elicuitque iram Alexandri, quam olim animo
the-earth and-he-drew-out the-anger of-Alexander which long-since in-his-mind
capere non poterat. Itaque rex: 'Tu autem,' inquit, 'non
to-contain not he-could and-so the-king you however he-says not
veneraberis me? An tibi uni digni videmur esse ludibrio?'
will-revere me or to-you alone worthy do-we-seem to-be of-mockery
Ille nec regem ludibrio nec se contemptu dignum esse
he neither the-king of-mockery nor himself of-contempt worthy to-be
respondit. Tum detractum eum lecto rex praecipitat
replied then pulled him from-the-couch the-king hurls
in terram et, cum is pronus corruisset: 'Videsne,' inquit,
onto the-ground and when he prone had-fallen do-you-see he-says
'idem te fecisse, quod in alio paulo ante ridebas?'
the-same you to-have-done which in another a-little before you-were-laughing-at
Et tradi eo in custodiam iusso convivium solvit.
and to-be-handed-over with-him into custody ordered the-banquet broke-up

Alexander pardons Polyperchon, but his anger turns on Callisthenes. Hermolaus, a royal page, is flogged for striking a boar the king meant to strike; with Sostratus and other pages he plots to kill Alexander in his sleep. On the chosen night a woman thought to be inspired sends Alexander back to the banquet, and he drinks into the morning. Epimenes betrays the plot through his brother. The pages and Callisthenes are arrested, the pages confess, and Alexander asks what he has done to deserve it.

Polyperconti quidem postea custodito diu ignovit: in
Polyperchon indeed afterward kept-in-custody long he-pardoned against
Callisthenen olim contumacia suspectum pervicacioris irae
Callisthenes long-since for-defiance suspect of-more-stubborn anger
fuit. Cuius explendae matura obvenit occasio. Mos erat,
he-was for-which to-be-satisfied a-ripe came opportunity the-custom was
ut supra dictum est, principibus Macedonum adultos
as above said it-is for-the-chief-men of-the-Macedonians grown
liberos regibus tradere ad munia haud multum servilibus
sons to-the-kings to-hand-over for duties not much from-servile
ministeriis abhorrentia. Excubabant servatis noctium vicibus
services differing they-kept-watch with-kept of-the-nights turns
proximi foribus eius aedis, in qua rex adquiescebat.
nearest to-the-doors of-that chamber in which the-king was-resting
Per hos pelices introducebantur alio aditu, quam
through these concubines were-brought-in by-another entrance than
quem armati obsidebant. Idem acceptos ab
that-which the-armed-men beset the-same-youths received from
agasonibus equos, cum rex ascensurus esset, admovebant
the-grooms the-horses when the-king going-to-mount was brought-up
comitabanturque et venantem et in proeliis omnibus artibus
and-they-accompanied both when-hunting and in battles in-all the-arts
studiorum liberalium exculti. Praecipuus honor habebatur,
of-studies liberal trained the-chief honor was-held

quod licebat sedentibus vesci cum rege. Castigandi eos
that it-was-allowed sitting to-eat with the-king of-chastising them
verberibus nullius potestas praeter ipsum erat. Haec cohors
with-blows of-no-one the-power besides himself was this cohort
velut seminarium ducum praefectorumque apud Macedonas
as-if the-seed-bed of-generals and-commanders among the-Macedonians
fuit: hinc habuere posteri reges, quorum stirpi post
was from-here had the-later kings from-whose stock after
multas aetates Romani opes ademerunt. Igitur Hermolaus,
many ages the-Romans the-power took-away therefore Hermolaus
puer nobilis ex regia cohorte, cum aprum telo
a-boy noble from the-royal cohort when a-boar with-his-weapon
occupasset, quem rex ferire destinaverat, iussu eius
he-had-anticipated which the-king to-strike had-intended at-the-order his
verberibus adfectus est. Quam ignominiam aegre ferens
with-blows afflicted was which disgrace hard bearing
deflere apud Sostratum coepit. Ex eadem cohorte erat
to-bewail before Sostratus he-began from the-same cohort was
Sostratus, amore eius ardens: qui cum laceratum corpus,
Sostratus with-love for-him burning who when the-mangled body
in quo deperibat, intueretur, forsitan olim ob
in which he-was-desperately-in-love he-looked-at perhaps long-since on-account-of
aliam quoque causam regi infestus, iuvenem sua
another also reason to-the-king hostile the-young-man of-his-own
sponte iam motum data fide acceptaque perpulit, ut
accord already moved with-given pledge and-received drove that
occidendi regem consilium secum iniret. Nec puerili
of-killing the-king the-plan with-him he-should-enter nor with-boyish
impetu rem executi sunt: quippe sollerter legerunt, quos
impulse the-thing carried-out have-they for skillfully they-chose whom
in societatem sceleris adsciscerent. Nicostratum, Antipatrum
into the-partnership of-the-crime they-should-admit Nicostratus Antipater

Asclepiodorumque et Philotan placuit adsumi: per hos
and-Asclepiodorus and Philotas it-was-decided to-be-taken-on through these
adiecti sunt Anticles et Aphthonius et Epimenes. Ceterum
added were Anticles and Aphthonius and Epimenes but
agendae rei haud sane facilis patebat via: opus erat
of-doing the-deed not at-all easy lay-open a-way need there-was
eadem omnis coniuratos nocte excubare, ne ab expertibus
on-the-same all the-conspirators night to-keep-watch lest by those-without-share
consilii inpedirentur, forte autem alius alia nocte
of-the-plan they-be-hindered by-chance however one on-another night
excubabat. Itaque in permutandis stationum vicibus ceteroque
kept-watch and-so in exchanging of-the-posts the-turns and-in-the-other
apparatu exequendae rei XXX et duo dies absumpti sunt.
preparation of-carrying-out the-deed thirty and two days spent were
Aderat nox, qua coniurati excubare debebant, mutua
there-came the-night on-which the-conspirators to-keep-watch ought in-mutual
fide laeti, cuius documentum tot dies fuerant. Neminem
good-faith glad of-which the-proof so-many days had-been no-one
metus spesve mutaverat: tanta omnibus vel in regem ira
fear or-hope had-changed so-great in-all either against the-king anger
vel fides inter ipsos fuit. Stabant igitur ad fores aedis
or loyalty among themselves was they-stood therefore at the-doors of-the-chamber
eius, in qua rex vescebatur, ut convivio egressum in
of-that in which the-king was-dining that from-the-banquet having-gone-out into
cubiculum deducerent. Sed fortuna ipsius simulque
his-bedroom they-might-escort-him but the-fortune his-own and-at-the-same-time
epulantium comitas provexit omnes ad largius vinum:
of-the-feasters the-courtesy carried all to more-freely wine
ludi etiam convivales extraxere tempus nunc laetantibus
the-games also convivial drew-out the-time now with-rejoicing
coniuratis, quod sopitum adgressuri essent, nunc sollicitis, ne
the-conspirators that him-asleep going-to-attack they-were now anxious lest

in lucem convivium extraheret. Quippe alios in stationem
into the-light the-banquet he-should-draw-out for others into the-post
oportebat prima luce succedere ipsorum post septimum
it-was-necessary at-first light to-take-over their-own after the-seventh
diem reditura vice, nec sperare poterant in illud
day with-going-to-return turn nor to-hope could-they to that
tempus omnibus duraturam fidem. Ceterum cum iam lux
time in-all going-to-last the-loyalty but when now the-light
adpeteret, et convivium solvitur et coniurati exceperunt
was-approaching both the-banquet is-broken-up and the-conspirators received
regem laeti occasionem exequendi sceleris admotam: cum
the-king glad the-opportunity of-carrying-out the-crime moved-up when
mulier attonitae, ut creditum est, mentis conversari in
a-woman stunned as believed was of-mind to-be-about in
regia solita, quia instinctu videbatur futura praedicere,
the-palace accustomed because by-inspiration she-seemed the-future to-foretell
non occurrit modo abeunti, sed etiam semet obiecit
not met-him only departing but also herself threw-in-his-way
vultuque et oculis motum praeferens animi, ut rediret
and-with-face and eyes the-agitation showing of-mind that he-should-return
in convivium, monuit. Et ille per ludum, bene deos
to the-banquet she-advised and he in jest well the-gods
suadere, respondit revocatisque amicis in horam diei ferme
to-advise replied and-with-recalled friends to the-hour of-the-day about
secundam convivii tempus extraxit. Iam alii ex cohorte in
second of-the-banquet the-time he-drew-out now others from the-cohort into
stationem successerant ante cubiculi fores excubituri, adhuc
the-post had-succeeded before the-bedroom's doors going-to-keep-watch still
tamen coniurati stabant vice officii sui expleta:
yet the-conspirators were-standing with-the-turn of-duty their-own completed
adeo pertinax spes est, quam humanae mentes devoraverunt.
so stubborn a-hope is which human minds have-devoured

Rex benignius quam alias adlocutus discedere eos
the-king more-kindly than at-other-times having-addressed-them to-go-away them
ad curanda corpora, quoniam tota nocte perstitissent, iubet.
for tending their-bodies since the-whole night they-had-stood-fast orders
Data singulis L sestertia, conlaudatique, quod etiam aliis
were-given to-each fifty sestertia and-they-were-praised because even to-others
tradita vice tamen excubare perseverassent. Illi tanta
with-handed-over turn yet to-keep-watch they-had-persevered they of-so-great
spe destituti domos abeunt. Et ceteri quidem expectabant
hope deprived home go-away and the-others indeed were-awaiting
stationis suae noctem: Epimenes sive comitate regis,
of-post their-own the-night Epimenes whether by-the-courtesy of-the-king
qua ipsum inter coniuratos exceperat, repente mutatus,
with-which him among the-conspirators he-had-received suddenly changed
sive quia coeptis deos obstare credebat, fratri suo
or because to-the-undertakings the-gods to-oppose he-believed to-brother his-own
Eurylocho, quem antea expertem esse consilii voluerat,
Eurylochus whom before without-share to-be of-the-plan he-had-wished
quid pararetur, aperit. Omnibus Philotae supplicium in
what was-being-prepared discloses to-all Philotas' punishment before
oculis erat: itaque protinus inicit fratri manum et
their-eyes was and-so at-once he-lays on-his-brother his-hand and
in regiam pervenit excitatisque custodibus corporis ad
into the-palace comes and-with-roused the-guards of-the-body to
salutem regis pertinere, quae adferret, adfirmat. Et
the-safety of-the-king to-pertain what he-was-bringing affirms both
tempus, quo venerant, et vultus haud sane securi
the-time at-which they-had-come and the-face not at-all of-a-secure
animi index et maestitia e duobus alterius Ptolomaeum
mind the-sign and the-gloom of the-two of-the-one Ptolemy
ac Leonnatum excubantes ad cubiculi limen excitaverunt.
and Leonnatus keeping-watch at the-bedroom's threshold roused

Itaque apertis foribus et lumine inlato sopitum mero
and-so with-opened doors and light brought-in drowsed with-wine
ac somno excitant regem. Ille paulatim mente collecta,
and sleep they-rouse the-king he gradually with-his-mind collected
quid adferrent, interrogat. Nec cunctatus Eurylochus
what they-were-bringing asks nor having-hesitated Eurylochus
non ex toto domum suam aversari deos dixit, quia
not from whole house his-own to-turn-away-from the-gods said because
frater ipsius, quamquam impium facinus ausus foret, tamen
brother his-own although an-impious crime dared he-had yet
et paenitentiam eius ageret et per se potissimum
both repentance its he-was-feeling and through himself especially
profiteretur indicium: in eam ipsam noctem, quae decederet,
was-declaring the-information for that very night which was-departing
insidias conparatas fuisse, auctores scelesti consilii esse,
a-plot prepared to-have-been the-authors of-the-criminal plan to-be
quos minime crederet rex. Tum Epimenes cuncta
those-whom least would-believe the-king then Epimenes everything
ordine consciorumque nomina exponit. Callisthenen non
in-order and-of-the-accomplices the-names sets-forth Callisthenes not
ut participem facinoris nominatum esse constabat, sed
as a-sharer of-the-crime named to-have-been it-was-agreed but
solitum puerorum sermonibus vituperantium criminantiumque
accustomed to-the-boys' talk blaming and-accusing
regem faciles aures praebere. Quidam adiciunt, cum Hermolaus
the-king easy ears to-offer some add when Hermolaus
apud eum quoque verberatum se a rege quereretur,
before him also beaten himself by the-king was-complaining
dixisse Callisthenen, meminisse debere eos iam viros
to-have-said Callisthenes to-remember they-ought themselves now men
esse: idque ad consolandam patientiam verberum an ad
to-be and-that for consoling the-endurance of-the-blows or for

incitandum iuvenum dolorem dictum esset, in ambiguo
inciting of-the-young-men the-resentment said it-was in doubt
fuisse. Rex animi corporisque sopore discusso,
to-have-been the-king of-mind and-body with-the-drowsiness shaken-off
cum tanti periculi, quo evaserat, imago oculis
when of-so-great a-danger from-which he-had-escaped the-image before-his-eyes
oberraret, Eurylochum L talentis et cuiusdam Tiridatis
wandered Eurylochus with-fifty talents and of-a-certain Tiridates'
opulentis bonis protinus donat fratremque, antequam pro
rich goods at-once rewards and-the-brother before for
salute eius precaretur, restituit, sceleris autem auctores
the-safety his he-could-pray restores of-the-crime however the-authors
interque eos Callisthenen vinctos adservari iubet. Quibus in
and-among them Callisthenes bound to-be-kept orders with-whom into
regiam adductis toto die et nocte proxima mero ac
the-palace brought for-the-whole day and the-night next with-wine and
vigiliis gravis adquievit. Postero autem frequens consilium
vigils heavy he-rested on-the-following moreover a-crowded council
adhibuit, cui patres propinquique eorum, de quibus
he-summoned at-which the-fathers and-kinsmen of-those about whom
agebatur, intererant, ne de sua quidem salute securi:
it-was-being-dealt were-present not about their-own even safety untroubled
quippe Macedonum more perire debebant omnium
for of-the-Macedonians by-the-custom to-perish they-ought of-all
devotis capitibus, qui sanguine contigissent reos. Rex
with-the-devoted heads who by-blood touched the-accused the-king
introduci coniuratos praeter Callisthenen iussit: atque, quae
to-be-brought-in the-conspirators except Callisthenes ordered and what
agitaverant, sine cunctatione confessi sunt. Increpantibus
they-had-planned without hesitation confessed have with-rebuking

deinde universis eos ipse rex, quo suo merito tantum
then all them himself the-king by-what his-own desert so-great
in semet cogitassent facinus, interrogat.
against himself they-had-planned a-crime asks

VII · HERMOLAUS

Hermolaus answers that they plotted because Alexander rules them as slaves. His father Sopolis tries to silence him, but the king lets him speak: he names the killings of Attalus, Philotas, Parmenio, the Lyncestian, and Clitus, the gold carried for the king while soldiers earn only scars, the Persian dress, and the prostration, and insists Callisthenes is innocent. He asks that his kinsmen be spared and the pages led to death, to win by their own deaths what they sought by the king's.

Stupentibus ceteris Hermolaus: 'Nos vero,' inquit, 'quoniam,
with-dazed the-rest Hermolaus we indeed he-says since
quasi nescias, quaeris, occidendi te consilium iniimus,
as-if you-do-not-know you-ask of-killing you the-plan we-entered
quia non ut ingenuis imperare coepisti, sed quasi in
because not as over-the-freeborn to-rule you-began but as-if over
mancipia dominari.' Primus ex omnibus pater ipsius Sopolis
slaves to-lord-it first of all the-father his-own Sopolis
parricidam etiam parentis sui clamitans esse consurgit et
a-parricide even of-parent his-own shouting-him to-be rises and
ad os manu obiecta scelere et malis insanientem ultra
to his-mouth with-his-hand set by-crime and evils raving further
negat audiendum. Rex inhibito patre dicere Hermolaum
denies to-be-heard the-king with-checked the-father to-say Hermolaus
iubet, quae ex magistro didicisset Callisthene. Et Hermolaus:
orders what from his-teacher he-had-learned Callisthenes and Hermolaus
'Utor,' inquit, 'beneficio tuo et dico, quae nostris malis
I-use he-says the-kindness your and I-say what by-our evils

didici. Quota pars Macedonum saevitiae tuae superest?
I-have-learned how-small a-part of-the-Macedonians from-cruelty your survives
quotus quidem non e vilissimo sanguine? Attalus et Philotas
how-few indeed not of the-cheapest blood Attalus and Philotas
et Parmenio et Lyncestes Alexander et Clitus, quantum ad
and Parmenio and Lyncestes Alexander and Clitus as-far-as to
hostes pertinet, vivunt, stant in acie et clipeis suis
the-enemy pertains are-alive they-stand in the-line and with-shields their-own
te protegunt et pro gloria tua, pro victoria vulnera excipiunt.
you they-protect and for glory your for victory wounds they-receive
Quibus tu egregiam gratiam rettulisti: alius mensam tuam
to-whom you outstanding thanks have-returned one table your
sanguine suo adspersit, alius ne simplici quidem morte
with-blood his-own spattered another not by-a-simple even death
defunctus est. Duces exercituum tuorum in eculeum inpositi
died has the-generals of-armies your on the-rack placed
Persis, quos vicerant, fuere spectaculo. Parmenio
to-the-Persians whom they-had-conquered were a-spectacle Parmenio
indicta causa trucidatus est, per quem Attalum occideras.
with-unpleaded case slaughtered was through whom Attalus you-had-killed
Invicem enim miserorum uteris manibus ad expetenda supplicia
in-turn for of-the-wretched you-use the-hands for exacting punishments
et, quos paulo ante ministros caedis habuisti, subito ab
and those-whom a-little before as-agents of-murder you-had suddenly by
aliis iubes trucidari.' Obstrepunt subinde cuncti Hermolao,
others you-order to-be-slaughtered shout-against repeatedly all Hermolaus
pater super eum strinxerat ferrum percussurus haud dubie,
his-father over him had-drawn the-sword going-to-strike not doubtfully
ni inhibitus esset a rege: quippe Hermolaum dicere
unless checked he-had-been by the-king for Hermolaus to-speak
iussit petiitque, ut causas supplicii augentem patienter
he-ordered and-asked that the-causes of-the-punishment increasing patiently

audirent. Aegre ergo coercitis rursus Hermolaus:
they-should-hear-him with-difficulty therefore restrained again Hermolaus
'Quam liberaliter,' inquit, 'pueris rudibus ad dicendum agere
how generously he-says to-boys unskilled for speaking to-act
permittis! at Callisthenis vox carcere inclusa est, quia solus
you-permit but Callisthenes' voice in-prison shut-up is because alone
potest dicere. Cur enim non producitur, cum etiam
he-can speak why for not is-he-brought-forward when even
confessi audiuntur? nempe quia liberam vocem innocentis
the-confessed are-heard surely because the-free voice of-an-innocent-man
audire metuis ac ne vultum quidem pateris. Atqui nihil
to-hear you-fear and not his-face even do-you-endure and-yet nothing
eum fecisse contendo. Sunt hic, qui mecum rem
he to-have-done I-contend there-are here those-who with-me a-deed
pulcherrimam cogitaverunt: nemo est, qui conscium fuisse
most-splendid planned no-one is who an-accomplice to-have-been
nobis Callisthenen dicat, cum morti olim destinatus sit a
to-us Callisthenes would-say though to-death long-since destined he-be by
iustissimo et patientissimo rege. Haec ergo sunt Macedonum
the-most-just and most-patient king these then are of-the-Macedonians
praemia, quorum ut supervacuo et sordido abuteris sanguine!
the-rewards of-whom as superfluous and cheap you-abuse the-blood
At tibi XXX milia mulorum captivum aurum vehunt, cum
but for-you thirty thousand mules captured gold carry while
milites nihil domum praeter gratuitas cicatrices relaturi
the-soldiers nothing home except unpaid scars going-to-bring-back
sint. Quae tamen omnia tolerare potuimus, antequam nos
are which yet all to-bear we-could before us
barbaris dederes et novo more victores sub iugum
to-the-barbarians you-handed-over and by-a-new custom the-victors under the-yoke
mitteres. Persarum te vestis et disciplina delectant, patrios
you-sent of-the-Persians you the-dress and discipline delight the-ancestral

mores exosus es. Persarum ergo, non Macedonum regem
customs hating you-are of-the-Persians therefore not of-the-Macedonians the-king
occidere voluimus et te transfugam belli iure persequimur.
to-kill we-wished and you a-deserter by-war's right we-pursue
Tu Macedonas voluisti genua tibi ponere venerarique te
you the-Macedonians wished their-knees to-you to-bend and-to-revere you
ut deum, tu Philippum patrem aversaris et, si quis deorum
as a-god you Philip as-father reject and if any of-the-gods
ante Iovem haberetur, fastidires etiam Iovem. Miraris,
before Jupiter were-held you-would-disdain even Jupiter do-you-wonder
si liberi homines superbiam tuam ferre non possumus? Quid
if free men arrogance your to-bear not can what
speramus ex te, quibus aut insontibus moriendum est aut,
do-we-hope from you who either innocent to-die must or
quod tristius morte est, in servitute vivendum? Tu quidem,
what sadder than-death is in slavery to-live you indeed
si emendari potes, multum mihi debes. Ex me enim
if to-be-corrected you-can much to-me owe from me for
scire coepisti, quid ingenui homines ferre non possint.
to-know you-have-begun what freeborn men to-bear not can
De cetero propinquorum orbam senectutem suppliciis
for the-rest of-our-kinsmen the-bereaved old-age with-punishments
ne oneraveris: nos iube duci ut, quod ex tua morte
not burden us order to-be-led-off that what from your death
petieramus, consequamur ex nostra.' Haec Hermolaus.
we-had-sought we-may-obtain from our-own these-things Hermolaus

Alexander answers: his patience proves the charges false. He defends the flogging as Macedonian custom, answers for the Lyncestian, Attalus, and Clitus, points to the army's new wealth, defends Persian men and manners as the way to hold Asia, spares the plotters' kin, and calls Callisthenes a fit teacher for such a pupil. The pages are handed to their own cohort, who torture and kill them. Callisthenes is tortured and dies without trial, which brings Alexander much ill will and a late remorse.

At rex: 'Quam falsa sint,' inquit, 'quae iste tradita
but the-king how false are he-says what-things that-fellow handed-down
a magistro suo dixit, patientia mea ostendit. Confessum enim
by teacher his has-said patience my shows confessed for
ultimum facinus tamen non solum ipse audivi, sed ut vos
the-ultimate crime yet not only myself I-heard but that you
audiretis, expressi, non inprudens, cum permisissem latroni
might-hear I-squeezed-out not unwise since I-had-permitted brigand
huic dicere, usurum eum rabie, qua conpulsus est, ut
this to-speak going-to-use him the-madness by-which driven he-was that
me, quem parentis loco colere deberet, vellet occidere.
me whom of-a-parent in-place to-revere he-ought he-should-wish to-kill
Nuper cum procacius se in venatione gessisset, more
recently when too-insolently himself in the-hunt he-had-conducted by-the-custom
patrio et ab antiquissimis Macedoniae regum usurpato
ancestral and by the-most-ancient of-Macedonia kings practiced
castigari eum iussi. Hoc et oportet fieri et ferunt a
to-be-chastised him I-ordered this both it-is-fitting to-be-done and bear-it from
tutoribus pupilli, a maritis uxores: servis quoque pueros
guardians wards from husbands wives to-slaves also boys
huius aetatis verberare concedimus. Haec est saevitia in
of-this age to-beat we-allow this is the-cruelty toward
ipsum mea, quam inpia caede voluit ulcisci. Nam in
him my which by-impious murder he-wished to-avenge for toward

ceteros, qui mihi permittunt uti ingenio meo, quam mitis
the-rest who me allow to-use nature my how gentle
sim, non ignaris commemorare supervacuum est. Hermolao
I-am not to-the-ignorant to-recall superfluous it-is for-Hermolaus
parricidarum supplicia non probari, cum eadem ipse
of-parricides the-punishments not to-be-approved since the-same himself
meruerit, minime, hercule, admiror. Nam cum Parmenionem
he-has-deserved not-at-all by-Hercules do-I-wonder for when Parmenio
et Philotan laudat, suae servit causae. Lyncestem vero
and Philotas he-praises his-own he-serves cause Lyncestes indeed
Alexandrum quamvis insidiatum capiti meo a duobus
Alexander although having-plotted against-the-head my by two
indicibus litterisque suis convictum per triennium tamen
informers and-by-letters his-own convicted for three-years yet
distuli, donec vos postularetis, ut tandem debito supplicio
I-postponed until you demanded that at-last by-due punishment
scelus lueret. Attalum, antequam rex essem, hostem meo
the-crime he-should-pay-for Attalus before king I-was an-enemy to-my
capiti fuisse meministis. Clitus utinam non coegisset
head to-have-been you-remember Clitus would-that not he-had-compelled
me sibi irasci! cuius temerariam linguam probra dicentis
me with-him to-be-angry whose rash tongue insults speaking
mihi et vobis diutius tuli, quam ille eadem me dicentem
to-me and to-you longer I-bore than he the-same-things me saying
tulisset. Regum ducumque clementia non in ipsorum
would-have-borne of-kings and-of-generals the-clemency not in their-own
modo, sed etiam in illorum, qui parent, ingeniis sita est.
only but also in of-those who obey the-natures placed is
Obsequio mitigantur imperia: ubi vero reverentia excessit
by-obedience are-softened commands where however reverence has-gone-out
animis et summa imis confunduntur, vi opus
from-minds and the-highest with-the-lowest are-confused of-force need

est, ut vim repellamus. Sed quid ego mirer istum
there-is that force we-may-repel but why I should-wonder that-fellow
crudelitatem mihi obiecisse, qui avaritiam exprobrare ausus
cruelty to-me to-have-thrown-at who greed to-reproach dared
sit? Nolo singulos vestrum excitare, ne invisam mihi
has I-do-not-wish each of-you to-rouse lest hateful to-me
liberalitatem meam faciam, si pudori vestro gravem fecero.
generosity my I-should-make if to-modesty your burdensome I-make-it
Totum exercitum adspicite: qui paulo ante nihil praeter arma
the-whole army look-at which a-little before nothing besides arms
habebat, nunc argenteis cubat lectis, mensas auro onerant,
had now on-silver reclines couches tables with-gold they-load
servorum greges ducunt, spolia de hostibus sustinere non
of-slaves herds they-lead the-spoils from the-enemy to-sustain not
possunt. At enim Persae, quos vicimus, in magno honore
they-can but indeed the-Persians whom we-have-conquered in great honor
sunt apud me! Mihi quidem moderationis meae certissimum
are with me to-me indeed of-moderation my the-surest
indicium est, quod ne victis quidem superbe impero.
sign is that not over-the-conquered even arrogantly do-I-rule
Veni enim in Asiam, non ut funditus everterem gentes
I-came for into Asia not that utterly I-should-overturn the-nations
nec ut dimidiam partem terrarum solitudinem facerem,
nor that the-half part of-the-lands a-desert I-should-make
sed ut illos, quos bello subegissem, victoriae meae non
but that those whom in-war I-had-subdued of-victory my not
paeniteret. Itaque militant vobiscum, pro imperio vestro
it-should-repent and-so they-serve with-you for empire your
sanguinem fundunt, qui superbe habiti rebellassent. Non est
their-blood they-pour who arrogantly held would-have-rebelled not is
diuturna possessio, in quam gladio inducimur: beneficiorum
lasting a-possession into which by-the-sword we-are-led of-kindnesses

gratia sempiterna est. Si habere Asiam, non transire
the-gratitude everlasting is if to-hold Asia not to-pass-through
volumus, cum his communicanda est nostra clementia:
we-wish with these to-be-shared is our clemency
horum fides stabile et aeternum faciet imperium. Et sane
their loyalty stable and eternal will-make the-empire and indeed
plus habemus, quam capimus. Insatiabilis autem avaritiae est
more we-have than we-contain insatiable moreover of-greed it-is
adhuc inplere velle, quod iam circumfluit. Morem tamen
still to-fill to-wish what already overflows the-custom yet
eorum in Macedonas transfundo! In multis enim gentibus
their into the-Macedonians I-pour in many for nations
esse video, quae non erubescamus imitari: nec aliter
to-be I-see things-which not we-should-blush to-imitate nor otherwise
tantum imperium apte regi potest, quam ut quaedam
so-great an-empire fitly to-be-ruled can than that some-things
et tradamus illis et ab isdem discamus. Illud paene
both we-hand-over to-them and from the-same we-learn that almost
dignum risu fuit, quod Hermolaus postulabat a me, ut
worthy of-laughter was that Hermolaus demanded from me that
aversarer Iovem, cuius oraculo adgnoscor. An etiam, quid
I-should-reject Jupiter by-whose oracle I-am-acknowledged or even what
di respondeant, in mea potestate est? Obtulit nomen filii
the-gods answer in my power is he-offered the-name of-son
mihi: recipere ipsis rebus, quas agimus, haud alienum
to-me to-accept for-the-very affairs which we-are-doing not unsuitable
fuit. Utinam Indi quoque deum esse me credant! Fama
it-was would-that the-Indians also a-god to-be me may-believe by-repute
enim bella constant, et saepe etiam, quod falso creditum est,
for wars stand and often even what falsely believed is
veri vicem obtinuit. An me luxuriae indulgentem putatis
of-the-true the-place has-held or me to-luxury indulging do-you-think

arma vestra auro argentoque adornasse? Adsuetis nihil
arms your with-gold and-silver to-have-adorned to-the-accustomed nothing
vilius hac videre materia volui ostendere, Macedonas
cheaper than-this to-see material I-wished to-show the-Macedonians
invictos ceteris ne auro quidem vinci. Oculos ergo
unconquered in-all-else not by-gold even to-be-conquered the-eyes therefore
primum eorum sordida omnia et humilia despectantium
first of-them mean-things all and humble looking-down-on
capiam et docebo nos non auri aut argenti cupidos,
I-shall-capture and I-shall-teach us not of-gold or of-silver greedy
sed orbem terrarum subacturos venire. Quam gloriam tu,
but the-circle of-lands going-to-subdue to-come which glory you
parricida, intercipere voluisti et Macedonas rege adempto
parricide to-intercept wished and the-Macedonians with-the-king taken-away
devictis gentibus dedere. At nunc mones me, ut vestris
to-the-conquered nations to-surrender but now you-advise me that your
parentibus parcam! Non oportebat quidem vos scire, quid
parents I-should-spare not it-behooved indeed you to-know what
de his statuissem, quo tristiores periretis, si qua vobis
about them I-had-decided so-that the-sadder you-might-perish if any in-you
parentum memoria et cura est: sed olim istum morem
of-parents memory and care there-is but long-since that custom
occidendi cum scelestis insontes propinquos parentesque
of-killing with the-criminals the-innocent kinsmen and-parents
solvi et profiteor in eodem honore futuros omnes eos,
I-dissolved and I-declare in the-same honor going-to-be all them
in quo fuerunt. Nam tuum Callisthenen, cui uni vir
in which they-were for your Callisthenes to-whom alone a-man
videris, quia latro es, scio, cur produci velis:
you-seem because a-brigand you-are I-know why to-be-brought-forward you-wish
ut coram his probra, quae in me modo iecisti,
that before these the-insults which against me now you-have-hurled

modo audisti, illius quoque ore referantur. Quem, si
now you-have-heard by-his also mouth may-be-repeated whom if
Macedo esset, tecum introduxissem, dignissimum te
a-Macedonian he-were with-you I-would-have-brought-in most-worthy of-you
discipulo magistrum: nunc Olynthio non idem iuris est.'
as-pupil the-teacher now for-an-Olynthian not the-same of-right is
Post haec consilium dimisit tradique damnatos
after these-things the-council he-dismissed and-to-be-handed-over the-condemned
hominibus, qui ex eadem cohorte erant, iussit. Illi, ut fidem
to-men who from the-same cohort were he-ordered they that loyalty
suam saevitia regi adprobarent, excruciatos necaverunt.
their-own by-cruelty to-the-king they-might-prove tortured killed-them
Callisthenes quoque tortus interiit, initi consilii in
Callisthenes also tortured died of-the-entered plot against
caput regis innoxius, sed haudquaquam aulae et
the-head of-the-king innocent but by-no-means to-the-court and
adsentantium accommodatus ingenio. Itaque nullius caedes
of-the-flatterers suited in-nature and-so of-no-one the-murder
maiorem apud Graecos Alexandro excitavit invidiam, quod
greater among the-Greeks for-Alexander roused odium because
praeditum optimis moribus artibusque, a quo revocatus
one-endowed with-the-best character and-arts by whom called-back
ad vitam erat, cum interfecto Clito mori perseveraret,
to life he-had-been when with-killed Clitus to-die he-persisted
non tantum occiderit, sed etiam torserit indicta quidem
not only he-killed but also tortured with-unpleaded indeed
causa. Quam crudelitatem sera paenitentia consecuta est.
case which cruelty a-late repentance followed has

IX · INDIA

Alexander moves into India to keep idle men from rumor. The country is described: its rivers, the Indus, the Ganges, and others; the north wind, and seasons reversed from the rest of the world; its flax, its birds and beasts, its gold, gems, and pearls; its people, their linen dress, their kings' luxury and processions, their wise men who burn themselves alive, and their reckoning of months by the moon.

Sed ne otium serendis rumoribus natum aleret, in Indiam
but lest idleness for-sowing rumors born he-should-feed into India
movit, semper bello quam post victoriam clarior. India tota
he-moved always in-war than after victory more-famous India whole
ferme spectat orientem, minus in latitudinem, quam recta
almost faces the-east less in breadth than in-straight
regione spatiosa. Quae austrum accipiunt, in altius
direction spacious the-parts-which the-south receive into higher
terrae fastigium excedunt: plana sunt cetera multisque inclitis
of-the-land elevation rise-out level are the-rest and-to-many famous
amnibus Caucaso monte ortis placidum per campos iter
rivers from-the-Caucasus mountain risen a-calm through the-plains course
praebent. Indus gelidior est quam ceteri: aquas vehit a
offer the-Indus colder is than the-others waters it-carries from
colore maris haud multum abhorrentes. Ganges, omnium ab
the-color of-the-sea not much differing the-Ganges of-all from
Oriente fluvius maximus, ad meridianam regionem decurrit
the-East the-river greatest to the-southern region runs-down
et magnorum montium iuga recto alveo stringit: inde
and of-great mountains the-ridges with-straight channel grazes then
eum obiectae rupes inclinant ad orientem. Uterque Rubro
it opposing crags bend to the-east both by-the-Red
mari accipitur. Indus ripas multasque arbores cum magna
sea are-received the-Indus the-banks and-many trees with a-great

soli parte exorbet, saxis quoque inpeditus, quis crebro
of-soil part swallows by-rocks also obstructed by-which often
reverberatur: ubi mollius solum repperit, stagnat insulasque
it-is-beaten-back where softer soil it-has-found it-stagnates and-islands
molitur. Acesines eum auget. Ganges decursurum Iomanen
builds the-Acesines it swells the-Ganges going-to-run-down the-Iomanes
intercipit, magnoque motu amnis uterque colliditur: quippe
intercepts and-with-great shock river each collides for
Ganges asperum os influenti obicit, nec repercussae
the-Ganges a-rough mouth to-the-inflowing sets-against nor beaten-back
aquae cedunt. Diardines minus celeber auditu est, quia per
the-waters yield the-Diardines less famous to-hear is because through
ultima Indiae currit: ceterum non crocodillos modo, uti
the-farthest-parts of-India it-runs but not crocodiles only like
Nilus, sed etiam delphinos ignotasque aliis gentibus beluas
the-Nile but also dolphins and-unknown to-other nations beasts
alit. Ethymantus crebris flexibus subinde curvatus ab
it-nourishes the-Ethymantus with-frequent bends repeatedly curved by
accolis rigantibus campos carpitur: ea causa est, cur
the-neighbors watering their-fields is-drawn-off that the-cause is why
tenues reliquias iam sine nomine in mare emittat. Multis
thin remnants now without name into the-sea it-sends with-many
praeter hos amnibus tota regio dividitur, sed ignobilibus,
besides these rivers the-whole region is-divided but obscure
quia non adita interfluunt. Ceterum quae propiora sunt
because not explored they-flow-between but the-parts-which nearer are
mari, aquilone maxime deuruntur: is cohibitus iugis
to-the-sea by-the-north-wind most are-scorched it held-back by-the-ridges
montium ad interiora non penetrat, ita alendis frugibus
of-the-mountains to the-interior not penetrates so for-nourishing crops
mitia. Sed adeo in illa plaga mundus statas temporum vices
mild but so-much in that region the-world the-fixed of-the-seasons changes

mutat, ut, cum alia fervore solis exaestuant, Indiam
alters that when other-parts with-the-heat of-the-sun boil India
nives obruant, rursusque, ubi cetera rigent, illic intolerandus
snows bury and-again where the-rest are-stiff there unbearable
aestus existat. Nec, cur verterit se natura, causa. Mare
heat arises nor why has-turned itself nature the-cause the-sea
certe, quo adluitur, ne colore quidem abhorret a ceteris.
certainly by-which it-is-washed not in-color even differs from the-rest
Ab Erythro rege inditum est nomen: propter quod ignari
from Erythrus the-king given was the-name because-of which the-ignorant
rubere aquas credunt. Terra lini ferax: inde plerisque
to-be-red the-waters believe the-land in-flax fertile from-there for-most
sunt vestes. Libri arborum teneri haud secus quam chartae
are garments the-bark of-trees tender not otherwise than paper
litterarum notas capiunt. Aves ad imitandum humanae
of-letters the-marks receive the-birds for imitating of-the-human
vocis sonum dociles sunt. Animalia invisitata ceteris
voice the-sound teachable are animals unseen by-the-other
gentibus nisi invecta. Eadem terra rhinocerotas aliis ignotos
nations unless imported the-same land rhinoceroses to-others unknown
generat. Elephantorum maior est vis quam, quos
produces of-elephants greater is the-strength than those-which
in Africa domitant, et viribus magnitudo respondet.
in Africa they-tame and to-their-strength their-size corresponds
Aurum flumina vehunt, quae leni modicoque lapsu
gold the-rivers carry which with-gentle and-moderate gliding
segnes aquas ducunt. Gemmas margaritasque mare litoribus
sluggish waters draw gems and-pearls the-sea onto-the-shores
infundit: neque alia illis maior opulentiae causa est, utique
pours nor other for-them greater of-wealth cause is especially
postquam vitiorum commercium vulgavere in exteras gentes.
after of-vices the-commerce they-spread into foreign nations

Quippe aestimantur purgamenta exaestuantis freti pretio,
for are-valued the-refuse of-the-surging strait at-the-price
quod libido constituit. Ingenia hominum, sicut ubique, apud
which lust has-fixed the-natures of-men as everywhere among
illos locorum quoque situs format. Corpora usque pedes
them of-the-places also the-situation shapes their-bodies down-to the-feet
carbaso velant, soleis pedes, capita linteis vinciunt,
with-linen they-veil with-sandals their-feet their-heads with-linen-cloths they-bind
lapilli ex auribus pendent: brachia quoque et lacertos
little-stones from their-ears hang the-arms also and the-upper-arms
auro colunt, quibus inter populares aut nobilitas aut
with-gold they-adorn those-to-whom among the-countrymen either nobility or
opes eminent. Capillum pectunt saepius quam tondent:
riches stand-out their-hair they-comb more-often than they-cut
mentum semper intonsum est, reliquam oris cutem ad
the-chin always unshorn is the-rest of-the-face skin to
speciem levitatis exaequant. Regum tamen luxuria, quam
the-look of-smoothness they-level of-the-kings yet the-luxury which
ipsi magnificentiam appellant, super omnium gentium
they-themselves magnificence call above of-all nations
vitia. Cum rex semet in publico conspici patitur, turibula
the-vices when the-king himself in public to-be-seen allows censers
argentea ministri ferunt totumque iter, per quod ferri
silver the-attendants carry and-the-whole route through which to-be-carried
destinavit, odoribus conplent. Aurea lectica margaritis
he-has-determined with-perfumes they-fill on-a-golden litter with-pearls
circumpendentibus recubat: distincta sunt auro et purpura
hanging-round he-reclines picked-out are with-gold and purple
carbasa, quae indutus est: lecticam sequuntur armati
the-linens which clothed he-is the-litter follow armed-men
corporisque custodes, inter quos ramis aves pendent, quas
and-of-the-body guards among whom on-branches birds hang which

cantu seriis rebus obstrepere docuerunt. Regia auratas
with-song serious affairs to-drown-out they-have-taught the-palace gilded
columnas habet: totas eas vitis auro caelata percurrit,
columns has whole them a-vine in-gold chased runs-over
aviumque, quarum visu maxime gaudent, argenteae effigies
and-of-the-birds in-whose sight most they-delight silver images
opera distinguunt. Regia adeuntibus patet, cum capillum
the-work picks-out the-palace to-those-approaching lies-open when his-hair
pectit atque ornat: tunc responsa legationibus, tunc iura
he-combs and adorns then replies to-embassies then laws
popularibus reddit. Demptis soleis odoribus inlinuntur
to-the-countrymen he-renders with-removed sandals with-perfumes are-smeared
pedes. Venatus maximus labor est inclusa vivario animalia
his-feet hunting the-greatest labor is shut-up in-a-preserve animals
inter vota cantusque pelicum figere. Binum cubitorum
amid the-vows and-songs of-the-concubines to-pierce of-two-each cubits
sagittae sunt, quas emittunt maiore nisu quam effectu:
the-arrows are which they-shoot with-greater effort than effect
quippe telum, cuius in levitate vis omnis est, inhabili
for a-missile whose in lightness force all is with-an-unwieldy
pondere oneratur. Breviora itinera equo conficit: longior
weight is-loaded shorter journeys on-horse he-makes longer
ubi expeditio est, elephanti vehunt currum, et tantarum
when an-expedition is elephants draw the-chariot and of-such-great
beluarum corpora tota contegunt auro. Ac, ne quid
beasts the-bodies whole they-cover with-gold and lest anything
perditis moribus desit, lecticis aureis pelicum longus
to-depraved morals be-lacking in-litters golden of-concubines a-long
ordo sequitur: separatum a reginae ordine agmen est
line follows separate from the-queen's line the-column is
aequatque luxuriam. Feminae epulas parant. Ab isdem vinum
and-equals-it in-luxury women the-feasts prepare by the-same wine

ministratur, cuius omnibus Indis largus est usus. Regem
is-served of-which by-all Indians abundant is the-use the-king
mero somnoque sopitum in cubiculum pelices referunt
with-wine and-sleep drowsed into the-bedroom the-concubines carry-back
patrio carmine noctium invocantes deos. Quis credat
in-an-ancestral song of-the-nights invoking the-gods who would-believe
inter haec vitia curam esse sapientiae? Unum agreste et
among these vices a-care to-be of-wisdom one rustic and
horridum genus est, quod sapientes vocant. Apud hos
rough race there-is which wise-men they-call among these
occupare fati diem pulchrum, et vivos se cremari
to-anticipate of-fate the-day noble and alive themselves to-be-burned
iubent, quibus aut segnis aetas aut incommoda valitudo
they-order those-to-whom either sluggish age or troublesome health
est: expectatam mortem pro dedecore vitae habent, nec ullus
is awaited death as a-disgrace of-life they-hold nor any
corporibus, quae senectus solvit, honos redditur: inquinari
to-the-bodies which old-age dissolves honor is-paid to-be-defiled
putant ignem, nisi qui spirantes recipit. Illi, qui in urbibus
they-think the-fire unless which the-breathing receives they who in cities
publicis muneribus degunt, siderum motus scite spectare
in-public offices live of-the-stars the-motions skillfully to-watch
dicuntur et futura praedicere. Nec quemquam admovere
are-said and the-future to-foretell nor anyone to-move-up
leti diem credunt, cui expectare interrito liceat. Deos
of-death the-day believe to-whom to-await undaunted it-is-allowed gods
putant, quidquid colere coeperunt, arbores maxime, quas
they-think whatever to-worship they-have-begun trees especially which
violare capital est. Menses in quinos denos discripserunt
to-violate capital is the-months into five-each ten-each they-have-divided
dies, anni plena spatia servantur. Lunae cursu notant
days of-the-year the-full spaces are-kept by-the-moon's course they-mark

tempora, non, ut plerique, cum orbem sidus inplevit, sed
the-times not as most when its-circle the-star has-filled but
cum se curvare coepit in cornua, et idcirco breviores
when itself to-curve it-has-begun into horns and therefore shorter
habent menses, quia spatium eorum ad hunc lunae
they-have months because the-space of-them to this of-the-moon
modum dirigunt. Multa et alia traduntur, quibus
measure they-direct many and other-things are-handed-down by-which
morari ordinem rerum haud sane operae videbatur.
to-delay the-order of-events not at-all of-effort it-seemed

X · NYSA AND MAZAGAE

Petty kings meet Alexander, calling him the third son of Jupiter. He takes Nysa, founded, its people say, by Father Liber, and the army revels on Mount Meros among the ivy and vines. He besieges Mazagae, ruled by Cleophis, mother of the late king Assacanus, and is wounded in the leg; when his towers drive the defenders to surrender, she wins back her throne, and a son later born to her is named Alexander.

Igitur Alexandro finis Indiae ingresso gentium
therefore with-Alexander the-borders of-India having-entered of-the-neighboring
finitimarum reguli occurrerunt imperata facturi, illum
nations the-petty-kings met-him the-orders going-to-do him
tertium Iove genitum ad ipsos pervenisse memorantes:
the-third from-Jupiter born to them to-have-come recalling
Patrem Liberum atque Herculem fama cognitos esse,
Father Liber and Hercules by-report known to-have-been
ipsum coram adesse cernique. Rex benigne exceptos
himself in-person to-be-present and-to-be-seen the-king kindly received
sequi iussit isdem itinerum ducibus usurus. Ceterum cum
to-follow ordered the-same of-the-routes as-guides going-to-use but since

amplius nemo occurreret, Hephaestionem et Perdiccan cum
further no-one came-to-meet-him Hephaestion and Perdiccas with
copiarum parte praemisit ad subigendos, qui aversarentur
of-the-forces part he-sent-ahead for subduing those-who rejected
imperium, iussitque ad flumen Indum procedere et navigia
his-rule and-he-ordered to the-river Indus to-advance and boats
facere, quis in ulteriora transportari posset exercitus.
to-make by-which to the-farther-parts to-be-carried-across could the-army
Illi, quia plura flumina superanda erant, sic iunxere naves,
they because more rivers to-be-crossed were so joined the-ships
ut solutae plaustris vehi possent rursusque coniungi.
that loosened on-wagons to-be-carried they-could and-again to-be-joined
Ipse Cratero cum phalange iusso sequi equitatum ac
himself with-Craterus with the-phalanx ordered to-follow the-cavalry and
levem armaturam eduxit eosque, qui occurrerunt, levi
the-light armament led-out and-those who met-him with-a-light
proelio in urbem proximam conpulit. Iam supervenerat
battle into the-city nearest drove now had-come-up
Craterus: itaque, ut principio terrorem incuteret genti
Craterus and-so that at-the-beginning terror he-might-strike-into the-nation
nondum arma Macedonum expertae, praecipit, ne cui
not-yet the-arms of-the-Macedonians having-tested he-instructs that-not anyone
parceretur, munimentis urbis, quam obsidebat, incensis.
be-spared with-the-fortifications of-the-city which he-was-besieging burned
Ceterum, dum obequitat moenibus, sagitta ictus. Cepit
but while he-rides-along the-walls by-an-arrow struck he-took
tamen oppidum, et omnibus incolis eius trucidatis etiam
yet the-town and with-all the-inhabitants its slaughtered even
in tecta saevitum est. Inde domita ignobili gente ad
on the-houses raged it-was from-there with-tamed the-obscure nation to
Nysam urbem pervenit. Forte castris ante ipsa moenia
Nysa the-city he-came by-chance with-the-camp before the-very walls

in silvestri loco positis nocturnum frigus vehementius quam
in a-wooded place pitched the-nocturnal cold more-violently than
alias horrore corpora adfecit, opportunumque remedium
at-other-times with-shivering their-bodies afflicted and-a-timely remedy
ignis oblatum est. Caesis quippe silvis flammam excitaverunt,
of-fire offered was with-felled for woods a-flame they-raised
quae lignis alita oppidanorum sepulcra conprehendit. Vetusta
which with-wood fed of-the-townsfolk the-tombs seized old
cedro erant facta conceptumque ignem late fudere, donec
of-cedar they-were made and-the-caught fire widely they-spread until
omnia solo aequata sunt. Et ex urbe primum
all with-the-ground leveled were and from the-city first
canum latratus, deinde etiam hominum fremitus auditus
of-dogs the-barking then also of-men the-din heard
est. Tunc et oppidani hostem et Macedones ad urbem
was then both the-townsfolk the-enemy and the-Macedonians to the-city
ipsos venisse cognoscunt. Iamque rex eduxerat copias
themselves to-have-come learn and-now the-king had-led-out his-forces
et moenia obsidebat, cum hostium, qui discrimen
and the-walls was-besieging when of-the-enemy those-who the-crisis
temptaverant, obruti telis sunt. Aliis ergo deditionem,
had-tried overwhelmed by-missiles were to-others therefore surrender
aliis pugnam experiri placebat. Quorum dubitatione
to-others fight to-try it-was-pleasing with-whose hesitation
conperta circumsederi tantum eos et abstineri caedibus
learned to-be-besieged only them and to-be-kept-from slaughter
iussit: tandemque obsidionis malis fatigati dedidere se.
he-ordered and-at-last by-the-siege's evils exhausted they-surrendered themselves
A Libero Patre conditos se esse dicebant: et vera haec
by Liber Father founded themselves to-be they-were-saying and true this
origo erat. Sita est urbs sub radicibus montis, quem
origin was situated is the-city under the-roots of-a-mountain which

Meron incolae appellant: inde Graeci mentiendi traxere
Meros the-inhabitants call from-there the-Greeks of-lying drew
licentiam, Iovis femine Liberum Patrem esse celatum.
the-license in-Jupiter's thigh Liber Father to-have-been hidden
Rex situ montis cognito ex incolis cum toto
the-king with-the-site of-the-mountain learned from the-inhabitants with the-whole
exercitu praemissis commeatibus verticem eius ascendit. Multa
army with-sent-ahead supplies the-summit its climbed much
hedera vitisque toto gignitur monte, multae perennes
ivy and-vine on-the-whole grows mountain many perennial
aquae manant. Pomorum quoque varii salubresque suci
waters flow of-fruits also varied and-wholesome the-juices
sunt sua sponte fortuitorum germinum fruges humo
are of-its-own accord of-chance-sown seeds crops with-the-earth
nutriente. Lauri buxique et myrti in illis rupibus agrestis
nourishing of-laurel and-of-box and of-myrtle on those crags wild
est silva. Credo equidem non divino instinctu, sed lascivia
is a-wood I-believe indeed not by-divine inspiration but by-wantonness
esse provectos, ut passim hederae ac vitium folia
to-have-been carried-on that everywhere of-ivy and of-vines the-leaves
decerperent redimitique fronde toto nemore similes
they-plucked and-crowned with-foliage through-the-whole grove like
bacchantibus vagarentur. Vocibus ergo tot milium
to-bacchants they-wandered with-the-voices therefore of-so-many thousands
praesidem nemoris eius deum adorantium iuga montis
the-guardian of-the-grove that the-god adoring the-ridges of-the-mountain
vallesque resonabant, cum orta licentia a paucis, ut
and-the-valleys were-resounding when the-arisen license from a-few as
fere fit, in omnes se repente vulgasset. Quippe velut in
generally happens to all itself suddenly had-spread for as-if in
media pace per herbas adgestamque frondem prostravere
the-middle of-peace on the-grass and-heaped-up foliage they-threw-down

corpora. Et rex fortuitam laetitiam non aversatus large
their-bodies and the-king the-chance joy not turning-from abundantly
ad epulas omnibus praebitis per X dies Libero Patri operatum
for feasts with-all provided for ten days to-Liber Father in-worship
habuit exercitum. Quis neget eximiam quoque gloriam
kept the-army who would-deny outstanding even glory
saepius fortunae quam virtutis esse beneficium? Quippe ne
more-often of-fortune than of-valor to-be the-kindness for not
epulantes quidem et sopitos mero adgredi ausus est hostis
the-feasting even and drowsed with-wine to-attack dared has the-enemy
haud secus bacchantium ululantiumque fremitu perterritus,
not otherwise of-bacchants and-of-howlers by-the-din terrified
quam si proeliantium clamor esset auditus. Eadem felicitas
than if of-men-fighting the-shout had-been heard the-same good-fortune
ab Oceano revertentes temulentos comissantesque inter ora
from the-Ocean returning drunk and-reveling before the-faces
hostium texit. Hinc ad regionem, quae Daedala vocatur,
of-the-enemy covered from-here to the-region which Daedala is-called
perventum est. Deseruerant incolae sedes et in avios
come it-was had-deserted the-inhabitants their-seats and into pathless
silvestresque montes confugerant. Ergo Acadira transit aeque
and-wooded mountains had-fled therefore Acadira he-passes equally
vasta et destituta incolentium fuga. Itaque rationem belli
desolate and abandoned by-the-inhabitants' flight and-so the-method of-war
necessitas mutavit. Divisis enim copiis pluribus simul locis
necessity changed with-divided for forces in-more at-once places
arma ostendit, oppressique, ubi non expectaverant hostem,
arms he-showed and-overwhelmed where not they-had-expected the-enemy
omni clade perdomiti sunt. Ptolomaeus plurimas urbes,
with-every disaster thoroughly-subdued were Ptolemy very-many cities
Alexander maximas cepit: rursusque, quas distribuerat, copias
Alexander the-greatest took and-again which he-had-distributed the-forces

iunxit. Superato deinde Choaspe amne Coenon in obsidione
he-joined with-crossed then the-Choaspes river Coenus in the-siege
urbis opulentae — Beiram incolae vocant — reliquit,
of-a-city wealthy Beira the-inhabitants call-it he-left
ipse ad Mazagas venit. Nuper Assacano, cuius regnum
himself to Mazagae came recently with-Assacanus whose kingdom
fuerat, demortuo regioni urbique praeerat mater eius
it-had-been dead over-the-region and-the-city ruled the-mother his
Cleophis. XXXVIII milia peditum tuebantur urbem non
Cleophis thirty-eight thousand of-infantry were-guarding the-city not
situ solum, sed etiam opere munitam. Nam qua spectat
by-position only but also by-work fortified for where it-faces
orientem, cingitur amne torrenti, qui praeruptis utrimque
the-east it-is-girded by-a-river torrent which with-sheer on-both-sides
ripis aditum ad urbem inpedit. Ad occidentem ac meridiem
banks the-approach to the-city binders on the-west and the-south
veluti de industria rupes praealtas obmolita natura est, infra
as-if on purpose crags very-high piled-up nature has below
quas cavernae et voragines longa vetustate in altum cavatae
which caverns and chasms by-long age into depth hollowed
iacent, quaque desinunt, fossa ingentis operis obiecta est.
lie and-where they-end a-ditch of-huge work set-against is
XXXV stadium murus urbem conplectitur, cuius ima
of-thirty-five stades a-wall the-city embraces whose lowest-parts
saxo, superiora crudo latere sunt structa. Lateri vinculum
with-stone the-upper with-raw brick are built for-the-brick as-a-bond
lapides sunt, quos interposuere, ut duriori materiae fragilis
stones are which they-have-placed-between that on-harder material the-brittle
incumberet, simulque terra humore diluta. Ne tamen
might-rest and-at-the-same-time the-earth by-moisture dissolved lest yet
universa consideret, inpositae erant trabes validae, quibus
the-whole should-settle placed-on were beams strong on-which

iniecta tabulata muros et tegebant et pervios fecerant.
laid floors the-walls both covered and passable had-made
Haec munimenta contemplantem Alexandrum consiliique
these fortifications contemplating Alexander and-of-plan
incertum, quia nec cavernas nisi aggere poterat inplere
uncertain because neither the-caverns except by-a-causeway he-could fill
nec tormenta aliter muris admovere, quidam e muro
nor the-artillery otherwise to-the-walls move-up someone from the-wall
sagitta percussit: et forte in suram incidit telum.
with-an-arrow struck and by-chance into the-calf fell the-missile
Cuius spiculo evolso admoveri equum iussit, quo
with-whose point pulled-out to-be-brought-up his-horse he-ordered on-which
vectus ne obligato quidem vulnere haud segnius destinata
carried not with-bandaged even the-wound not more-slowly the-planned-things
exequebatur. Ceterum cum crus saucium penderet, et
he-carried-out but when the-leg wounded hung and
cruore siccato frigescens vulnus adgravaret dolorem, dixisse
with-the-gore dried the-cooling wound aggravated the-pain to-have-said
fertur se quidem Iovis filium dici, sed corporis
he-is-reported himself indeed of-Jupiter the-son to-be-called but of-a-body
aegri vitia sentire. Non tamen ante se recepit in castra,
sick the-faults to-feel not yet before himself he-withdrew into the-camp
quam cuncta perspexit et, quae fieri vellet, edixit. Ergo,
than everything he-surveyed and what to-be-done he-wished proclaimed therefore
sicut imperatum erat, alii extra urbem tecta demoliebantur
as ordered it-was some outside the-city the-houses were-demolishing
ingentemque vim materiae faciendo aggeri detrahebant, alii
and-a-huge mass of-timber for-making the-causeway were-drawing-off others
magnarum arborum stipites cum ramis ac moles saxorum
of-great trees the-trunks with branches and masses of-rocks
in cavernas deiciebant. Iamque agger aequaverat summae
into the-caverns were-throwing and-now the-causeway had-equaled of-the-highest

fastigium terrae: itaque turres erigebantur, quae opera
the-top of-the-ground and-so towers were-erected which works
ingenti militum ardore intra nonum diem absoluta sunt. Ad
with-huge the-soldiers' ardor within the-ninth day completed were to
ea visenda rex nondum obducta vulneri cicatrice processit
them to-be-seen the-king not-yet with-closed to-the-wound a-scar came-forth
laudatisque militibus admoveri machinas iussit, e quibus
and-with-praised soldiers to-be-moved-up the-machines he-ordered from which
ingens vis telorum in propugnatores effusa est. Praecipue
a-huge quantity of-missiles onto the-defenders poured was especially
rudes talium operum terrebant mobiles turres, tantasque
the-untrained in-such works were-terrifying the-mobile towers and-so-great
moles nulla ope, quae cerneretur, adiutas deorum numine
masses by-no help which might-be-seen assisted by-the-gods' power
agi credebant: pila quoque muralia et excussas
to-be-driven they-believed the-javelins also of-the-walls and hurled
tormentis praegraves hastas negabant convenire mortalibus.
by-the-artillery very-heavy spears they-denied to-suit mortals
Itaque desperata urbis tutela concessere in arcem.
and-so with-despaired-of of-the-city the-defense they-withdrew into the-citadel
Inde, quia nihil obsessis praeter deditionem patebat, legati
from-there because nothing for-the-besieged besides surrender lay-open envoys
ad regem descenderunt veniam petituri. Qua inpetrata
to the-king came-down pardon going-to-seek with-which obtained
regina venit cum magno nobilium feminarum grege aureis
the-queen came with a-great of-noble women herd from-golden
pateris vina libantium. Ipsa genibus regis parvo
bowls wine pouring she-herself to-the-knees of-the-king with-her-little
filio admoto non veniam modo, sed etiam pristinae fortunae
son moved-up not pardon only but also of-former fortune
inpetravit decus: quippe appellata regina est. Et credidere
obtained the-dignity for called queen she-was and believed

quidam plus formae quam miserationi datum: puero quoque
some more to-beauty than to-pity given to-the-boy also
certe postea ex ea utcumque genito Alexandro fuit nomen.
certainly afterward from her however born Alexander was the-name

XI · AORNOS

Polyperchon takes Ora. The people flee to the rock of Aornos, which Hercules, the story goes, could not take. Alexander fills the ravines with timber and sends picked men up; their leaders Charus and Alexander fall, and he sounds the retreat. After two days and nights of feasting the Indians slip away by night, and a shout from the Macedonians sends many falling to their deaths. He sets up altars to Minerva Victory on the rock and leaves Sisocostus in charge of it.

Hinc Polypercon ad urbem Horam cum exercitu missus
from-here Polyperchon to the-city Ora with the-army sent
inconditos oppidanos proelio vicit: intra munimenta conpulsos
the-disorderly townsfolk in-battle conquered within the-fortifications driven
secutus urbem in dicionem redegit. Multa ignobilia
having-followed the-city into dominion brought many obscure
oppida deserta a suis venere in regis potestatem.
towns deserted by their-own came into the-king's power
Quorum incolae armati petram Aornum nomine occupaverunt.
whose inhabitants armed the-rock Aornus by-name occupied
Hanc ab Hercule frustra obsessam esse terraeque
this by Hercules in-vain besieged to-have-been and-of-the-earth
motu coactum absistere fama vulgaverat. Inopem consilii
by-a-motion compelled to-desist the-report had-spread at-a-loss for-a-plan
Alexandrum, quia undique praeceps et abrupta rupes erat,
Alexander because on-all-sides sheer and broken the-crag was
senior quidam peritus locorum cum duobus filiis adiit,
an-older-man a-certain skilled in-the-places with two sons approached-him

si pretium operae esset, aditum se monstraturum esse
if a-reward for-the-service there-were an-approach himself going-to-show to-be
promittens. LXXX talenta constituit daturum Alexander et
promising eighty talents fixed going-to-give Alexander and
altero ex iuvenibus obside retento ipsum ad exequenda, quae
with-one of the-young-men as-hostage kept him for carrying-out what
obtulerat, dimisit. Leviter armatis dux datus est Myllinas,
he-had-offered he-sent to-the-lightly armed as-leader given was Myllinas
scriba regis. Hos enim circuitu, quo fallerent
the-secretary of-the-king these for by-a-circuit by-which they-might-deceive
hostem, in summum iugum placebat evadere. Petra non, ut
the-enemy onto the-highest ridge it-was-decided to-get-out the-rock not as
pleraeque, modicis ac mollibus clivis in sublime fastigium
most with-moderate and gentle slopes to a-lofty summit
crescit, sed in metae maxime modum erecta est, cuius
grows but in of-a-turning-post especially the-manner erect is whose
ima spatiosiora sunt, altiora in artius coeunt, summa
lowest-parts more-spacious are the-higher into narrower come-together the-topmost
in acutum cacumen exurgunt. Radices eius Indus amnis
into a-sharp peak rise the-roots its the-Indus river
subit, praealtus, utrimque asperis ripis: ab altera parte
goes-under very-deep on-both-sides with-rough banks on the-other side
voragines eluviesque praeruptae sunt. Nec alia expugnandi
chasms and-gullies sheer are nor other of-storming
patebat via, quam ut replerentur. Ad manum silva erat:
lay-open way than that they-should-be-filled at hand a-wood was
quam rex ita caedi iussit, ut nudi stipites iacerentur:
which the-king so to-be-cut ordered that bare trunks should-be-thrown
quippe rami fronde vestiti inpedissent ferentes. Ipse
for branches with-foliage clothed would-have-hindered the-carriers he-himself
primus truncam arborem iecit, clamorque exercitus, index
first a-lopped tree threw and-the-shout of-the-army the-sign

alacritatis, secutus est nullo detrectante munus, quod rex
of-eagerness followed has with-no-one shirking the-task which the-king
occupavit. Sic intra septimum diem cavernas expleverant,
seized-first thus within the-seventh day the-caverns they-had-filled
cum rex sagittarios et Agrianos iubet per ardua niti.
when the-king the-archers and Agrianians orders up the-steeps to-struggle
Iuvenesque promptissimos ex sua cohorte XXX delegit:
and-young-men the-readiest from his-own cohort thirty he-picked
duces his dati sunt Charus et Alexander, quem rex
as-leaders to-these given were Charus and Alexander whom the-king
nominis, quod sibi cum eo commune esset, admonuit. Ac
of-the-name which to-himself with him common was reminded and
primo, quia tam manifestum periculum erat, ipsum regem
at-first because so manifest the-danger was himself the-king
discrimen subire non placuit, sed ut signum tuba
the-crisis to-undergo not it-was-pleasing but when the-signal by-trumpet
datum est, vir audaciae promptae conversus ad corporis
given was a-man of-boldness ready turning to of-the-body
custodes sequi se iubet primusque invadit in rupem. Nec
guards to-follow himself he-orders and-first he-attacks onto the-crag nor
deinde quisquam Macedonum substitit, relictisque stationibus
then anyone of-the-Macedonians held-back and-with-left posts
sua sponte regem sequebantur. Multorum miserabilis fuit
of-their-own accord the-king they-followed of-many pitiable was
casus, quos ex praerupta rupe lapsos amnis praeterfluens
the-fall whom from the-sheer crag having-slipped the-river flowing-past
hausit, triste spectaculum etiam non periclitantibus: cum vero
swallowed a-sad spectacle even not for-those-endangered when but
alieno exitio, quid ipsis timendum foret, admonerentur,
by-another's death what for-themselves to-be-feared would-be they-were-reminded
in metum misericordia versa non extinctos, sed semetipsos
into fear pity turned not the-dead but themselves

deflebant. Et iam eo perventum erat, unde sine
they-were-bewailing and now to-that-point come it-was whence without
pernicie nisi victores redire non possent, ingentia saxa in
destruction unless victorious to-return not they-could huge rocks onto
subeuntes provolventibus barbaris, quis perculsi instabili
those-coming-up with-rolling-down barbarians by-which struck on-unsteady
et lubrico gradu praecipites recidebant. Evaserant tamen
and slippery footing headlong they-fell-back had-got-up yet
Alexander et Charus, quos cum XXX delectis praemiserat
Alexander and Charus whom with thirty picked-men had-sent-ahead
rex, et iam pugnare comminus coeperant: sed cum superne
the-king and now to-fight hand-to-hand had-begun but since from-above
tela barbari ingererent, saepius ipsi feriebantur quam
missiles the-barbarians heaped more-often themselves were-struck than
vulnerabant. Ergo Alexander et nominis sui et promissi
they-wounded therefore Alexander both of-name his-own and of-the-promise
memor, dum acrius quam cautius dimicat, confossus
mindful while more-keenly than more-cautiously he-fights pierced
undique obruitur. Quem ut Charus iacentem conspexit,
on-all-sides is-overwhelmed whom when Charus lying saw
ruere in hostem omnium praeter ultionem inmemor coepit
to-rush against the-enemy of-all-things except vengeance unmindful he-began
multosque hasta, quosdam gladio interemit: sed cum tot
and-many with-spear some with-sword he-killed but when so-many
unum incesserent manus, super amici corpus procubuit
one-man attacked hands over his-friend's body he-fell
exanimis. Haud secus, quam par erat, promptissimorum
lifeless not otherwise than proper was of-the-readiest
iuvenum ceterorumque militum interitu commotus rex
young-men and-of-the-other soldiers by-the-death moved the-king
signum receptui dedit. Saluti fuit, quod sensim et intrepidi
the-signal for-retreat gave for-safety it-was that gradually and undaunted

se receperunt, et barbari hostem depulisse
themselves they-withdrew and the-barbarians the-enemy to-have-driven-back
contenti non institere cedentibus. Ceterum Alexander cum
content not pressed the-yielding but Alexander although
statuisset desistere incepto — quippe nulla spes potiundae
he-had-decided to-desist from-the-undertaking for no hope of-gaining
petrae offerebatur—, tamen speciem ostendit in obsidione
the-rock was-offered yet the-appearance he-showed in the-siege
perseverantis. Nam et itinera obsideri iussit et turres
of-one-persevering for both the-routes to-be-beset he-ordered and towers
admoveri et fatigatis alios succedere. Cuius pertinacia
to-be-moved-up and for-the-weary others to-take-over with-whose obstinacy
cognita Indi per biduum quidem ac duas noctes cum
learned the-Indians for two-days indeed and two nights with
ostentatione non fiduciae modo, sed etiam victoriae epulati
display not of-confidence only but also of-victory feasted
sunt tympana suo more pulsantes: tertia vero nocte
have drums in-their-own manner beating on-the-third but night
tympanorum quidem strepitus desierat audiri, ceterum ex
of-the-drums indeed the-noise had-ceased to-be-heard but from
tota petra faces refulgebant, quas accenderant barbari,
the-whole rock torches shone which had-lit the-barbarians
ut tutior esset ipsis fuga obscura nocte per invia saxa
that safer might-be for-them the-flight in-the-dark night through pathless rocks
cursuris. Rex Balacro, qui specularetur, praemisso cognoscit
going-to-run the-king with-Balacrus who might-reconnoiter sent-ahead learns
petram fuga Indorum esse desertam. Tum dato signo,
the-rock by-the-flight of-the-Indians to-be deserted then with-given signal
ut universi conclamarent, inconposite fugientibus metum
that all should-shout-together in-disorder on-those-fleeing fear
incussit: multique, tamquam adesset hostis, per lubrica
struck and-many as-though were-present the-enemy over slippery

saxa perque invias cotes praecipitati occiderunt, plures aliqua
rocks and-over pathless crags thrown-headlong died more in-some
membrorum parte mulcati ab integris deserti sunt. Rex
of-their-limbs part maimed by the-unhurt abandoned were the-king
locorum magis quam hostium victor tamen magnae victoriae
of-the-places more than of-the-enemy the-victor yet of-a-great victory
speciem sacrificiis et cultu deum fecit. Arae in petra
the-appearance by-sacrifices and worship of-the-gods made altars on the-rock
locatae sunt Minervae Victoriae. Ducibus itineris, quo
placed were to-Minerva Victory to-the-guides of-the-route by-which
subire iusserat leviter armatos, etsi promissis minora
to-go-up he-had-ordered the-lightly armed although than-the-promises less
praestiterant, pretium cum fide redditum est, petrae
they-had-provided the-reward with good-faith paid was of-the-rock
regionisque ei adiunctae Sisocosto tutela permissa.
and-of-the-region to-it adjoining to-Sisocostus the-protection entrusted

XII · TAXILES

Alexander scatters Erix's twenty thousand at the passes. He comes to the Indus, where Hephaestion has everything ready for the crossing, and is met by Omphis, who as king takes the name Taxiles. Taxiles surrenders his kingdom; Alexander restores it, returns his gifts, and adds a thousand talents. Meleager sneers that Alexander had to come to India to find a man worth a thousand talents; Alexander controls his anger and calls the envious their own torment.

Inde processit Ecbolima et, cum angustias itineris obsideri
from-there he-advanced to-Ecbolima and when the-narrows of-the-route to-be-beset
XX milibus armatorum ab Erice quodam conperisset,
by-twenty thousand armed-men by Erix a-certain he-had-learned
gravius agmen exercitus Coeno ducendum modicis itineribus
the-heavier column of-the-army to-Coenus to-be-led by-moderate marches

tradidit, ipse praegressus per funditores ac sagittarios
he-handed-over himself having-gone-ahead with slingers and archers
deturbatis, qui obsederant saltum, sequentibus se copiis
with-dislodged those-who had-beset the-pass for-the-following him forces
viam fecit. Indi sive odio ducis sive gratiam
a-way made the-Indians whether from-hatred of-their-leader or the-favor
victoris inituri Ericen fugientem adorti interemerunt
of-the-victor going-to-gain Erix fleeing attacking killed
caputque eius atque arma ad Alexandrum detulerunt. Ille
and-the-head his and arms to Alexander brought he
facto inpunitatem dedit, honorem denegavit exemplo.
for-the-deed impunity gave honor denied for-the-example
Hinc ad flumen Indum sextisdecumis castris pervenit
from-here to the-river Indus at-the-sixteenth camp he-came
omniaque, ut praeceperat, ad traiciendum praeparata ab
and-everything as he-had-instructed for crossing prepared by
Hephaestione repperit. Regnabat in ea regione Omphis,
Hephaestion he-found there-reigned in that region Omphis
qui patri quoque fuerat auctor dedendi regnum
who to-his-father also had-been the-adviser of-surrendering the-kingdom
Alexandro et post mortem parentis legatos miserat, qui
to-Alexander and after the-death of-his-parent envoys had-sent who
consulerent eum, regnare se interim vellet an privatum
should-consult him to-reign himself meanwhile he-wished or as-a-private-man
opperiri eius adventum. Permissoque, ut regnaret, non
to-await his arrival and-with-permitted that he-should-reign not
tamen ius datum usurpare sustinuit. Is benigne quidem
yet the-right given to-use he-endured he kindly indeed
exceperat Hephaestionem gratuitum frumentum copiis
had-received Hephaestion free grain to-the-forces
eius admensus, non tamen ei occurrerat, ne fidem
his having-measured-out not yet him he-had-met lest the-good-faith

ullius nisi regis experiretur. Itaque venienti obviam cum
of-anyone except the-king he-should-test and-so to-him-coming to-meet with
armato exercitu egressus est, elephanti quoque per modica
an-armed army went-out he-has elephants also at moderate
intervalla militum agmini inmixti procul castellorum
intervals with-the-soldiers' column mingled from-afar of-forts
fecerant speciem. Ac primo Alexander non socium, sed
had-made the-appearance and at-first Alexander not an-ally but
hostem adventare credebat iamque et ipse arma milites
an-enemy to-be-approaching believed and-now both himself arms the-soldiers
capere et equites discedere in cornua iusserat paratus ad
to-take-up and the-horsemen to-divide into the-wings had-ordered ready for
pugnam. At Indus cognito Macedonum errore iussis
battle but the-Indian with-learned of-the-Macedonians the-error with-ordered
subsistere ceteris ipse concitat equum, quo vehebatur:
to-halt the-rest himself spurs the-horse on-which he-was-riding
idem Alexander quoque fecit, sive hostis sive amicus
the-same Alexander also did whether an-enemy or a-friend
occurreret, vel sua virtute vel illius fide tutus.
should-meet-him either by-his-own valor or by-the-other's good-faith safe
Coiere, quod ex utriusque vultu posset intellegi, amicis
they-met as from of-each the-face could to-be-understood with-friendly
animis. Ceterum sine interprete non poterat conseri sermo:
minds but without an-interpreter not could to-be-joined talk
itaque adhibito eo barbarus occurrisse se dixit
and-so with-brought-in him the-barbarian to-have-come-to-meet himself said
cum exercitu totas imperii vires protinus traditurum nec
with the-army the-whole of-his-rule strength at-once going-to-hand-over nor
expectasse, dum per nuntios daretur fides. Corpus suum
to-have-waited until through messengers should-be-given a-pledge body his-own
et regnum permittere illi, quem sciret gloriae militantem
and kingdom to-entrust to-him whom he-knew for-glory serving

nihil magis quam famam timere perfidiae. Laetus simplicitate
nothing more than the-name to-fear of-treachery glad at-the-simplicity
barbari rex et dexteram, fidei suae pignus, dedit
of-the-barbarian the-king both his-right-hand of-good-faith his-own as-a-pledge gave
et regnum restituit. LVI elephanti erant, quos tradidit
and the-kingdom restored fifty-six elephants there-were which he-handed-over
Alexandro, multaque pecora eximiae magnitudinis, tauros
to-Alexander and-many cattle of-exceptional size bulls
ad III milia, pretiosum in ea regione acceptumque
about three thousand precious in that region and-welcome
animis regnantium armentum. Quaerenti Alexandro, plures
to-the-minds of-rulers a-herd asking to-Alexander whether-more
agricultores haberet an milites, cum duobus regibus bellanti
farmers he-had or soldiers with two kings waging-war
sibi maiore militum quam agrestium manu opus esse
for-himself with-a-greater of-soldiers than of-farmers band need to-be
respondit. Abisares et Porus erant, sed in Poro eminebat
he-replied Abisares and Porus they-were but in Porus stood-out
auctoritas. Uterque ultra Hydaspen amnem regnabat et
authority each beyond the-Hydaspes river reigned and
belli fortunam, quisquis arma inferret, experiri decreverat.
of-war the-fortune whoever arms should-bring to-test had-decided
Omphis permittente Alexandro et regium insigne sumpsit
Omphis with-permitting Alexander both the-royal emblem took-up
et more gentis suae nomen, quod patris fuerat:
and in-the-custom of-the-nation his-own the-name which of-his-father had-been
Taxilen appellavere populares sequente nomine imperium, in
Taxiles called the-countrymen with-following the-name the-rule onto
quemcumque transiret. Igitur cum per triduum hospitaliter
whomever it-passed therefore when for three-days hospitably
Alexandrum accepisset, quarto die et, quantum frumenti
Alexander he-had-received on-the-fourth day both how-much of-grain

copiis, quas Hephaestion duxerat, praebitum a se esset,
to-the-forces which Hephaestion had-led provided by himself had-been
ostendit et aureas coronas ipsi amicisque omnibus, praeter
he-showed and golden crowns to-him and-to-the-friends all besides
haec signati argenti LXXX talenta dono dedit. Qua
these of-coined silver eighty talents as-a-gift gave at-which
benignitate eius Alexander mire laetus et, quae is dederat,
kindness his Alexander wonderfully glad both what he had-given
remisit et M talenta ex praeda, quam vehebat,
sent-back and a-thousand talents from the-plunder which he-was-carrying
adiecit multaque convivalia ex auro et argento vasa,
added and-many convivial of gold and silver vessels
plurimum Persicae vestis, XXX equos ex suis cum isdem
very-much of-Persian clothing thirty horses from his-own with the-same
insignibus, quis adsueverant, cum ipsum veherent.
trappings which they-had-been-accustomed-to when himself they-carried
Quae liberalitas sicut barbarum obstrinxerat, ita amicos ipsius
which generosity as the-barbarian had-bound so the-friends his
vehementer offendit. E quibus Meleager super cenam largiore
vehemently offended of whom Meleager over dinner too-freely
vino usus gratulari se Alexandro dixit, quod saltem
wine having-used to-congratulate himself to-Alexander said because at-least
in India repperisset dignum talentis M. Rex haud
in India he-had-found one-worthy of-talents a-thousand the-king not
oblitus, quam aegre tulisset, quod Clitum ob linguae
forgetting how bitterly he-had-taken that Clitus on-account-of of-his-tongue
temeritatem occidisset, iram quidem tenuit, sed dixit invidos
the-rashness he-had-killed his-anger indeed held but said envious
homines nihil aliud quam ipsorum esse tormenta.
men nothing other than their-own to-be torments

Abisares submits; Porus answers that he will meet Alexander at his border, but armed, and waits across the Hydaspes with elephants and chariots. A brave pair of young Macedonians die in a fight on an island. For many days Ptolemy feints along the bank, and Alexander dresses Attalus as himself to hold Porus' eye. In a night of storm and rain he crosses by the wooded island; one ship runs on a rock, the rest land, and he orders the men to arms.

Postero die legati Abisarae adiere regem: omnia
on-the-following day the-envoys of-Abisares approached the-king everything
dicioni eius, ita ut mandatum erat, permittebant
to-the-dominion his so as instructed it-had-been they-were-entrusting
firmataque invicem fide remittuntur ad regem. Porum
and-with-confirmed mutually the-pledge are-sent-back to their-king Porus
quoque nominis sui fama ratus ad deditionem posse
also of-name his-own by-the-fame thinking to surrender to-be-able
conpelli misit ad eum Cleocharen, qui denuntiaret ei,
to-be-driven he-sent to him Cleochares who should-announce to-him
ut stipendium penderet et in primo suorum finium aditu
that tribute he-should-pay and at the-first of-his-own borders' approach
occurreret regi. Porus alterum ex his facturum sese
he-should-meet the-king Porus the-one of these going-to-do himself
respondit, ut intranti regnum suum praesto esset, sed
replied that to-him-entering kingdom his-own at-hand he-would-be but
armatus. Iam Hydaspen Alexander superare decreverat, cum
armed now the-Hydaspes Alexander to-cross had-decided when
Barzaentes, defectionis Arachosiis auctor, vinctus trigintaque
Barzaentes of-the-revolt for-the-Arachosians the-author bound and-thirty
elephanti simul capti perducuntur, opportunum adversus
elephants together captured are-brought a-timely against
Indos auxilium: quippe plus in beluis quam in exercitu
the-Indians help for more in the-beasts than in the-army

spei ac virium illis erat. Damaraxus quoque, rex exiguae
of-hope and of-strength to-them was Damaraxus also king of-a-small
partis Indorum, qui Barzaenti se coniunxerat, vinctus
part of-the-Indians who to-Barzaentes himself had-joined bound
adductus est. Igitur transfuga et regulo in custodiam,
brought was therefore with-the-deserter and the-petty-king into custody
elephantis autem Taxili traditis ad amnem Hydaspen
with-the-elephants however to-Taxiles handed-over to the-river Hydaspes
pervenit, in cuius ulteriore ripa Porus consederat transitu
he-came on whose farther bank Porus had-encamped from-the-crossing
prohibiturus hostem. LXXX et V elephantos obiecerat
going-to-bar the-enemy eighty and five elephants he-had-set-against
eximio corporum robore ultraque eos currus CCC et
of-exceptional of-bodies strength and-beyond them chariots three-hundred and
peditum XXX fere milia, in quis erant sagittarii, sicuti
of-infantry thirty about thousand among whom were archers as
ante dictum est, gravioribus telis, quam ut apte excuti
before said it-was with-heavier missiles than that fitly to-be-shot
possent. Ipsum vehebat elephantus super ceteras beluas
they-could him carried an-elephant above the-other beasts
eminens, armaque auro et argento distincta corpus rarae
towering and-arms with-gold and silver picked-out a-body of-rare
magnitudinis honestabant. Par animus robori corporis et,
size graced equal his-spirit to-the-strength of-body and
quanta inter rudes poterat esse, sapientia. Macedonas
as-much among the-uncultivated could be wisdom the-Macedonians
non conspectus hostium solum, sed etiam fluminis, quod
not the-sight of-the-enemy only but also of-the-river which
transeundum erat, magnitudo terrebat. IIII in latitudinem
to-be-crossed was the-size terrified four into breadth
stadia diffusus profundo alveo et nusquam vada aperiente
stades spread with-deep channel and nowhere fords revealing

speciem vasti maris fecerat. Nec pro spatio
the-appearance of-a-vast sea it-had-made nor in-proportion-to the-extent
aquarum late stagnantium impetum coercebat, sed quasi
of-the-waters widely spreading the-force it-was-restraining but as-if
in artum coeuntibus ripis torrens et elisus ferebatur,
into narrows with-coming-together banks a-torrent and squeezed it-was-borne
occultaque saxa inesse ostendebant pluribus locis undae
and-hidden rocks to-be-in showed in-many places the-waves
repercussae. Terribilior facies erat ripae, quam equi virique
beaten-back more-terrible the-sight was of-the-bank which horses and-men
conpleverant. Stabant ingentes vastorum corporum moles
had-filled there-stood huge of-vast bodies masses
et de industria inritatae horrendo stridore aures fatigabant.
and on purpose provoked with-horrible trumpeting the-ears wearied
Hinc amnis, hinc hostis capacia quidem bonae spei
on-this-side the-river on-that the-enemy capable indeed of-good hope
pectora et saepe sane experta inproviso tamen pavore
hearts and often indeed tested by-unforeseen yet panic
percusserant. Quippe instabiles rates nec dirigi ad ripam
had-struck for unstable the-rafts neither to-be-steered to the-bank
nec tuto adplicari posse credebant. Erant in medio
nor safely to-be-brought-to to-be-able they-believed there-were in the-middle-of
amne insulae crebrae, in quas et Indi et Macedones
the-river islands frequent onto which both the-Indians and the-Macedonians
nantes levatis super capita armis transibant. Ibi levia
swimming with-raised above their-heads arms crossed there light
proelia conserebantur, et uterque rex parvae rei discrimine
battles were-joined and each king by-a-small affair's crisis
summae experiebatur eventum. Ceterum in Macedonum
of-the-whole was-testing the-outcome but in the-Macedonians'
exercitu temeritate atque audacia insignes fuere Hegesimachus
army for-rashness and boldness notable were Hegesimachus

et Nicanor, nobiles iuvenes et perpetua partium felicitate
and Nicanor noble young-men and by-the-perpetual of-their-side good-fortune
ad spernendum omne periculum accensi: quis ducibus
to scorning every danger fired with-whom as-leaders
promptissimi iuvenum lanceis modo armati transnavere in
the-readiest of-the-young-men with-lances only armed swam-across to
insulam, quam frequens hostis tenebat, multosque Indorum
an-island which in-numbers the-enemy held and-many of-the-Indians
nulla re melius quam audacia armati interemerunt. Abire
with-no thing better than boldness armed killed to-depart
cum gloria poterant, si umquam temeritas felix inveniret
with glory they-could if ever rashness lucky should-find
modum: sed dum supervenientes contemptim et superbe
a-limit but while those-coming-up contemptuously and arrogantly
quoque expectant, circumventi ab iis, qui occulti enaverant,
too they-await surrounded by those who hidden had-swum-out
eminus obruti telis sunt. Qui effugerant hostem, aut
from-afar overwhelmed by-missiles were those-who had-escaped the-enemy either
impetu amnis ablati sunt aut verticibus inpliciti. Eaque
by-the-force of-the-river swept-away were or in-whirlpools entangled and-that
pugna multum Pori fiduciam erexit cuncta cernentis e
fight much Porus' confidence raised all-things seeing from
ripa. Alexander inops consilii tandem ad fallendum hostem
the-bank Alexander at-a-loss for-a-plan at-last for deceiving the-enemy
talem dolum intendit. Erat insula in flumine amplior
such a-trick devises there-was an-island in the-river larger
ceteris, silvestris eadem et tegendis insidiis apta, fossa
than-the-rest wooded the-same and for-concealing ambushes suited a-ditch
quoque praealta haud procul ripa, quam tenebat ipse, non
also very-deep not far-from the-bank which he-held himself not
pedites modo, sed etiam cum equis viros poterat abscondere:
infantry only but also with horses men could hide

igitur ut a custodia huius opportunitatis oculos hostium
therefore that from the-guarding of-this opportunity the-eyes of-the-enemy
averteret, Ptolomaeum omnibus turmis obequitare iussit
he-might-turn-away Ptolemy with-all the-squadrons to-ride-along ordered
procul insula et subinde Indos clamore terrere, quasi
far-from the-island and repeatedly the-Indians with-shouting to-frighten as-if
flumen transnaturus foret. Per conplures dies Ptolomaeus
the-river going-to-swim-across he-were for several days Ptolemy
id fecit eoque consilio Porum quoque agmen suum ei
that did and-by-that plan Porus also the-column his-own to-that
parti, quam se petere simulabat, coegit advertere. Iam
part which himself to-seek he-pretended compelled to-turn now
extra conspectum hostis insula erat. Alexander in diversa
beyond the-sight of-the-enemy the-island was Alexander in a-different
parte ripae statui suum tabernaculum iussit adsuetamque
part of-the-bank to-be-set-up his tent ordered and-the-accustomed
comitari ipsum cohortem ante id tabernaculum stare et
to-accompany him cohort before that tent to-stand and
omnem apparatum regiae magnificentiae hostium oculis
all the-apparatus of-royal magnificence to-the-enemy's eyes
de industria ostendi. Attalum etiam, aequalem sibi et
on purpose to-be-shown Attalus also of-equal-age to-himself and
haud disparem habitu oris et corporis, utique cum procul
not unlike in-bearing of-face and of-body especially when from-afar
viseretur, veste regia exornat praebiturum speciem, ipsum
he-was-seen in-clothing royal he-adorns going-to-present the-appearance himself
regem illi ripae praesidere nec cogitare de transitu. Huius
the-king that bank to-guard nor to-think about the-crossing of-this
consilii effectum primo morata tempestas est, mox adiuvit
plan the-effect at-first delayed a-storm has soon helped
incommoda quoque ad bonos eventus vertente fortuna.
the-disadvantages also to good outcomes with-turning fortune

Traicere amnem cum ceteris copiis in regionem insulae,
to-cross the-river with the-other forces into the-region of-the-island
de qua ante dictum est, parabat averso hoste
about which before said it-was he-was-preparing with-turned-away the-enemy
in eos, qui cum Ptolomaeo inferiorem obsederant ripam,
toward those who with Ptolemy the-lower had-beset bank
cum procella imbrem vix sub tectis tolerabilem effundit.
when a-gale a-rain scarcely under roofs bearable pours
Obrutique milites nimbo in terram refugerunt navigiis
and-overwhelmed the-soldiers by-the-cloudburst onto land fled-back with-boats
ratibusque desertis, sed tumultuantium fremitus obstrepentibus
and-rafts abandoned but of-the-men-in-uproar the-din with-roaring-against
ventis ab hoste non poterat audiri. Deinde momento
winds by the-enemy not could to-be-heard then in-a-moment
temporis repressus est imber, ceterum adeo spissae intendere
of-time checked was the-rain but so thick spread
se nubes, ut conderent lucem vixque conloquentium
themselves the-clouds that they-hid the-light and-scarcely of-men-conversing
inter ipsos facies noscitarentur. Terruisset alium
among themselves the-faces were-recognized it-would-have-terrified another-man
obducta nox caelo, cum ignoto amne navigandum
drawn-over the-night over-the-sky when on-an-unknown river to-be-sailed
esset, forsitan hoste eam ipsam ripam, quam caeci
it-was perhaps with-the-enemy that very bank which blind
atque inprovidi petebant, tenente. At rex periculo
and unforeseeing they-were-seeking holding but the-king from-danger
gloriam accersens et obscuritatem, quae ceteros terrebat,
glory summoning and the-darkness which the-rest terrified
suam occasionem ratus dato signo, ut omnes silentio
his-own opportunity thinking with-given signal that all in-silence
escenderent in rates, eam, qua ipse vehebatur, primam
should-board onto the-rafts the-one on-which he-himself was-carried first

iussit expelli. Vacua erat ab hostibus ripa, quae petebatur:
ordered to-be-pushed-off empty was of the-enemy the-bank which was-sought
quippe adhuc Porus Ptolomaeum tantum intuebatur. Una
for still Porus Ptolemy only was-watching with-one
ergo navi, quam petrae fluctus inliserat, haerente ceterae
therefore ship which on-a-rock the-wave had-dashed sticking the-rest
evadunt, armaque capere milites et ire in ordines iussit.
get-out and-arms to-take-up the-soldiers and to-go into ranks he-ordered

XIV · THE BATTLE WITH PORUS

Porus sends his brother Spitaces with a hundred chariots, which stick in the mud, then comes himself with his elephants before the line. The Macedonians shoot down the drivers and hack at the beasts, which trample their own men. Porus, wounded nine times, is taken. Asked what the victor should do, he answers: what this day advises, which has shown how fleeting fortune is. Alexander gives him a larger kingdom, believing his own greatness grows with the greatness of those he conquers.

Iamque agmen in cornua divisum ipse ducebat, cum
and-now the-column into wings divided he-himself was-leading when
Poro nuntiatur armis virisque ripam obtineri et rerum
to-Porus it-is-announced with-arms and-men the-bank to-be-held and of-affairs
adesse discrimen. Ac primo humani ingenii vitio
to-be-at-hand the-crisis and at-first by-human nature's fault
spei suae indulgens Abisaren belli socium — et ita
to-hope his-own indulging Abisares of-the-war the-ally and so
convenerat — adventare credebat. Mox liquidiore luce
it-had-been-agreed to-be-approaching he-believed soon with-clearer light
aperiente aciem hostium C quadrigas et IIII milia
revealing the-line of-the-enemy a-hundred four-horse-chariots and four thousand
equitum venienti agmini obiecit. Dux erat copiarum,
horsemen to-the-coming column he-set-against the-leader was of-the-forces

quas praemisit, Spitaces, frater ipsius, summa virium
which he-sent-ahead Spitaces the-brother his-own the-main-weight of-the-strength
in curribus: senos viros singuli vehebant, duos clipeatos,
in the-chariots six-each men each carried two shield-bearers
duos sagittarios ab utroque latere dispositos, aurigae erant
two archers on each side placed charioteers were
ceteri haud sane inermes: quippe iacula conplura, ubi
the-rest not at-all unarmed for javelins several when
comminus proeliandum erat, omissis habenis in hostem
hand-to-hand to-be-fought it-was with-dropped reins on the-enemy
ingerebant. Ceterum vix ullus usus huius auxilii eo die
they-heaped but scarcely any use of-this help on-that day
fuit. Namque, ut supra dictum est, imber violentius quam
was for as above said it-is the-rain more-violently than
alias fusus campos lubricos et inequitabiles fecerat,
at-other-times poured the-plains slippery and unrideable had-made
gravesque et propemodum inmobiles currus inluvie ac
and-heavy and almost immovable the-chariots in-the-mud and
voraginibus haerebant. Contra Alexander expedito
holes stuck on-the-other-hand Alexander with-unencumbered
ac levi agmine strenue invectus est. Scythae et Dahae
and light column briskly charged has the-Scythians and the-Dahae
primi omnium invasere Indos: Perdiccam deinde cum
first of-all attacked the-Indians Perdiccas then with
equitibus in dextrum cornu hostium emisit. Iam undique
the-horsemen against the-right wing of-the-enemy he-sent-out now on-all-sides
pugna se moverat, cum ii, qui currus agebant, illud
the-fight itself had-stirred when those who the-chariots were-driving that
ultimum auxilium suorum rati effusis habenis in
the-last help of-their-own thinking with-loosened reins into
medium discrimen ruere coeperunt. Anceps id malum
the-middle-of the-crisis to-rush began twofold that evil

utrisque erat. Nam et Macedonum pedites primo impetu
for-both was for both the-Macedonians' infantry at-the-first charge
obterebantur, et per lubrica atque invia inmissi currus
were-crushed and over slippery and pathless-ground sent-in the-chariots
excutiebant eos, a quibus regebantur. Aliorum turbati equi
threw-out those by whom they-were-guided of-others terrified the-horses
non in voragines modo lacunasque, sed etiam in amnem
not into chasms only and-pools but also into the-river
praecipitavere curricula, pauci telis hostium exacti
threw-headlong the-chariots few by-the-missiles of-the-enemy driven
penetravere ad Porum acerrime pugnam cientem. Is, ut
penetrated to Porus most-keenly the-fight rousing he when
dissipatos tota acie currus vagari sine rectoribus vidit,
scattered over-the-whole line the-chariots to-wander without drivers he-saw
proximis amicorum distribuit elephantos. Post eos posuerat
to-the-nearest of-his-friends distributed the-elephants behind them he-had-placed
peditem ac sagittarios et tympana pulsare solitos: id pro
the-infantry and archers and the-drums to-beat accustomed that instead-of
cantu tubarum Indis erat, nec strepitu eorum movebantur
the-song of-trumpets for-the-Indians was nor by-the-din of-them were-they-moved
olim ad notum sonum auribus mitigatis. Herculis
long-since to the-familiar sound with-their-ears softened of-Hercules
simulacrum agmini peditum praeferebatur: id maximum
a-statue before-the-column of-infantry was-carried that the-greatest
erat bellantibus incitamentum, et deseruisse gestantis militare
was for-the-fighters incitement and to-have-deserted the-bearers a-military
flagitium habebatur. Capitis etiam sanxerant poenam
disgrace was-held of-death even they-had-sanctioned the-penalty
iis, qui ex acie non rettulissent, metu, quem
for-those who from the-battle not had-brought-it-back with-the-fear which
ex illo hoste quondam conceperant, etiam in religionem
from that enemy once they-had-conceived even into religion

venerationemque converso. Macedonas non beluarum modo,
and-veneration turned the-Macedonians not of-the-beasts only
sed etiam ipsius regis aspectus parumper inhibuit. Beluae
but also of-the-very king the-sight for-a-little checked the-beasts
dispositae inter armatos speciem turrium procul fecerant,
placed among the-armed-men the-appearance of-towers from-afar had-made
ipse Porus humanae magnitudinis prope modum excesserat:
himself Porus of-human size almost the-measure had-exceeded
speciem magnitudini Pori adicere videbatur belua, qua
the-appearance to-the-size of-Porus to-add seemed the-beast on-which
vehebatur, tantum inter ceteras eminens, quanto aliis ipse
he-was-carried as-much among the-rest towering as others he-himself
praestabat. Itaque Alexander contemplatus et regem et
surpassed and-so Alexander having-contemplated both the-king and
agmen Indorum: 'Tandem,' inquit, 'par animo meo periculum
the-column of-the-Indians at-last he-says equal to-spirit my a-danger
video: cum bestiis simul et cum egregiis viris res
I-see with beasts at-once and with outstanding men the-business
est.' Intuensque Coenon: 'Cum ego,' inquit, 'Ptolomaeo
is and-looking-at Coenus when I he-says by-Ptolemy
Perdiccaque et Hephaestione comitatus in laevum hostium
and-Perdiccas and Hephaestion accompanied on the-left of-the-enemy
cornu impetum fecero, viderisque me in medio
wing an-attack shall-have-made and-you-shall-have-seen me in the-middle-of
ardore certaminis, ipse dextrum move et turbatis
the-ardor of-the-contest yourself the-right move and on-the-disordered
signa infer. Tu, Antigene, et tu, Leonnate, et Tauron,
your-standards bring you Antigenes and you Leonnatus and Tauron
iam invehemini in mediam aciem et urgebitis frontem.
then will-charge into the-middle line and will-press the-front
Hastae nostrae praelongae et validae non alias magis
the-spears our very-long and strong not at-other-times more

quam adversus beluas rectoresque earum usui esse poterunt:
than against beasts and-the-drivers of-them of-use to-be will-be-able
deturbate eos, qui vehuntur, et ipsas confodite.
dislodge those who are-carried and the-beasts-themselves stab
Anceps genus auxilii est et in suos acrius furit: in
a-twofold kind of-help it-is and against its-own more-fiercely rages against
hostem enim imperio, in suos pavore agitur.' Haec
the-enemy for by-command against its-own by-fear it-is-driven these-things
elocutus concitat equum primus. Iamque, ut destinatum
having-spoken he-spurs his-horse first and-now as planned
erat, invaserat ordines hostium, cum Coenus ingenti
it-had-been he-had-attacked the-ranks of-the-enemy when Coenus with-huge
vi a laevo cornu invehitur. Phalanx quoque mediam
force from the-left wing charges the-phalanx also the-middle
Indorum aciem uno impetu perrupit. At Porus, qua
of-the-Indians line with-one charge broke-through but Porus where
equitem invehi senserat, beluas agi iussit: sed tardum
the-cavalry to-charge he-had-sensed the-beasts to-be-driven ordered but the-slow
et paene inmobile animal equorum velocitatem aequare
and almost immovable animal of-the-horses the-speed to-equal
non poterat. Ne sagittarum quidem ullus erat barbaris
not could not of-arrows even any was for-the-barbarians
usus. Quippe longas et praegraves, nisi prius in terra
use for long and very-heavy unless first on the-ground
statuerunt arcum, haud satis apte et commode inponunt,
they-have-set the-bow not sufficiently fitly and conveniently they-fit
tum humo lubrica et ob id inpediente conatum
then with-the-ground slippery and on-account-of that bindering the-effort
molientes ictus celeritate hostium occupantur. Ergo
working-at the-shots by-the-speed of-the-enemy they-are-forestalled therefore
spreto regis imperio — quod fere fit, ubi turbatis
with-spurned the-king's command as generally happens where on-the-disordered

acrius metus quam dux imperare coepit — totidem
more-keenly fear than the-leader to-command has-begun as-many
erant imperatores, quot agmina errabant: alius iungere
were commanders as columns were-wandering one to-join
aciem, alius dividere, stare quidam et nonnulli circumvehi
the-line another to-divide to-stand some and some to-ride-round
terga hostium iubebant, nihil in medium consulebatur.
the-rear of-the-enemy were-ordering nothing for the-common-good was-planned
Porus tamen cum paucis, quibus metu potior fuerat pudor,
Porus yet with a-few to-whom than-fear stronger had-been shame
colligere dispersos, obvius hosti ire pergit elephantosque
to-gather the-scattered to-meet the-enemy to-go proceeds and-the-elephants
ante agmen suorum agi iubet. Magnum beluae iniecere
before the-column of-his-own to-be-driven orders great the-beasts struck
terrorem, insolitusque stridor non equos modo, tam
terror and-the-unaccustomed trumpeting not the-horses only so
pavidum ad omnia animal, sed viros quoque ordinesque
timid toward everything an-animal but the-men also and-the-ranks
turbaverat. Iam fugae circumspiciebant locum paulo ante
had-disordered now for-flight they-were-looking-round-for a-place a-little before
victores, cum Alexander Agrianos et Thracas leviter armatos,
victors when Alexander the-Agrianians and Thracians lightly armed
meliorem concursatione quam comminus militem, emisit in
better in-skirmishing than in-close-combat soldiery sent-out against
beluas. Ingentem hi vim telorum iniecere et elephantis
the-beasts a-huge these quantity of-missiles hurled both on-the-elephants
et regentibus eos. Phalanx quoque instare constanter
and on-the-drivers of-them the-phalanx also to-press steadily
territis coepit. Sed quidam avidius persecuti beluas
on-the-terrified began but some too-eagerly having-pursued the-beasts
in semet inritavere vulneribus. Obtriti ergo pedibus
against themselves provoked by-wounds crushed therefore by-the-feet

earum ceteris, ut parcius instarent, fuere documentum.
of-them to-the-rest that more-sparingly they-should-press were a-lesson
Praecipue terribilis illa facies erat, cum manu arma
especially terrible that sight was when with-the-trunk arms
virosque corriperent et super se regentibus traderent.
and-men they-snatched and over themselves to-the-drivers handed-them
Anceps ergo pugna nunc sequentium, nunc fugientium
doubtful therefore the-fight now of-men-pursuing now of-men-fleeing
elephantos in multum diei varium certamen extraxit, donec
the-elephants into much-of the-day the-varied contest drew-out until
securibus — id namque genus auxilii praeparatum erat —
with-axes that for kind of-help prepared had-been
pedes amputare coeperunt. Copidas vocabant gladios leviter
the-feet to-cut-off they-began copides they-called swords slightly
curvatos, falcibus similes, quis adpetebant beluarum manus.
curved to-sickles similar with-which they-attacked of-the-beasts the-trunks
Nec quicquam inexpertum non mortis modo, sed etiam in
nor anything untried not of-death only but also in
ipsa morte novi supplicii timor omittebat. Ergo elephanti
the-very death of-a-new punishment the-fear left-out therefore the-elephants
vulneribus tandem fatigati suos impetu sternunt, et,
by-wounds at-last exhausted their-own with-a-charge lay-low and
qui rexerant eos, praecipitati in terram ab ipsis
those-who had-guided them thrown onto the-ground by them-themselves
obterebantur. Iamque pecorum modo magis pavidi quam
were-crushed and-now of-cattle in-the-manner more frightened than
infesti ultra aciem exigebantur, cum Porus destitutus a
hostile beyond the-line they-were-driven when Porus abandoned by
pluribus tela multa ante praeparata in circumfusos ex
most missiles many before prepared onto those-around-him from
elephanto suo coepit ingerere. Multisque eminus vulneratis
elephant his-own began to-heap and-with-many from-afar wounded

expositus ipse ad ictus undique petebatur. Novem iam
exposed himself to blows from-all-sides he-was-aimed-at nine now
vulnera hinc tergo, illinc pectore exceperat multoque
wounds on-this-side in-the-back on-that in-the-breast he-had-received and-with-much
sanguine profuso languidis manibus magis elapsa quam
blood poured with-weak hands more slipped than
excussa tela mittebat. Nec segnius belua instincta rabie,
hurled missiles he-was-sending nor more-slowly the-beast spurred by-madness
nondum saucia invehebatur ordinibus, donec rector beluae
not-yet wounded charged the-ranks until the-driver of-the-beast
regem conspexit fluentibus membris omissisque armis vix
the-king saw with-flowing limbs and-dropped arms scarcely
compotem mentis. Tum beluam in fugam concitat sequente
master of-his-mind then the-beast into flight he-spurs with-following
Alexandro: sed equus eius multis vulneribus confossus
Alexander but the-horse his by-many wounds pierced
deficiensque procubuit posito magis rege quam effuso.
and-failing fell with-set-down rather the-king than thrown
Itaque, dum equum mutat, tardius insecutus est. Interim
and-so while the-horse he-changes more-slowly pursued he-has meanwhile
frater Taxilis, regis Indorum, praemissus ab Alexandro
the-brother of-Taxiles of-the-king of-the-Indians sent-ahead by Alexander
monere coepit Porum, ne ultima experiri perseveraret
to-warn began Porus that-not the-ultimate to-try he-should-persist
dederetque se victori. At ille, quamquam exhaustae
and-should-surrender himself to-the-victor but he although exhausted
erant vires deficiebatque sanguis, tamen ad notam vocem
were his-strength and-was-failing his-blood yet at the-known voice
excitatus: 'Agnosco,' inquit, 'Taxilis fratrem, imperii regnique
roused I-recognize he-says of-Taxiles the-brother of-empire and-kingdom
sui proditoris,' et telum, quod unum forte non
his-own of-the-betrayer and the-missile which one by-chance not

effluxerat, contorsit in eum: quod per medium pectus
had-slipped-away he-hurled at him which through the-middle breast
penetravit ad tergum. Hoc ultimo virtutis opere edito
penetrated to the-back with-this last of-valor deed done
fugere acrius coepit. Sed elephantus quoque, qui multa
to-flee more-keenly he-began but the-elephant also which many
exceperat tela, deficiebat: itaque sistit fugam peditemque
had-received missiles was-failing and-so he-halts the-flight and-the-infantry
sequenti hosti obiecit. Iam Alexander consecutus erat et
to-the-following enemy set-against now Alexander overtaken had and
pertinacia Pori cognita vetabat resistentibus parci. Ergo
with-the-obstinacy of-Porus learned forbade the-resisting to-be-spared therefore
undique et in pedites et in ipsum Porum tela congesta
from-all-sides both at the-infantry and at himself Porus missiles heaped
sunt, quis tandem gravatus labi ex belua coepit. Indus,
were by-which at-last weighed-down to-slip from the-beast he-began the-Indian
qui elephantum regebat, descendere eum ratus more
who the-elephant was-guiding to-dismount him thinking in-the-manner
solito elephantum procumbere iussit in genua: qui ut se
usual the-elephant to-kneel ordered onto its-knees which when itself
submisit, ceteri quoque — ita enim instituti erant — demisere
it-lowered the-rest also so for trained they-were let-down
corpora in terram. Ea res et Porum et ceteros victoribus
their-bodies onto the-ground that thing both Porus and the-rest to-the-victors
tradidit. Rex spoliari corpus Pori, interemptum esse
handed-over the-king to-be-stripped the-body of-Porus killed to-be
credens, iubet, et, qui detraherent loricam vestemque,
believing orders and those-who should-pull-off the-breastplate and-clothing
concurrere, cum belua dominum tueri et spoliantes coepit
to-run-together when the-beast its-master to-protect and the-strippers began
adpetere levatumque corpus eius rursus dorso suo inponere.
to-attack and-raised the-body his again on-back its-own to-put

Ergo telis undique obruitur, confossoque eo in
therefore by-missiles from-all-sides it-is-overwhelmed and-with-pierced it onto
vehiculum Porus inponitur. Quem rex ut vidit adlevantem
a-wagon Porus is-put whom the-king when he-saw raising
oculos, non odio, sed miseratione commotus: 'Quae, malum,'
his-eyes not by-hatred but by-pity moved what the-devil
inquit, 'amentia te coegit rerum mearum cognita fama
he-says madness you compelled of-affairs my with-known the-fame
belli fortunam experiri, cum Taxilis esset in deditos
of-war the-fortune to-try when of-Taxiles there-was toward the-surrendered
clementiae meae tam propinquum tibi exemplum?' At ille:
of-clemency my so near to-you an-example but he
'Quoniam,' inquit, 'percontaris, respondebo ea libertate,
since he-says you-ask I-shall-reply with-that freedom
quam interrogando fecisti: neminem me fortiorem esse
which by-asking you-have-made no-one than-me braver to-be
censebam. Meas enim noveram vires, nondum expertus tuas:
I-judged my for I-knew strength not-yet having-tried yours
fortiorem esse te belli docuit eventus. Sed ne sic quidem
braver to-be you of-the-war has-taught the-outcome but not thus even
parum felix sum, secundus tibi.' Rursus interrogatus, quid
too-little fortunate am-I second to-you again asked what
ipse victorem statuere debere censeret: 'Quod hic,' inquit,
he-himself the-victor to-decide ought judged what this he-says
'dies tibi suadet, quo expertus es, quam caduca felicitas
day to-you advises on-which learned you-have how perishable good-fortune
esset.' Plus monendo profecit, quam si precatus esset: quippe
is more by-advising he-achieved than if begged he-had for
magnitudinem animi eius interritam ac ne fortuna quidem
the-greatness of-mind his unterrified and not by-fortune even
infractam non misericordia modo, sed etiam honore excipere
broken not with-pity only but also with-honor to-receive

dignatus est. Aegrum curavit haud secus, quam si pro
deigned he-has him-sick he-tended not otherwise than if for
ipso pugnasset: confirmatum contra spem omnium in
himself he-had-fought strengthened contrary-to the-hope of-all into
amicorum numerum recepit, mox donavit ampliore regno,
of-friends the-number he-received soon he-presented with-an-ampler kingdom
quam tenuit. Nec sane quicquam ingenium eius solidius
than he-held nor indeed anything nature his more-solid
aut constantius habuit quam admirationem verae laudis et
or more-constant had than admiration of-true praise and
gloriae: simplicius tamen famam aestimabat in hoste quam
glory more-simply yet fame he-valued in an-enemy than
in cive. Quippe a suis credebat magnitudinem suam
in a-citizen for by his-own he-believed the-greatness his-own
destrui posse, eandem clariorem fore, quo maiores
to-be-destroyed to-be-able the-same more-famous going-to-be the greater
fuissent, quos ipse vicisset.
had-been those-whom he-himself had-conquered

BOOK IX

I · AFTER THE VICTORY

Alexander sacrifices to the Sun, praises the army, and orders ships built. He founds two cities and rewards his officers; Abisares sends envoys but will not come in person. Through forests of huge trees and serpents he reaches a city guarded by a marsh, breaks its chained wagons, and storms it, and the towns around surrender. Sopithes surrenders and shows his famous hunting dogs, which hold a lion to the death. Phegeus meets Alexander with gifts.

Alexander tam memorabili victoria laetus, qua sibi
Alexander at-so memorable a-victory glad by-which for-himself
Orientis finis apertos esse censebat, Soli victimis
of-the-East the-boundaries opened to-be he-judged to-the-Sun with-victims
caesis milites quoque, quo promptioribus animis reliqua
slain the-soldiers also that with-readier spirits the-rest
belli obirent, pro contione laudatos docuit, quidquid
of-the-war they-might-face before the-assembly praised he-informed whatever
Indis virium fuisset, illa dimicatione prostratum:
for-the-Indians of-strength there-had-been in-that battle laid-low
cetera opimam praedam fore celebratasque opes in ea
the-rest a-rich plunder going-to-be and-the-celebrated riches in that
regione eminere, quam peterent. Proinde iam vilia et
region to-stand-out which they-were-seeking therefore now cheap and
obsoleta esse spolia de Persis: gemmis margaritisque et
worn-out to-be the-spoils from the-Persians with-gems and-pearls and
auro atque ebore Macedoniam Graeciamque, non suas
gold and ivory Macedonia and-Greece not their-own
tantum domos repleturos. Avidi milites et pecuniae et
only homes going-to-fill greedy the-soldiers both of-money and
gloriae, simul quia numquam eos adfirmatio eius
of-glory at-the-same-time because never them the-affirmation his

fefellerat, pollicentur operam: dimissisque cum bona spe
had-deceived promise their-service and-with-dismissed with good hope
navigia exaedificari iubet, ut, cum totam Asiam percucurrisset,
boats to-be-built he-orders that when the-whole Asia he-had-run-through
finem terrarum, mare, inviseret. Multa materia navalis in
the-end of-the-lands the-sea he-might-visit much timber naval in
proximis montibus erat: quam caedere adgressi magnitudinis
the-nearest mountains there-was which to-cut having-begun of-size
invisitatae repperere serpentes. Rhinocerotes quoque, rarum
unseen they-found serpents rhinoceroses also a-rare
alibi animal, in isdem montibus erant. Ceterum hoc nomen
elsewhere animal in the-same mountains were but this name
beluis inditum a Graecis: sermonis eius ignari Indi
to-the-beasts given by the-Greeks of-the-language that ignorant the-Indians
aliud lingua sua usurpant. Rex duabus urbibus conditis
another in-tongue their-own use the-king with-two cities founded
in utraque fluminis, quod superaverat, ripa copiarum duces
on each of-the-river which he-had-crossed bank of-the-forces the-generals
coronis et M aureis singulos donat: ceteris quoque
with-crowns and with-a-thousand gold-pieces each presents to-the-rest also
pro portione aut gradus, quem in amicitia obtinebant, aut
in proportion either of-the-rank which in friendship they-held or
navatae operae honos habitus est. Abisares, qui, priusquam
of-rendered service honor paid was Abisares who before
cum Poro dimicaretur, legatos ad Alexandrum miserat, rursus
with Porus it-was-fought envoys to Alexander had-sent again
alios misit pollicentes, omnia facturum, quae imperasset,
others sent promising everything going-to-do which he-commanded
modo ne cogeretur corpus suum dedere: neque enim aut
provided not he-be-compelled person his-own to-surrender nor for either
sine regio imperio victurum aut regnaturum esse captivum.
without royal rule going-to-live or going-to-reign to-be as-a-captive

Cui Alexander nuntiari iussit, si gravaretur ad se
to-whom Alexander to-be-announced ordered if he-was-reluctant to himself
venire, ipsum ad eum esse venturum. Hinc praerapido
to-come himself to him to-be going-to-come from-here with-the-very-swift
amne superato ad interiora Indiae processit. Silvae erant
river crossed to the-interior of-India he-advanced woods there-were
prope in inmensum spatium diffusae procerisque et in
almost into a-boundless space spread and-with-tall and to
eximiam altitudinem editis arboribus umbrosae. Plerique
an-exceptional height raised trees shady most
rami instar ingentium stipitum flexi in humum rursus, qua
branches like huge trunks bent onto the-ground again where
se curvaverant, erigebantur, adeo ut species esset non
themselves they-had-curved were-raised so that the-appearance was not
rami resurgentis, sed arboris ex sua radice generatae.
of-a-branch rising-again but of-a-tree from its-own root produced
Caeli temperies salubris: quippe et vim solis umbrae
of-the-sky the-climate healthful for both the-force of-the-sun the-shadows
levant et aquae large manant e fontibus. Ceterum hic
relieve and waters abundantly flow from springs but here
quoque serpentium magna vis erat squamis fulgorem
also of-serpents a-great quantity there-was with-scales the-gleam
auri reddentibus. Virus haud ullum magis noxium est:
of-gold returning venom not any more harmful is
quippe morsum praesens mors sequebatur, donec ab incolis
for the-bite an-instant death followed until by the-inhabitants
remedium oblatum est. Hinc per deserta ventum est
a-remedy offered was from-here through deserts come it-was
ad flumen Hyraotim. Iunctum erat flumini nemus opacum
to the-river Hyraotis joined was to-the-river a-grove dark
arboribus alibi invisitatis agrestiumque pavonum multitudine
with-trees elsewhere unseen and-of-wild peacocks with-a-multitude

frequens. Castris inde motis oppidum haud procul positum
thronged with-the-camp then moved a-town not far placed
corona capit obsidibusque acceptis stipendium inponit. Ad
with-a-ring he-takes and-with-hostages received tribute he-imposes to
magnam deinde, ut in ea regione, urbem pervenit, non
a-great then as in that region city he-came not
muro solum, sed etiam palude munitam. Ceterum barbari
by-a-wall only but also by-a-marsh fortified but the-barbarians
vehiculis inter se iunctis dimicaturi occurrerunt: tela
with-wagons among themselves joined going-to-fight met-him the-weapons
aliis hastae, aliis secures erant, transiliebantque in vehicula
for-some spears for-others axes were and-they-leapt-across onto the-wagons
strenuo saltu, cum succurrere laborantibus suis vellent.
with-a-vigorous leap when to-help their-hard-pressed own-men they-wished
Ac primo insolitum genus pugnae Macedonas terruit,
and at-first the-unaccustomed kind of-fighting the-Macedonians terrified
cum eminus vulnerarentur: deinde spreto tam incondito
since from-afar they-were-wounded then with-scorned so disorderly
auxilio ab utroque latere vehiculis circumfusi repugnantes
a-help from each side the-wagons surrounding the-resisting
fodere coeperunt. Et vincula, quis conserta erant, iussit
to-stab they-began and the-bonds by-which joined they-were he-ordered
incidi, quo facilius singula circumvenirentur. Itaque VIII
to-be-cut that more-easily single they-might-be-surrounded and-so with-eight
milibus suorum amissis in oppidum refugerunt. Postero
thousand of-their-own lost into the-town they-fled-back on-the-following
die scalis undique admotis muri occupantur. Paucis
day with-ladders on-all-sides moved-up the-walls are-seized for-a-few
pernicitas saluti fuit: qui ubi cognito urbis excidio
speed for-safety was who when with-learned of-the-city the-destruction
paludem transnavere, in vicina oppida ingentem intulere
the-marsh swam-across into the-neighboring towns a-huge brought

terrorem invictum exercitum et deorum profecto advenisse
terror an-unconquered army and of-gods surely to-have-come
memorantes. Alexander ad vastandam eam regionem Perdicca
relating Alexander for ravaging that region with-Perdiccas
cum expedita manu misso partem copiarum Eumeni
with a-light-armed band sent part of-the-forces to-Eumenes
tradidit, ut is quoque barbaros ad deditionem conpelleret:
handed-over that he also the-barbarians to surrender might-compel
ipse ceteros ad urbem validam, in quam aliarum quoque
he-himself the-rest to a-city strong into which of-others also
confugerant incolae, duxit. Oppidani missis, qui regem
had-fled the-inhabitants led the-townsfolk with-sent men-who the-king
deprecarentur, nihilo minus bellum parabant. Quippe
should-entreat by-nothing less war were-preparing for
orta seditio in diversa consilia diduxerat vulgum: alii
having-arisen a-quarrel into different counsels had-split the-crowd some
omnia deditione potiora, quidam nullam opem in ipsis
everything than-surrender preferable some no help in themselves
esse ducebant. Sed dum nihil in commune consulitur,
to-be held but while nothing for the-common-good is-planned
qui deditioni inminebant, apertis portis hostem
those-who toward-surrender were-inclined with-opened gates the-enemy
recipiunt. Alexander quamquam belli auctoribus iure
receive Alexander although with-the-war's authors rightly
poterat irasci, tamen omnibus venia data et obsidibus
could to-be-angry yet to-all with-pardon given and with-hostages
acceptis ad proximam deinde urbem castra movit. Obsides
received to the-next then city the-camp moved the-hostages
ducebantur ante agmen: quos cum ex muris agnovissent,
were-led before the-column whom when from the-walls they-had-recognized
utpote gentis eiusdem, in colloquium incolae vocaverunt.
as-being of-nation the-same into parley the-inhabitants called

Illi clementiam regis simulque vim commemorando
they the-clemency of-the-king and-at-the-same-time his-force by-recalling
ad deditionem eos conpulere: ceterasque urbes simili modo
to surrender them drove and-the-other cities in-similar manner
domitas in fidem accepit. Hinc in regnum Sopithis
tamed into allegiance he-received from-here into the-kingdom of-Sopithes
perventum est. Gens, ut barbari credunt, sapientia excellet
come it-was the-nation as the-barbarians believe in-wisdom excels
bonisque moribus regitur. Genitos liberos non parentum
and-by-good customs is-ruled born children not by-the-parents'
arbitrio tollunt aluntque, sed eorum, quibus spectandi
judgment they-raise and-nourish but by-those-men's to-whom of-examining
infantum habitum cura mandata est. Si quos vitiis insignes
the-infants' condition the-care entrusted is if any for-defects marked
aut aliqua parte membrorum inutiles notaverunt, necari
or in-some part of-their-limbs useless they-have-noted to-be-killed
iubent. Nuptiis coeunt non genere ac nobilitate coniunctis,
they-order in-marriages they-unite not by-birth and nobility joined
sed electa corporum specie, quia eadem aestimatur in
but by-chosen of-bodies beauty because the-same is-valued in
liberis. Huius gentis oppidum, cui Alexander admoverat
children of-this nation a-town to-which Alexander had-moved-up
copias, ab ipso Sopithe obtinebatur. Clausae erant portae,
his-forces by himself Sopithes was-held shut were the-gates
sed nulli in muris turribusque se armati ostendebant,
but none on the-walls and-towers themselves armed showed
dubitabantque Macedones, deseruissent urbem incolae
and-doubted the-Macedonians whether-had-deserted the-city the-inhabitants
an fraude se occulerent: cum subito patefacta porta
or by-trickery themselves were-hiding when suddenly with-opened gate
rex Indus cum duobus adultis filiis occurrit multum inter
the-king Indian with two grown sons meets-them much among

omnes barbaros eminens corporis specie. Vestis erat auro
all barbarians towering in-body's beauty his-clothing was with-gold
purpuraque distincta, quae etiam crura velabat, aureis soleis
and-purple picked-out which even his-legs veiled in-golden sandals
inseruerat gemmas, lacerti quoque et brachia margaritis
he-had-inserted gems the-upper-arms also and arms with-pearls
ornata erant, pendebant ex auribus insignes candore ac
adorned were there-hung from his-ears notable for-whiteness and
magnitudine lapilli, baculum aureum berylli distinguebant.
size little-stones a-staff golden beryls picked-out
Quo tradito precatus, ut sospes acciperet, se
with-which handed-over having-prayed that safe he-should-receive himself
liberosque et gentem suam dedidit. Nobiles ad venandum
and-his-children and nation his-own he-surrendered noble for hunting
canes in ea regione sunt: latratu abstinere dicuntur, cum
dogs in that region are from-barking to-refrain are-said when
viderunt feram, leonibus maxime infesti. Horum vim
they-have-seen a-wild-beast to-lions especially hostile of-these the-strength
ut ostenderet Alexandro, in consaeptum leonem eximiae
that he-might-show to-Alexander into an-enclosure a-lion of-exceptional
magnitudinis iussit emitti et quattuor omnino admoveri
size he-ordered to-be-let-out and four in-all to-be-moved-up
canes. Qui celeriter feram occupaverunt: tum ex iis, qui
dogs which quickly the-beast seized then of those who
adsueverant talibus ministeriis, unus canis leoni cum
were-accustomed to-such services one of-a-dog to-the-lion with
aliis inhaerentis crus avellere et, quia non sequebatur,
the-others clinging the-leg to-tear-off and because not it-was-following
ferro amputare coepit. Ne sic quidem pertinacia victa
with-iron to-cut-off began not thus even with-its-obstinacy overcome
rursus aliam partem secare institit et inde non segnius
again another part to-cut he-began and from-there not more-slowly

inhaerentem ferro subinde caedere: at ille in vulnere
clinging with-iron repeatedly to-cut but it in the-wound
ferae dentes moribundus quoque infixerat. Tantam in illis
of-the-beast its-teeth dying even had-fixed so-great in those
animalibus ad venandum cupiditatem ingenerasse naturam
animals for hunting desire to-have-implanted nature
memoriae proditum est. Equidem plura transcribo quam
to-memory handed-down it-is I-indeed more-things transcribe than
credo: nam nec adfirmare sustineo, de quibus dubito,
I-believe for neither to-affirm I-can-bring-myself about what I-doubt
nec subducere, quae accepi. Relicto igitur Sopithe in
nor to-withdraw what I-have-received with-left therefore Sopithes in
suo regno ad fluvium Hypasin processit Hephaestione,
his-own kingdom to the-river Hyphasis he-advanced with-Hephaestion
qui diversam regionem subegerat, coniuncto. Phegeus erat
who a-different region had-subdued joined Phegeus was
gentis proximae rex: qui popularibus suis colere agros,
of-the-nation next the-king who with-countrymen his-own to-cultivate the-fields
ut adsueverant, iussis Alexandro cum donis occurrit nihil,
as they-were-accustomed ordered to-Alexander with gifts came-to-meet nothing
quod imperaret, detrectans.
that he-commanded refusing

II · AT THE HYPHASIS

Phegeus tells of the Ganges beyond twelve days of desert, and of Aggrammes with twenty thousand horse, two hundred thousand foot, two thousand chariots, and three thousand elephants; Porus confirms it, and calls him a barber's son. The army is spent; Alexander tells an assembly they stand at the world's edge and he will go on alone if they will not follow.

Biduum apud eum substitit rex. Tertio die amnem
for-two-days with him stayed the-king on-the-third day the-river
superare decreverat transitu difficilem non spatio solum
to-cross he-had-decided in-crossing difficult not by-extent only
aquarum, sed etiam saxis inpeditum: percontatus igitur
of-waters but also by-rocks obstructed having-asked therefore
Phegea, quae noscenda erant, XII dierum ultra flumen
Phegeus what to-be-learned was of-twelve days beyond the-river
per vastas solitudines iter esse cognoscit, excipere deinde
through vast solitudes the-route to-be he-learns to-receive then
Gangen, maximum totius Indiae fluminum, ulteriorem
the-Ganges greatest of-the-whole of-India rivers the-farther
ripam colere gentes Gangaridas et Prasios eorumque
bank to-inhabit the-nations Gangaridae and Prasii and-their
regem esse Aggrammen XX milibus equitum ducentisque
king to-be Aggrammes with-twenty thousand of-horsemen and-two-hundred
peditum obsidentem vias. Ad hoc quadrigarum II milia
of-infantry besetting the-roads to this of-four-horse-chariots two thousand
trahere et, praecipuum terrorem, elephantos, quos III
to-drag and the-chief terror elephants which of-three
milium numerum explere dicebat. Incredibilia regi omnia
thousand number to-fill he-said incredible to-the-king everything
videbantur: igitur Porum — nam cum eo erat — percontatur,
seemed therefore Porus for with him he-was he-asks
an vera essent, quae dicerentur. Ille vires quidem
whether true were what was-said he the-strength indeed
gentis et regni haud falso iactari adfirmat, ceterum,
of-the-nation and kingdom not falsely to-be-boasted affirms but
qui regnaret, non modo ignobilem esse, sed etiam ultimae
him-who reigned not only obscure to-be but also of-the-lowest
sortis: quippe patrem eius, tonsorem vix diurno quaestu
lot for the-father his a-barber scarcely with-daily gain

propulsantem famem, propter habitum haud indecorum cordi
warding-off hunger because-of his-looks not unseemly dear
fuisse reginae. Ab ea in propiorem eius, qui tum
to-have-been to-the-queen by her into a-nearer of-him who then
regnasset, amicitiae locum admotum interfecto eo per
had-reigned of-friendship place moved with-killed him through
insidias sub specie tutelae liberum eius invasisse
treachery under the-pretense of-guardianship of-the-children his to-have-seized
regnum necatisque pueris hunc, qui nunc regnat, generasse,
the-kingdom and-with-killed boys this-one who now reigns to-have-begotten
invisum vilemque popularibus, magis paternae fortunae quam
hated and-cheap to-the-countrymen more his-father's fortune than
suae memorem. Adfirmatio Pori multiplicem animo
of-his-own mindful the-affirmation of-Porus a-manifold on-the-mind
regis iniecerat curam. Hostem beluasque spernebat, situm
of-the-king had-thrown care the-enemy and-the-beasts he-scorned the-position
locorum et vim fluminum extimescebat: relegatos in
of-the-places and the-force of-the-rivers he-dreaded those-banished into
ultimum paene rerum humanarum persequi terminum et
the-last almost of-human affairs to-pursue boundary and
eruere arduum videbatur, rursus avaritia gloriae et insatiabilis
to-dig-out hard it-seemed again the-greed for-glory and insatiable
cupido famae nihil invium, nihil remotum videri sinebat.
desire for-fame nothing pathless nothing remote to-seem allowed
Et interdum dubitabat, an Macedones tot emensi
and sometimes he-was-doubting whether the-Macedonians so-many having-traversed
spatia terrarum, in acie et in castris senes facti per
stretches of-lands in battle and in camp old made through
obiecta flumina, per tot naturae obstantes difficultates
set-against rivers through so-many of-nature standing-in-the-way difficulties
secuturi essent: abundantes onustosque praeda magis
going-to-follow were abounding and-loaded with-plunder rather

parta frui velle quam adquirenda fatigari. Non
the-won-things to-enjoy to-wish than by-things-to-be-acquired to-be-wearied not
idem sibi et militibus animi: sese totius orbis
the-same to-himself and to-the-soldiers of-mind himself of-the-whole world
imperium mente conplexum adhuc in operum suorum
the-empire in-mind having-embraced still at of-works his-own
primordio stare, militem labore defetigatum proximum
the-beginning to-stand the-soldier by-toil exhausted the-nearest
quemque fructum finito tandem periculo expetere. Vicit
each fruit with-ended at-last danger to-seek prevailed
ergo cupido rationem, et ad contionem vocatis militibus
therefore desire over-reason and to the-assembly with-called soldiers
ad hunc maxime modum disseruit: 'Non ignoro, milites,
in this especially manner he-spoke not am-I-unaware soldiers
multa, quae terrere vos possent, ab incolis Indiae
many-things which to-terrify you could by the-inhabitants of-India
per hos dies de industria esse iactata: sed non est
during these days on purpose to-have-been bandied but not is
inprovisa vobis mentientium vanitas. Sic Ciliciae fauces,
unforeseen to-you of-liars the-emptiness thus of-Cilicia the-jaws
sic Mesopotamiae campos, Tigrim et Euphraten, quorum
thus of-Mesopotamia the-plains the-Tigris and the-Euphrates of-which
alterum vado transiimus, alterum ponte, terribiles fecerant
the-one by-ford we-crossed the-other by-bridge terrible had-made
Persae. Nil umquam ad liquidum fama perducitur: omnia
the-Persians nothing ever to clarity rumor is-brought all-things
illa tradente maiora sunt vero. Nostra quoque gloria,
with-it handing-down greater are than-the-truth our also glory
cum sit ex solido, plus tamen habet nominis quam
though it-be from solid more yet it-has of-name than
operis. Modo quis beluas offerentes moenium speciem,
of-deed recently who the-beasts presenting of-walls the-appearance

quis Hydaspem amnem, quis cetera auditu maiora
who the-Hydaspes river who the-other-things in-hearing greater
quam vero sustineri posse credebat? Olim, hercules,
than in-truth to-be-withstood to-be-able believed long-since by-Hercules
fugissemus ex Asia, si nos fabulae debellare potuissent.
we-would-have-fled from Asia if us tales to-defeat could-have
Creditisne elephantorum greges maiores esse, quam usquam
do-you-believe of-elephants the-herds greater to-be than anywhere
armentorum sunt, cum et rarum sit animal nec facile
of-cattle are since both rare is the-animal nor easily
capiatur multoque difficilius mitigetur? Atqui eadem vanitas
is-it-caught and-much more-difficultly is-tamed and-yet the-same emptiness
copias peditum equitumque numeravit. Nam flumen, quo
the-forces of-infantry and-of-cavalry counted for a-river the
latius fusum est, hoc placidius stagnat: quippe angustis
more-widely spread it-is the more-calmly it-stands for by-narrow
ripis coercita et in angustiorem alveum elisa torrentes
banks confined and into a-narrower channel squeezed torrent
aquas invehunt, contra spatio alvei segnior
waters they-bring-in on-the-other-hand by-the-breadth of-the-channel more-sluggish
cursus est. Praeterea in ripa omne periculum est, ubi
the-course is besides on the-bank all the-danger is where
adplicantes navigia hostis expectat. Ita, quantumcumque
landing the-ships the-enemy awaits so however-great
flumen intervenit, idem futurum discrimen est evadentium
a-river intervenes the-same going-to-be the-crisis is of-men-getting-out
in terram. Sed omnia ista vera esse fingamus: utrumne
onto land but all those-things true to-be let-us-suppose whether
nos magnitudo beluarum an multitudo hostium terret?
us the-size of-the-beasts or the-multitude of-the-enemy frightens
Quod pertinet ad elephantos, praesens habemus exemplum:
as-for-what pertains to the-elephants a-present we-have example

in suos vehementius quam in nos incucurrerunt: tam
against their-own more-violently than against us they-ran so
vasta corpora securibus falcibusque mutilata sunt. Quid autem
vast bodies with-axes and-sickles mutilated were what moreover
interest, totidem sint, quot Porus habuit, an III milia,
does-it-matter as-many they-be as Porus had or three thousand
cum uno aut altero vulnerato videritis ceteros in fugam
when with-one or a-second wounded you-have-seen the-rest into flight
declinari? Dein paucos aegre et incommode regunt:
to-be-turned then a-few with-difficulty and awkwardly they-guide
congregata vero tot milia ipsa se elidunt, ubi
gathered however so-many thousands they-themselves themselves crush where
nec stare nec fugere potuerint inhabiles vastorum corporum
neither to-stand nor to-flee they-can unwieldy of-vast bodies
moles. Equidem sic animalia ista contempsi, ut, cum haberem
masses I-indeed so animals those have-despised that when I-had-them
ipse, non opposuerim, satis gnarus, plus suis quam
myself not I-set-them-against well knowing more to-their-own than
hostibus periculi inferre. At enim equitum peditumque
to-the-enemy of-danger to-bring but indeed of-cavalry and-infantry
multitudo vos commovet! Cum paucis enim pugnare soliti
the-multitude you moves with few for to-fight accustomed
estis et nunc primum inconditam sustinebitis turbam.
you-are and now for-the-first-time a-disorderly you-will-withstand crowd
Testis adversus multitudinem invicti Macedonum
a-witness against a-multitude of-the-unconquered of-the-Macedonians
roboris Granicus amnis et Cilicia inundata cruore Persarum
strength the-Granicus river and Cilicia flooded with-the-gore of-the-Persians
et Arbela, cuius campi devictorum a nobis ossibus
and Arbela whose plains with-the-conquered's by us bones
strati sunt. Sero hostium legiones numerare coepistis,
strewn are late of-the-enemy the-legions to-count you-have-begun

postquam solitudinem in Asia vincendo fecistis. Cum per
after solitude in Asia by-conquering you-have-made when over
Hellespontum navigaremus, de paucitate nostra cogitandum
the-Hellespont we-were-sailing about the-fewness our to-be-thought
fuit: nunc nos Scythae sequuntur, Bactriana auxilia praesto
it-was now us the-Scythians follow the-Bactrian auxiliaries at-hand
sunt, Dahae Sogdianique inter nos militant. Nec tamen
are the-Dahae and-Sogdians among us serve nor yet
illi turbae confido: vestras manus intueor, vestram virtutem
in-that crowd do-I-trust your hands I-look-at your valor
rerum, quas gesturus sum, vadem praedemque habeo.
of-the-deeds which going-to-do I-am as-guarantor and-surety I-hold
Quamdiu vobiscum in acie stabo, nec mei nec hostium
as-long-as with-you in the-line I-shall-stand neither my nor of-the-enemy
exercitus numero: vos modo animos mihi plenos alacritatis
the-armies I-count you only spirits to-me full of-eagerness
ac fiduciae adhibete. Non in limine operum laborumque
and of-confidence apply not on the-threshold of-works and-toils
nostrorum, sed in exitu stamus: pervenimus ad solis
our but at the-end we-stand we-have-arrived at of-the-sun
ortum et Oceanum. Nisi obstat ignavia, inde victores
the-rising and the-Ocean unless stands-in-the-way cowardice from-there as-victors
perdomito fine terrarum revertemur in patriam. Nolite,
with-subdued the-end of-lands we-shall-return into the-homeland do-not
quod pigri agricolae faciunt, maturos fructus per inertiam
what lazy farmers do the-ripe fruits through idleness
amittere e manibus. Maiora sunt periculis praemia: dives
to-lose from your-hands greater are than-the-dangers the-rewards rich
eadem et inbellis est regio. Itaque non tam ad gloriam
the-same and unwarlike is the-region and-so not so-much to glory
vos duco quam ad praedam. Digni estis, qui opes, quas illud
you I-lead as to plunder worthy you-are to the-riches which that

mare litoribus invehit, referatis in patriam, digni,
sea onto-the-shores brings-in you-should-carry-back into the-homeland worthy
qui nihil inexpertum, nihil metu omissum relinquatis. Per
to nothing untried nothing by-fear omitted you-should-leave by
vos gloriamque vestram, qua humanum fastigium exceditis,
you and-glory your by-which the-human summit you-exceed
perque et mea in vos et in me vestra merita, quibus
and-by both my toward you and toward me your services by-which
invicem contendimus, oro quaesoque, ne humanarum
in-turn we-vie I-pray and-beseech that-not of-human
rerum terminos adeuntem alumnum commilitonemque vestrum,
affairs the-bounds approaching the-nursling and-fellow-soldier your
ne dicam regem, deseratis. Cetera vobis imperavi: hoc
not to-say the-king you-desert the-rest to-you I-have-commanded this
unum debiturus sum. Et is vos rogo, qui nihil umquam
one-thing going-to-owe I-am and he you I-ask who nothing ever
vobis praecepi, quin primus me periculis obtulerim, qui
to-you have-instructed that first myself to-dangers I-have-offered who
saepe aciem clipeo meo texi. Ne infregeritis in manibus
often the-line with-shield my have-covered not break in hands
meis palmam, qua Herculem Liberumque Patrem, si
my the-palm by-which Hercules and-Liber Father if
invidia afuerit, aequabo. Date hoc precibus meis et tandem
envy be-absent I-shall-equal give this to-prayers my and at-last
obstinatum silentium rumpite. Ubi est ille clamor, alacritatis
the-obstinate silence break where is that shout of-eagerness
vestrae index? ubi ille meorum Macedonum vultus? Non
your the-sign where that of-my Macedonians the-face not
agnosco vos, milites, nec agnosci videor a vobis. Surdas
I-recognize you soldiers nor to-be-recognized do-I-seem by you deaf
iamdudum aures pulso, aversos animos et infractos excitare
long-since ears I-strike turned-away minds and broken to-rouse

conor.' Cumque illi in terram demissis capitibus tacere
I-try and-when they onto the-ground with-lowered heads to-be-silent
perseverarent: 'Nescio quid,' inquit, 'in vos inprudens
persisted I-do-not-know what he-says against you unwittingly
deliqui, quod me ne intueri quidem vultis. In solitudine
I-have-offended that me not to-look-at even you-wish in solitude
mihi videor esse. Nemo respondet, nemo saltem negat.
to-myself I-seem to-be no-one answers no-one at-least refuses
Quos adloquor? quid autem postulo? Vestram gloriam et
whom do-I-address what moreover do-I-demand your glory and
magnitudinem vindicamus. Ubi sunt illi, quorum certamen
greatness we-are-vindicating where are those whose contest
paulo ante vidi contendentium, qui potissimum vulnerati regis
a-little before I-saw contending who especially the-wounded king's
corpus exciperent? Desertus, destitutus sum, hostibus deditus.
body should-receive deserted abandoned I-am to-the-enemy surrendered
Sed solus quoque ire perseverabo. Obicite me fluminibus et
but alone even to-go I-shall-persist throw me to-rivers and
beluis et illis gentibus, quarum nomina horretis: inveniam,
beasts and to-those nations whose names you-dread I-shall-find
qui desertum a vobis sequantur. Scythae Bactrianique
men-who deserted by you will-follow the-Scythians and-Bactrians
erunt mecum, hostes paulo ante, nunc milites nostri. Mori
will-be with-me enemies a-little before now soldiers our to-die
praestat quam precario imperatorem esse. Ite reduces domos!
it-is-better than on-sufferance commander to-be go returning home
ite deserto rege ovantes! Ego hic aut vobis desperatae
go with-deserted king exulting I here either by-you for-despaired-of
victoriae aut honestae morti locum inveniam.'
victory or for-an-honorable death a-place shall-find

The soldiers weep in silence until Coenus speaks for them: they have done all mortals can, they are worn out and in rags, and if Alexander must go on, the land to the south leads more easily to the Ocean. Alexander withdraws in anger for two days, then sets up twelve altars and enlarges the camp to deceive posterity. Coenus dies soon after. Reinforcements arrive; Alexander reconciles Porus and Taxiles, founds Nicaea and Bucephala, and sails down the river.

Ne sic quidem ulli militum vox exprimi potuit.
not thus even from-any of-the-soldiers a-word to-be-squeezed-out could
Expectabant, ut duces principesque ad regem perferrent
they-were-waiting that the-generals and-chief-men to the-king should-report
vulneribus et continuo labore militiae fatigatos non detrectare
by-wounds and by-continuous toil of-soldiering exhausted not to-decline
munia, sed sustinere non posse. Ceterum illi metu attoniti
the-duties but to-sustain-them not to-be-able but they by-fear stunned
in terram ora defixerant. Igitur primo fremitus sua
on the-ground their-faces had-fixed therefore first a-murmur of-its-own
sponte, deinde gemitus quoque oritur, paulatimque liberius
accord then groaning also arises and-gradually more-freely
dolor egeri coepit manantibus lacrimis, adeo ut rex
the-grief to-be-poured-out began with-flowing tears so-much that the-king
ira in misericordiam versa ne ipse quidem, quamquam
with-his-anger into pity turned not himself even although
cupiebat, temperare oculis potuerit. Tandem universa contione
he-wished to-restrain his-eyes could at-last with-the-whole assembly
effusius flente Coenus ausus est cunctantibus ceteris propius
more-freely weeping Coenus dared has with-besitating the-others nearer
tribunal accedere significans se loqui velle. Quem ut
the-tribunal to-approach signifying himself to-speak to-wish whom when
videre milites detrahentem galeam capiti — ita enim regem
saw the-soldiers taking-off his-helmet from-his-head so for the-king

adloqui mos est—, hortari coeperunt, ut causam exercitus
to-address the-custom is to-urge they-began that the-case of-the-army
ageret. Tum Coenus: 'Dii prohibeant,' inquit, 'a nobis
he-should-plead then Coenus may-the-gods keep-away he-says from us
inpias mentes! Et profecto prohibent: idem animus est
impious minds and surely they-keep-them-away the-same spirit is
tuis, qui fuit semper, ire, quo iusseris, pugnare, periclitari,
in-your-men which was always to-go where you-order to-fight to-run-risks
sanguine nostro commendare posteritati tuum nomen. Proinde,
with-blood our to-commend to-posterity your name therefore
si perseveras, inermes quoque et nudi et exangues, utcumque
if you-persist unarmed also and naked and bloodless however
tibi cordi est, sequimur vel antecedimus. Sed si audire vis
to-you dear it-is we-follow or go-before but if to-hear you-wish
non fictas tuorum militum voces, verum necessitate ultima
not feigned of-your soldiers voices but by-necessity ultimate
expressas, praebe, quaeso, propitias aures imperium atque
wrung-out offer I-beg favorable ears the-command and
auspicium tuum constantissime secutis et, quocumque
auspices your most-steadfastly to-men-having-followed and wherever
pergis, secuturis. Vicisti, rex, magnitudine rerum
you-go to-men-going-to-follow you-have-conquered king by-the-greatness of-deeds
non hostes modo, sed etiam milites. Quidquid mortalitas
not the-enemy only but also the-soldiers whatever mortality
capere poterat, inplevimus. Emensis maria terrasque
to-contain could we-have-filled to-men-having-traversed seas and-lands
melius nobis quam incolis omnia nota sunt. Paene in
better to-us than to-the-inhabitants all-things known are almost at
ultimo mundi fine consistimus. In alium orbem paras ire
the-last of-the-world end we-stand into another world you-prepare to-go
et Indiam quaeris Indis quoque ignotam. Inter feras
and India you-seek to-the-Indians too unknown among wild-beasts

serpentesque degentes eruere ex latebris et cubilibus suis
and-serpents those-living to-dig-out from hiding-places and lairs their-own
expetis, ut plura, quam sol videt, victoria lustres.
you-seek that more-things than the-sun sees by-victory you-may-traverse
Digna prorsus cogitatio animo tuo, sed altior nostro. Virtus
worthy altogether the-thought of-mind your but higher than-ours valor
enim tua semper in incremento erit, nostra vis iam
for your always in increase will-be our strength now
in fine est. Intuere corpora exanguia, tot perfossa
at the-end is look-at the-bodies bloodless by-so-many pierced
vulneribus, tot cicatricibus putria. Iam tela hebetia
wounds by-so-many scars rotting now the-weapons blunt
sunt, iam arma deficiunt. Vestem Persicam induti, quia
are now the-arms fail with-clothing Persian clad because
domestica subvehi non potest, in externum degeneravimus
the-native to-be-brought-up not can into foreign we-have-degenerated
cultum. Quoto cuique lorica est? quis equum habet? Iube
apparel how-few to-each a-breastplate is who a-horse has order
quaeri, quam multos servi ipsorum persecuti sint, quid
to-be-asked how many slaves of-their-own followed have what
cuique supersit ex praeda. Omnium victores omnium inopes
to-each remains from the-plunder of-all victors of-all destitute
sumus. Nec luxuria laboramus, sed bello instrumenta belli
we-are nor from-luxury do-we-suffer but in-war the-instruments of-war
consumpsimus. Hunc tu pulcherrimum exercitum nudum
we-have-used-up this you most-splendid army naked
obicies beluis? Quarum ut multitudinem augeant de
will-throw-before the-beasts of-which though the-multitude they-may-increase on
industria barbari, magnum tamen esse numerum etiam ex
purpose the-barbarians great yet to-be the-number even from
mendacio intellego. Quodsi adhuc penetrare in Indiam certum
the-lie I-understand but-if still to-penetrate into India resolved

est, regio a meridie minus vasta est: qua subacta
it-is the-region from the-south less vast is with-which subdued
licebit decurrere in illud mare, quod rebus humanis
it-will-be-allowed to-run-down into that sea which for-human affairs
terminum voluit esse natura. Cur circuitu petis gloriam,
a-boundary wished to-be nature why by-a-circuit do-you-seek glory
quae ad manum posita est? Hic quoque occurrit Oceanus.
which at hand placed is here too meets-us the-Ocean
Nisi mavis errare, pervenimus, quo tua fortuna ducit.
unless you-prefer to-wander we-have-arrived where your fortune leads
Haec tecum quam sine te cum his loqui malui, non
these-things with-you than without you with these to-speak I-preferred not
uti inirem circumstantis exercitus gratiam, sed ut vocem
that I-might-gain of-the-surrounding army the-favor but that the-voice
loquentium potius quam gemitum murmurantium audires.'
of-men-speaking rather than the-groaning of-men-murmuring you-might-hear
Ut finem orationi Coenus inposuit, clamor undique cum
when an-end to-the-speech Coenus put a-shout on-all-sides with
ploratu oritur regem, patrem, dominum confusis appellantium
wailing arises the-king father master with-confused of-men-calling
vocibus. Iamque et alii duces praecipueque seniores, quis
voices and-now both other generals and-especially the-elders for-whom
ob aetatem et excusatio honestior erat et auctoritas
on-account-of age both the-excuse more-honorable was and the-authority
maior, eadem precabantur. Ille nec castigare obstinatos
greater the-same-things were-begging he neither to-rebuke the-obstinate
nec mitigari poterat iratus: itaque inops consilii desiluit
nor to-be-softened could angry and-so at-a-loss for-a-plan he-leapt-down
ex tribunali claudique regiam iussit omnibus praeter
from the-tribunal and-to-be-shut the-palace ordered with-all except
adsuetos adire prohibitis. Biduum irae datum est:
the-accustomed to-approach forbidden two-days to-anger given was

tertio die processit erigique duodecim aras ex quadrato
on-the-third day he-came-forth and-to-be-raised twelve altars of squared
saxo, monumentum expeditionis suae, munimenta quoque
stone a-monument of-expedition his-own the-fortifications also
castrorum iussit extendi cubiliaque amplioris formae
of-the-camp he-ordered to-be-extended and-couches of-ampler shape
quam pro corporum habitu relinqui, ut speciem
than in-proportion-to the-bodies' build to-be-left that the-appearance
omnium augeret, posteritati fallax miraculum praeparans.
of-all he-might-enlarge for-posterity a-deceptive marvel preparing
Hinc repetens, quae emensus erat, ad flumen Acesinen
from-here retracing what traversed he-had at the-river Acesines
locat castra. Ibi forte Coenus morbo extinctus est:
he-pitches the-camp there by-chance Coenus by-disease killed was
cuius morte ingemuit quidem rex, adiecit tamen propter
at-whose death groaned indeed the-king he-added yet because-of
paucos dies longam orationem eum exorsum, tamquam solus
a-few days a-long speech him to-have-begun as-though alone
Macedoniam visurus esset. Iam in aqua classis, quam
Macedonia going-to-see he-were now on the-water the-fleet which
aedificari iusserat, stabat. Inter haec Memnon ex Thracia
to-be-built he-had-ordered stood among these-things Memnon from Thrace
in supplementum equitum V milia, praeter eos ab Harpalo
as reinforcement of-horsemen five thousand besides them from Harpalus
peditum VII milia adduxerat armaque XXV milibus
of-infantry seven thousand had-brought and-arms for-twenty-five thousand
auro et argento caelata pertulerat. Quis distributis vetera
with-gold and silver chased had-delivered with-which distributed the-old
cremari iussit. Mille navigiis aditurus Oceanum
to-be-burned he-ordered with-a-thousand ships going-to-approach the-Ocean
discordesque et vetera odia retractantes Porum et Taxilen,
and-the-quarreling and old hatreds reviving Porus and Taxiles

Indiae reges, firmatae per adfinitatem gratiae reliquit
of-India kings confirmed through marriage-alliance to-friendship left
in suis regnis summo in aedificanda classe amborum
in their-own kingdoms with-the-highest in building the-fleet of-both
studio usus. Oppida quoque duo condidit: quorum
zeal having-used towns also two he-founded of-which
alterum Nicaeam appellavit, alterum Bucephala, equi, quem
the-one Nicaea he-called the-other Bucephala of-the-horse which
amiserat, memoriae ac nomini dedicans urbem. Elephantis
he-had-lost to-the-memory and name dedicating the-city with-the-elephants
deinde et inpedimentis terra sequi iussis secundo amne
then and baggage by-land to-follow ordered down-the-current river
defluxit quadraginta ferme stadia singulis diebus procedens,
he-floated forty about stades on-each days advancing
ut opportunis locis exponi subinde copiae possent.
that at-suitable places to-be-landed repeatedly the-forces could

IV · THE SUDRACAN TOWN

Alexander subdues the Sibi, who claim descent from Hercules' army, and storms a town whose people burn themselves with it. In the rapids where the rivers meet he nearly drowns. The army, told of new and fiercer peoples, mutinies again, and he rallies it with a speech on the Ocean ahead. The Indian army flees to the mountains. At a town of the Sudracae he scorns a seer's warning, climbs the wall alone, and the ladders behind him break under his men.

Perventum erat in regionem, in qua Hydaspes amnis
come it-had-been into the-region in which the-Hydaspes river
Acesini committitur: hinc decurrit in fines
with-the-Acesines is-joined from-here he-runs-down into the-territory
Siborum. Hi de exercitu Herculis maiores suos esse
of-the-Sibi these from the-army of-Hercules ancestors their-own to-be

memorant: aegros relictos cepisse sedem, quam ipsi
relate sick left-behind to-have-taken the-seat which themselves
obtinebant. Pelles ferarum pro veste, clavae tela erant,
they-were-holding skins of-wild-beasts for clothing clubs weapons were
multaque etiam, cum Graeci mores exolevissent, stirpis
and-many-things even when Greek customs had-faded-away of-stock
ostendebant vestigia. Hinc escensione facta CC et L
they-showed traces from-here with-a-landing made two-hundred and fifty
stadia excessit depopulatusque regionem oppidum, caput
stades he-went-inland and-having-laid-waste the-region the-town capital
eius, corona cepit. XL milia peditum alia gens in ripa
of-it by-a-ring he-took forty thousand of-infantry another nation on the-bank
fluminum opposuerat: quae amne superato in fugam
of-the-rivers had-set-against-him which with-the-river crossed into flight
conpulit inclusosque moenibus expugnat. Puberes interfecti
he-drove and-shut-in by-walls he-storms the-grown killed
sunt, ceteri venierunt. Alteram deinde urbem expugnare
were the-rest were-sold another then city to-storm
adortus magnaque vi defendentium pulsus multos
having-attempted and-by-great force of-the-defenders repulsed many
Macedonum amisit. Sed cum in obsidione perseverasset,
of-the-Macedonians he-lost but when in the-siege he-had-persisted
oppidani desperata salute ignem subiecere tectis seque
the-townsfolk with-despaired-of safety fire put-under to-the-roofs and-themselves
ac liberos coniugesque incendio cremant. Quod cum ipsi
and children and-wives by-fire they-burn which while themselves
augerent, hostes extinguerent, nova forma pugnae erat:
they-increased the-enemy were-putting-out new form of-battle was
delebant incolae urbem, hostes defendebant. Adeo
were-destroying the-inhabitants the-city the-enemy were-defending so
etiam naturae iura bellum in contrarium mutat. Arx
even of-nature the-laws war into the-contrary changes the-citadel

erat oppidi intacta, in qua praesidium dereliquit. Ipse
was of-the-town untouched in which a-garrison he-left himself
est navigiis circumvectus arcem. Quippe III flumina tota
was by-ships carried-around the-citadel for three rivers in-all
India praeter Gangen maxima munimento arcis adplicant
India except the-Ganges greatest as-a-bulwark of-the-citadel apply
undas: a septentrione Indus adluit, a meridie Acesines
their-waves from the-north the-Indus washes from the-south the-Acesines
Hydaspi confunditur. Ceterum amnium coetus maritimis
with-the-Hydaspes is-mingled but of-the-rivers the-meeting to-sea-ones
similes fluctus movet, multoque ac turbido limo, quod
similar waves moves and-by-much and turbid silt which
aquarum concursu subinde turbatur, iter, qua meatur
of-the-waters by-the-clash repeatedly is-stirred the-course by-which it-is-traveled
navigiis, in tenuem alveum cogitur. Itaque cum crebri fluctus
by-ships into a-narrow channel is-forced therefore when frequent waves
se inveherent et navium hinc proras, hinc latera
themselves were-rushing-in and of-the-ships on-this-side the-prows on-that-side the-sides
pulsarent, subducere nautae vela coeperunt. Sed ministeria
were-beating to-take-in the-sailors the-sails began but the-services
eorum hinc aestu, hinc praerapida celeritate fluminum
of-them on-this-side by-the-surge on-that-side by-the-headlong speed of-the-rivers
occupantur. In oculis omnium duo maiora navigia submersa
are-overwhelmed in the-eyes of-all two larger vessels sunk
sunt: leviora, cum et ipsa nequirent regi, in ripam
were the-lighter when also themselves they-could-not to-be-steered onto the-bank
tamen innoxia expulsa sunt. Ipse rex in rapidissimos
yet unharmed driven were himself the-king into the-most-rapid
vertices incidit, quibus intorta navis obliqua et gubernaculi
whirlpools fell by-which twisted the-ship sideways and of-the-rudder
inpatiens agebatur. Iam vestem detraxerat corpori
not-bearing was-driven now his-clothing he-had-pulled-off from-his-body

proiecturus semet in flumen, amicique, ut exciperent eum,
going-to-throw himself into the-river and-friends that they-might-catch him
haud procul nabant, adparebatque anceps periculum tam
not far were-swimming and-it-was-clear double the-danger as-much
nataturi quam navigare perseverantis: ergo ingenti
of-one-going-to-swim as to-sail of-one-persisting therefore with-huge
certamine concitant remos, quantaque vis humana esse poterat,
struggle they-ply the-oars and-as-much force human to-be could
admota est, ut fluctus, qui se invehebant, everberarentur.
applied was that the-waves which themselves were-rushing-in might-be-beaten-back
Findi crederes undas et retro gurgites cedere. Quibus
to-be-split you-would-think the-waves and back the-eddies to-give-way from-which
tandem navis erepta non tamen ripae adplicatur, sed
at-last the-ship snatched not yet to-the-bank is-brought but
in proximum vadum inliditur. Cum amne bellum fuisse
onto the-nearest shoal is-dashed with the-river a-war to-have-been
crederes. Ergo aris pro numero fluminum positis
you-would-think therefore with-altars for the-number of-the-rivers set-up
sacrificioque facto XXX stadia processit. Inde ventum
and-with-sacrifice made thirty stades he-advanced from-there come
est in regionem Sudracarum Mallorumque, quos alias
it-was into the-region of-the-Sudracae and-of-the-Malli whom at-other-times
bellare inter se solitos tunc periculi societas iunxerat.
to-war among themselves accustomed then of-danger the-partnership had-joined
Nonaginta milia iuniorum peditum in armis erant, praeter
ninety thousand of-young-men of-infantry in arms were besides
hos equitum X milia nongentaeque quadrigae. At Macedones,
these of-horsemen ten thousand and-nine-hundred chariots but the-Macedonians
qui omni discrimine iam defunctos se esse crediderant,
who from-every hazard already discharged themselves to-be had-believed
postquam integrum bellum cum ferocissimis Indiae gentibus
after-that a-fresh war with the-fiercest of-India nations

superesse cognoverunt, inproviso metu territi rursus seditiosis
to-remain they-learned by-unforeseen fear terrified again with-mutinous
vocibus regem increpare coeperunt: Gangen amnem et, quae
voices the-king to-reproach began the-Ganges river and what
ultra essent, coactum transmittere non tamen finisse,
beyond were him-forced to-give-up not yet to-have-ended
sed mutasse bellum. Indomitis gentibus se obiectos,
but to-have-changed the-war to-unconquered nations themselves exposed
ut sanguine suo aperirent ei Oceanum. Trahi
that with-blood their-own they-might-open for-him the-Ocean to-be-dragged
extra sidera et solem cogique adire, quae mortalium
outside the-stars and the-sun and-to-be-forced to-approach what of-mortals
oculis natura subduxerit. Novis identidem armis novos
from-the-eyes nature has-withdrawn with-new again-and-again arms new
hostes existere. Quos ut omnes fundant fugentque,
enemies to-arise whom though all they-rout and-put-to-flight
quod praemium ipsos manere? caliginem ac tenebras et
what reward themselves to-await mist and darkness and
perpetuam noctem profundo incubantem mari, repletum
perpetual night on-the-deep brooding sea filled
inmanium beluarum gregibus fretum, inmobiles undas, in
of-monstrous beasts with-herds a-strait motionless waters in
quibus emoriens natura defecerit. Rex non sua, sed
which dying nature has-failed the-king not by-his-own but
militum sollicitudine anxius contione advocata docet
of-the-soldiers by-anxiety troubled with-an-assembly summoned shows
inbelles esse, quos metuant. Nihil deinde praeter has
unwarlike to-be those-whom they-fear nothing then besides these
gentes obstare, quominus terrarum spatia emensi
nations to-stand-in-the-way so-that-not of-the-lands the-spaces having-traversed
ad finem simul mundi laborumque perveniant. Concessisse
to the-end at-once of-the-world and-of-labors they-may-arrive to-have-yielded

illis metuentibus Gangen et multitudinem nationum, quae
to-them fearing the-Ganges and the-multitude of-nations which
ultra amnem essent: declinasse iter eo, ubi par
beyond the-river were to-have-turned-aside the-route there where equal
gloria, minus periculum esset. Iam prospicere se Oceanum,
glory less danger was now to-see himself the-Ocean
iam perflare ad ipsos auram maris: ne inviderent
now to-blow to themselves the-breeze of-the-sea not they-should-begrudge
sibi laudem, quam peteret. Herculis et Liberi Patris
to-him the-praise which he-was-seeking of-Hercules and of-Liber Father
terminos transituros illos, regi suo parvo inpendio
the-bounds going-to-cross them to-the-king their-own at-small cost
inmortalitatem famae daturos. Paterentur se ex India redire,
immortality of-fame going-to-give let-them-allow him from India to-return
non fugere. Omnis multitudo et maxime militaris mobilis
not to-flee every multitude and most-of-all a-military changeable
impetu effertur: ita seditionis non remedia quam principia
by-impulse is-carried-away so of-mutiny not the-remedies than the-beginnings
maiora sunt. Non alias tam alacer clamor ab exercitu
greater are not at-other-times so eager a-shout from the-army
est redditus: iubent eum ducere dis secundis aequareque
was returned they-bid him to-lead with-the-gods favorable and-to-equal
gloria, quos aemularetur. Laetus his adclamationibus
in-glory those-whom he-was-emulating glad at-these acclamations
ad hostes protinus castra movit. Validissimae Indorum
against the-enemy at-once camp he-moved most-powerful of-the-Indians
gentes erant et bellum inpigre parabant ducemque ex
nations they-were and war vigorously were-preparing and-a-leader from
natione Sudracarum spectatae virtutis elegerant: qui sub
the-nation of-the-Sudracae of-proven valor had-chosen who under
radicibus montis castra posuit lateque ignes, ut speciem
the-roots of-a-mountain camp pitched and-widely fires that the-appearance

multitudinis augeret, ostendit, clamore quoque ac
of-the-multitude he-might-enlarge showed with-shouting also and
sui moris ululatu identidem adquiescentes Macedonas
of-their-own custom with-howling repeatedly the-resting Macedonians
frustra terrere conatus. Iam lux adpetebat, cum rex
in-vain to-terrify having-tried now the-light was-approaching when the-king
fiduciae ac spei plenus alacres milites arma capere et
of-confidence and of-hope full the-eager soldiers arms to-take and
exire in aciem iubet. Sed — haud traditur, metune
to-go-out into battle-line bids but not is-it-recorded whether-from-fear
an oborta seditione inter ipsos — subito profugerunt
or from-having-arisen a-mutiny among themselves suddenly fled
barbari certe et avios montes et inpeditos occupaverunt.
the-barbarians certainly both pathless mountains and impassable they-occupied
Quorum agmen rex frustra persecutus inpedimenta cepit.
whose column the-king in-vain having-pursued the-baggage took
Perventum deinde est ad oppidum Sudracarum, in quod
come then it-was to a-town of-the-Sudracae into which
plerique confugerant, haud maiore fiducia moenium quam
most had-fled not with-greater confidence in-the-walls than
armorum. Iam admovebat rex, cum vates monere eum
in-arms now was-moving-up the-king when a-seer to-warn him
coepit, ne committeret aut certe differret obsidionem: vitae
began not he-should-undertake or at-least should-postpone the-siege of-life
eius periculum ostendi. Rex Demophontem — is namque
his danger to-be-shown the-king Demophon he for
vates erat — intuens: ‘Si quis,’ inquit, ‘te arti tuae intentum
a-seer was looking-at if anyone he-says you on-art your intent
et exta spectantem sic interpellet, non dubitem, quin
and the-entrails watching thus should-interrupt not I-would-doubt that
incommodus ac molestus videri tibi possit.’ Et cum ille
troublesome and annoying to-seem to-you he-could and when he

ita prorsus futurum respondisset: 'Censesne,' inquit, 'tantas
so certainly going-to-be had-answered do-you-think he-says such
res, non pecudum fibras ante oculos habenti ullum esse
affairs not of-cattle the-fibers before his-eyes to-one-having any to-be
maius inpedimentum quam vatem superstitione captum?'
greater hindrance than a-seer by-superstition captured
Nec diutius, quam respondit, moratus admoveri iubet
nor longer than he-answered having-delayed to-be-moved-up he-orders
scalas cunctantibusque ceteris evadit in murum. Angusta
the-ladders and-with-hesitating the-others climbs onto the-wall narrow
muri corona erat: non pinnae sicut alibi fastigium
of-the-wall the-crown was not battlements as elsewhere the-top
eius distinxerant, sed perpetua lorica obducta transitum
of-it had-divided but a-continuous parapet drawn-over the-passage
saepserat. Itaque rex haerebat magis quam stabat in
had-blocked therefore the-king clung more than stood on
margine clipeo undique incidentia tela propulsans: nam
the-edge with-his-shield on-all-sides falling weapons warding-off for
ipse eminus ex turribus petebatur, nec subire milites
himself from-afar from the-towers was-being-attacked nor to-come-up the-soldiers
poterant, quia superne vi telorum obruebantur.
could because from-above by-the-force of-weapons they-were-overwhelmed
Tandem magnitudinem periculi pudor vicit: quippe
at-last the-greatness of-the-danger shame conquered for
cernebant cunctatione sua dedi hostibus regem. Sed
they-saw by-hesitation their-own to-be-given-up to-the-enemy the-king but
festinando morabantur auxilia. Nam dum pro se quisque
by-hurrying they-were-delaying the-help for while for himself each
certat evadere, oneravere scalas: quis non sufficientibus
strives to-climb-out they-overloaded the-ladders with-which not sufficing

devoluti unicam spem regis fefellerunt. Stabat enim
rolled-down the-only hope of-the-king they-disappointed he-was-standing for
in conspectu tanti exercitus velut in solitudine destitutus.
in sight of-so-great an-army as-if in solitude abandoned

V · THE WOUND

Alexander leaps down into the town and fights with his back to a tree, alone, until an arrow pierces his breastplate. Peucestes, Timaeus, Leonnatus, and Aristonus reach him; Timaeus falls, and the Macedonians break in and kill everyone. Curtius notes that Ptolemy, said by some to have been present, says he was absent. Critobulus draws out the arrow; the king faints from loss of blood but revives, while the army keeps armed watch around his quarters all that day and night.

Iamque laevam, qua clipeum ad ictus circumferebat,
and-now his-left by-which the-shield against the-blows he-was-carrying-around
lassaverat clamantibus amicis, ut ad ipsos desiliret,
he-had-tired with-shouting friends that to themselves he-should-leap-down
stabantque excepturi: cum ille rem ausus est
and-they-were-standing going-to-catch-him when he a-deed dared has
incredibilem atque inauditam multoque magis ad famam
incredible and unheard-of and-by-much more for fame
temeritatis quam gloriae insignem. Namque in urbem
of-rashness than of-glory notable for into a-city
hostium plenam praecipiti saltu semet ipse inmisit, cum
of-enemies full with-a-headlong leap himself himself he-sent-in when
vix sperare posset dimicantem certe et non inultum
scarcely to-hope he-could fighting at-least and not unavenged
esse moriturum: quippe, antequam adsurgeret, opprimi
to-be going-to-die for before he-could-rise to-be-overwhelmed
poterat et capi vivus. Sed forte ita libraverat corpus,
he-could and to-be-taken alive but by-chance so he-had-balanced his-body

ut se pedibus exciperet: itaque stans init pugnam.
that himself on-his-feet he-caught and-so standing he-begins the-fight
Et, ne circumiri posset, fortuna providerat. Vetusta arbor
and not to-be-surrounded he-could fortune had-provided an-old tree
haud procul muro ramos multa fronde vestitos, velut
not far from-the-wall its-branches with-much foliage clothed as-if
de industria regem protegentes, obiecerat: huius spatioso
on purpose the-king protecting had-thrown-before of-this to-the-broad
stipiti corpus, ne circumiri posset, adplicuit clipeo
trunk his-body not to-be-surrounded he-could he-set with-his-shield
tela, quae ex adverso ingerebantur, excipiens. Nam cum
the-weapons which from the-front were-being-heaped catching for when
unum procul tot manus peterent, nemo tamen auderet
one from-afar so-many hands were-seeking no-one yet dared
propius accedere, missilia ramis plura quam clipeo
nearer to-approach the-missiles on-the-branches more than on-the-shield
incidebant. Pugnabat pro rege primum celebrati nominis
fell there-fought for the-king first of-celebrated name
fama, deinde desperatio, magnum ad honeste moriendum
the-fame then despair great to honorably dying
incitamentum. Sed cum subinde hostis adflueret, iam
an-incitement but when repeatedly the-enemy flowed-up already
ingentem vim telorum exceperat clipeo, iam galeam
a-huge mass of-weapons he-had-caught on-his-shield already the-helmet
saxa perfregerant, iam continuo labore gravata genua
stones had-broken already by-continuous toil weighed-down his-knees
succiderant. Itaque contemptim et incaute, qui proximi
had-given-way therefore contemptuously and carelessly those-who nearest
steterant, incurrerunt: e quibus duos gladio ita excepit,
had-stood rushed-in from whom two with-the-sword so he-received
ut ante ipsum exanimes procumberent. Nec cuiquam deinde
that before himself lifeless they-fell-forward nor to-anyone then

propius incessendi eum animus fuit: procul iacula sagittasque
nearer of-assailing him the-spirit was from-afar javelins and-arrows
mittebant. Ille ad omnes ictus expositus non aegre
they-were-sending he to all blows exposed not with-difficulty
tamen exceptum poplitibus corpus tuebatur, donec Indus
yet caught-up on-his-knees his-body he-was-guarding until an-Indian
duorum cubitorum sagittam — namque Indis, ut antea
of-two cubits an-arrow for to-the-Indians as before
diximus, huius magnitudinis sagittae erant — ita excussit, ut
we-said of-this size arrows were so shot that
per thoracem paulum super latus dextrum infigeret. Quo
through the-breastplate a-little above the-side right he-fixed-it by-which
vulnere adflictus magna vi sanguinis emicante remisit arma
wound stricken with-great force of-blood spurting-out he-let-go his-arms
moribundo similis adeoque resolutus, ut ne ad vellendum
to-a-dying-man like and-so-much unstrung that not for pulling-out
quidem telum sufficeret dextra. Itaque ad spoliandum
even the-weapon was-sufficient his-right-hand therefore for stripping
corpus, qui vulneraverat, alacer gaudio accurrit. Quem ut
the-body he-who had-wounded-him eager with-joy runs-up whom when
inicere corpori suo manus sensit, credo, ultimi dedecoris
to-lay on-the-body his-own hands he-felt I-believe of-ultimate disgrace
indignitate commotus linquentem revocavit animum et
by-the-indignity moved fainting he-called-back his-spirit and
nudum hostis latus subrecto mucrone hausit. Iacebant
the-bare of-the-enemy side with-upturned point he-drained there-lay
circa regem tria corpora procul stupentibus ceteris. Ille
around the-king three bodies far-off with-dumbstruck the-others he
ut, antequam ultimus spiritus deficeret, dimicans tamen
that before the-last breath should-fail fighting yet
extingueretur, clipeo se adlevare conatus est et,
he-might-be-extinguished with-his-shield himself to-raise tried has and

postquam ad conitendum nihil supererat virium, dextera
after-that for striving nothing remained of-strength with-the-right-hand
inpendentes ramos conplexus temptabat adsurgere. Sed ne sic
overhanging branches grasping he-tried to-rise but not thus
quidem potens corporis rursus in genua procumbit manu
even master of-his-body again onto his-knees he-falls-forward with-his-hand
provocans hostes, si quis congredi auderet. Tandem Peucestes
challenging the-enemy if anyone to-close dared at-last Peucestes
per aliam oppidi partem deturbatis propugnatoribus muri
through another of-the-town part with-dislodged the-defenders of-the-wall
vestigia persequens regis supervenit. Quo conspecto
the-tracks following of-the-king came-up with-whom seen
Alexander iam non vitae spem, sed mortis solacium
Alexander now not of-life a-hope but of-death a-solace
supervenisse ratus clipeo fatigatum corpus excepit. Subinde
to-have-come thinking on-his-shield his-exhausted body caught-up soon
Timaeus et paulo post Leonnatus, huic Aristonus supervenit.
Timaeus and a-little after Leonnatus to-him Aristonus came-up
Indi quoque, cum intra moenia regem esse conperissent,
the-Indians also when within the-walls the-king to-be had-learned
omissis ceteris illuc concurrerunt urgebantque protegentes
with-left-aside the-rest thither they-ran-together and-pressed those-protecting
eum. E quibus Timaeus multis adverso corpore vulneribus
him of whom Timaeus with-many in-front in-body wounds
acceptis egregiaque edita pugna cecidit: Peucestes quoque
received and-with-distinguished put-forth fight fell Peucestes also
tribus iaculis confossus non se tamen scuto, sed regem
by-three javelins pierced not himself yet with-the-shield but the-king
tuebatur: Leonnatus, dum avide ruentes barbaros submovet,
was-guarding Leonnatus while eagerly rushing the-barbarians he-drives-back
cervice graviter icta semianimis procubuit ante regis pedes.
with-the-neck heavily struck half-dead fell-forward before the-king's feet

Iam et Peucestes vulneribus fatigatus submiserat clipeum: in
now both Peucestes by-wounds exhausted had-lowered his-shield in
Aristono spes ultima haerebat. Hic quoque graviter saucius
Aristonus the-hope last clung he too heavily wounded
tantam vim hostium ultra sustinere non poterat. Inter
so-great a-force of-enemies further to-sustain not could among
haec ad Macedonas regem cecidisse fama perlata est.
these-things to the-Macedonians the-king to-have-fallen the-report carried was
Terruisset alios, quod illos incitavit. Namque periculi
it-would-have-terrified others what them roused for of-danger
omnis inmemores dolabris perfregere murum et, qua
all unmindful with-pickaxes they-broke-through the-wall and where
moliti erant aditum, inrupere in urbem Indosque plures
worked they-had an-entrance they-burst into the-city and-the-Indians more
fugientes quam congredi ausos ceciderunt. Non senibus, non
fleeing than to-close daring they-cut-down not to-old-men not
feminis, non infantibus parcitur: quisquis occurrerat, ab illo
to-women not to-infants is-spared whoever had-met-them by him
vulneratum regem esse credebant. Tandemque internecione
wounded the-king to-be they-believed and-at-last by-the-slaughter
hostium iustae irae parentatum est. Ptolomaeum, qui
of-the-enemy to-just anger atonement-made was Ptolemy who
postea regnavit, huic pugnae adfuisse auctor est
afterward reigned at-this battle to-have-been-present the-authority is
Clitarchus et Timagenes, sed ipse scilicet gloriae suae
Clitarchus and Timagenes but he-himself of-course to-glory his-own
non refragatus afuisse se missum in expeditionem
not opposing to-have-been-absent himself sent on an-expedition
memoriae tradidit. Tanta conponentium vetusta rerum
to-memory handed-down so-great of-those-composing the-old of-things
monimenta vel securitas vel, par huic vitium, credulitas fuit.
records either carelessness or equal to-this fault credulity was

Rege in tabernaculum relato medici lignum sagittae
with-the-king into the-tent carried-back the-doctors the-shaft of-the-arrow
corpori infixae ita, ne spiculum moveretur, abscidunt.
in-the-body fixed so that-not the-head should-move cut-off
Corpore deinde nudato animadvertunt hamos inesse telo
with-the-body then stripped they-notice barbs to-be-in the-weapon
nec aliter id sine pernicie corporis extrahi posse
nor otherwise it without destruction of-the-body to-be-drawn-out to-be-able
quam, ut secando vulnus augerent. Ceterum, ne secantes
than that by-cutting the-wound they-should-enlarge but lest them-cutting
profluvium sanguinis occuparet, verebantur: quippe ingens
a-flow of-blood should-overtake they-feared for huge
telum adactum erat et penetrasse in viscera videbatur.
the-weapon driven-in had-been and to-have-penetrated into the-vitals it-seemed
Critobulus, inter medicos artis eximiae, sed in tanto periculo
Critobulus among the-doctors of-skill outstanding but in so-great danger
territus, manus admovere metuebat, ne in ipsius caput
terrified his-hands to-apply was-afraid lest on his-own head
parum prosperae curationis recideret eventus. Lacrimantem
of-too-little successful treatment should-fall-back the-outcome weeping
eum ac metu et sollicitudine propemodum exanguem rex
him and from-fear and anxiety almost bloodless the-king
conspexerat: 'Quid,' inquit, 'quodve tempus expectas et
had-seen what he-says or-what time do-you-wait-for and
non quam primum hoc dolore me saltem moriturum
not as soon-as-possible from-this pain me at-least going-to-die
liberas? An times, ne reus sis, cum insanabile vulnus
you-free or do-you-fear lest guilty you-be when an-incurable wound
acceperim?' At Critobulus tandem vel finito vel dissimulato
I-have-received but Critobulus at-last either with-ended or hidden
metu hortari eum coepit, ut se continendum praeberet,
fear to-urge him began that himself to-be-held he-should-offer

dum spiculum evelleret: etiam levem corporis motum noxium
while the-head he-pulled-out even a-slight of-the-body movement harmful
fore. Rex cum adfirmasset nihil opus esse iis, qui semet
going-to-be the-king when he-had-affirmed no need to-be of-those who himself
continerent, sicut praeceptum erat, sine motu praebuit
should-hold as instructed it-had-been without movement he-offered
corpus. Igitur patefacto latius vulnere et spiculo evolso
his-body therefore with-laid-open more-widely the-wound and with-the-head pulled-out
ingens vis sanguinis manare coepit linquique animo rex
a-huge mass of-blood to-flow began and-to-faint in-spirit the-king
et caligine oculis offusa velut moribundus extendi.
and with-darkness over-his-eyes spread as-if dying to-be-stretched-out
Cumque profluvium medicamentis frustra inhiberent, clamor
and-when the-flow with-drugs in-vain they-were-checking a-shout
simul atque ploratus amicorum oritur regem expirasse
at-once and wailing of-the-friends arises the-king to-have-expired
credentium. Tandem constitit sanguis, paulatimque animum
believing at-last stopped the-blood and-gradually his-spirit
recepit et circumstantes coepit agnoscere. Toto eo die
he-recovered and those-standing-around began to-recognize the-whole that day
ac nocte, quae secuta est, armatus exercitus regiam obsedit
and night which followed has armed the-army the-palace besieged
confessus omnes unius spiritu vivere. Nec prius recesserunt,
confessing all of-one by-the-breath to-live nor before did-they-withdraw
quam conpertum est somno paulisper adquiescere. Hinc
than learned it-was in-sleep for-a-little to-rest from-here
certiorem spem salutis eius in castra rettulerunt.
a-surer hope of-safety his into the-camp they-brought-back

With his wound healing, Alexander shows himself from a tent on two joined ships to the barbarians who believed him dead, then floats downriver to rest. His friends, led by Craterus, beg him to stop risking himself in obscure fights. Alexander thanks them, but answers that he measures his life by its glory, not its years: he has conquered Greece and Asia, will make the world his theater, would die young if he must, and asks them to see his mother Olympias deified.

Rex VII diebus curato vulnere necdum obducta cicatrice,
the-king seven days with-treated the-wound and-not-yet with-closed the-scar
cum audisset convaluisse apud barbaros famam mortis
when he-had-heard to-have-grown-strong among the-barbarians the-report of-the-death
suae, duobus navigiis iunctis statui in medium undique
his-own with-two ships joined to-be-set in the-middle on-all-sides
conspicuum tabernaculum iussit, ex quo se ostenderet
visible a-tent he-ordered from which himself he-might-show
perisse credentibus, conspectusque ab incolis spem
to-have-perished to-those-believing and-seen by the-inhabitants the-hope
hostium falso nuntio conceptam inhibuit. Secundo deinde
of-the-enemy by-false report conceived he-checked down-the-current then
amne defluxit aliquantum intervalli a cetera classe
river he-floated-down a-considerable-amount of-interval from the-rest-of the-fleet
praecipiens, ne quies perinvalido adhuc necessaria pulsu
going-ahead lest the-rest to-one-very-weak still necessary by-the-beat
remorum inpediretur. Quarto, postquam navigare coeperat,
of-the-oars should-be-hindered on-the-fourth after to-sail he-had-begun
die pervenit in regionem desertam quidem ab incolis,
day he-arrived into a-region deserted indeed by the-inhabitants
sed frumento et pecoribus abundantem. Placuit is locus et
but with-grain and with-cattle abounding pleased that place both
ad suam et ad militum requiem. Mos erat principibus
for his-own and for of-the-soldiers rest the-custom was for-the-chief

amicorum et custodibus corporis excubare ante praetorium,
of-the-friends and the-guards of-the-body to-keep-watch before the-headquarters
quotiens adversa regi valitudo incidisset: hoc tum
whenever adverse to-the-king health had-befallen with-this then
quoque more servato universi cubiculum eius intrant. Ille
also custom kept all the-bedchamber his enter he
sollicitus, ne quid novi adferrent, quia simul venerant,
anxious lest some-thing new they-were-bringing because together they-had-come
percontatur, num hostium recens nuntiaretur adventus.
asks whether of-the-enemy a-recent was-being-reported arrival
At Craterus, cui mandatum erat, ut amicorum preces
but Craterus to-whom charged it-was that of-the-friends the-prayers
perferret ad eum: 'Credisne,' inquit, 'adventu magis
he-should-convey to him do-you-believe he-says by-the-arrival more
hostium, ut iam in vallo consisterent, sollicitos esse
of-the-enemy that already on the-rampart they-were-standing anxious to-be
quam cura salutis tuae, ut nunc est, tibi vilis? Quantalibet
than by-care for-safety your as now it-is to-you cheap however-great
vis omnium gentium conspiret in nos, inpleat armis
the-force of-all nations should-conspire against us should-fill with-arms
virisque totum orbem, classibus maria consternat, invisitatas
and-men the-whole world with-fleets the-seas should-strew unseen
beluas inducat: tu nos praestabis invictos. Sed quis deorum
beasts should-bring-on you us will-render unconquered but who of-the-gods
hoc Macedoniae columen ac sidus diuturnum fore polliceri
this of-Macedonia pillar and star lasting going-to-be to-promise
potest, cum tam avide manifestis periculis offeras corpus
can when so eagerly to-manifest dangers you-offer your-body
oblitus tot civium animas trahere te in casum? Quis
forgetting so-many of-citizens the-lives to-drag you into disaster who
enim tibi superstes aut optat esse aut potest? Eo
for to-you surviving either wishes to-be or can to-that-point

pervenimus auspicium atque imperium secuti tuum,
we-have-come the-auspices and command having-followed your
unde nisi te reduce nulli ad penates suos iter
whence unless with-you returned to-none to the-household-gods their-own a-way
est. Quodsi adhuc de Persidis regno cum Dareo
there-is but-if still concerning of-Persia the-kingdom with Darius
dimicares, etsi nemo vellet, tamen ne admirari quidem
you-were-fighting though no-one would-wish yet not to-wonder even
posset tam promptae esse te ad omne discrimen audaciae:
could so ready to-be you for every hazard of-daring
nam ubi paria sunt periculum ac praemium, et secundis
for where equal are the-danger and the-reward and in-favorable
rebus amplior fructus est et adversis solacium maius.
circumstances fuller the-fruit is and in-adversity the-solace greater
Tuo vero capite ignobilem vicum emi, quis ferat
with-your but head an-obscure village to-be-bought who would-bear
non tuorum modo militum, sed ullius gentis barbarae civis,
not of-your only soldiers but of-any nation barbarian a-citizen
qui tuam magnitudinem novit? Horret animus cogitationem
who your greatness has-known shudders the-mind at-the-thought
rei, quam paulo ante vidimus. Eloqui timeo invicti
of-the-thing which a-little before we-saw to-speak-out I-fear of-the-unconquered
corporis spolia inertissimas manus fuisse infecturas, nisi te
body the-spoils the-most-sluggish hands to-have-been going-to-stain unless you
interceptum misericors in nos fortuna servasset. Totidem
caught-up merciful toward us fortune had-saved as-many
proditores, totidem desertores sumus, quot te non potuimus
traitors as-many deserters we-are as you not we-could
persequi. Universos licet milites ignominia notes, nemo
follow all though the-soldiers with-disgrace you-may-brand no-one
recusabit luere id, quod ne admitteret, praestare non
will-refuse to-atone-for that which lest he-should-commit to-prevent not

potuit. Patere nos, quaeso, alio modo esse viles tibi.
he-could allow us I-beg in-another way to-be cheap to-you
Quocumque iusseris, ibimus. Obscura pericula et ignobiles
wherever you-order we-shall-go obscure dangers and inglorious
pugnas nobis deposcimus: temet ipsum ad ea serva,
battles for-us we-demand yourself in-person for those-things keep
quae magnitudinem tuam capiunt. Cito gloria obsolescit in
which greatness your hold quickly glory grows-stale in
sordidis hostibus, nec quicquam indignius est quam consumi
base enemies nor anything more-unworthy is than to-be-spent
eam, ubi non possit ostendi.' Eadem fere Ptolomaeus et
it where not it-can to-be-shown the-same-things about Ptolemy and
similia his ceteri. Iamque confusis vocibus flentes eum
similar to-these the-others and-now with-mingled voices weeping him
orabant, ut tandem ex satietate laudi modum faceret ac
they-begged that at-last from satiety to-glory a-limit he-should-set and
saluti suae id est publicae parceret. Grata erat regi
to-safety his-own that is the-public he-should-spare welcome was to-the-king
pietas amicorum: itaque singulos familiarius amplexus
the-devotion of-the-friends and-so each more-intimately having-embraced
considere iubet altiusque sermone repetito: 'Vobis quidem,'
to-sit-down he-bids and-more-deeply with-speech resumed to-you indeed
inquit, 'o fidissimi piissimique civium atque amicorum,
he-says O most-faithful and-most-devoted of-citizens and of-friends
grates ago habeoque non solum eo nomine, quod hodie
thanks I-give and-I-hold not only on-that account that today
salutem meam vestrae praeponitis, sed quod a primordiis
the-safety my to-yours you-prefer but that from the-beginnings
belli nullum erga me benivolentiae pignus atque indicium
of-the-war no toward me of-goodwill pledge and sign
omisistis, adeo ut confitendum sit numquam mihi vitam
you-have-omitted so-much that to-be-confessed it-is never to-me life

meam fuisse tam caram, quam esse coepit, ut vobis diu
my to-have-been so dear as to-be it-has-begun that you long
frui possim. Ceterum non eadem est cogitatio eorum, qui
to-enjoy I-may-be-able but not the-same is the-reasoning of-those who
pro me mori optant, et mea, qui pridem hanc benivolentiam
for me to-die wish and mine who long-since this goodwill
vestram virtute meruisse me iudico. Vos enim diuturnum
your by-valor to-have-earned myself I-judge you for a-lasting
fructum ex me, forsitan etiam perpetuum percipere cupiatis:
enjoyment from me perhaps even perpetual to-receive may-desire
ego me metior non aetatis spatio, sed gloriae. Licuit
I myself measure not of-age by-the-span but of-glory it-was-allowed
paternis opibus contento intra Macedoniae terminos per
with-paternal wealth content within of-Macedonia the-bounds in
otium corporis expectare obscuram et ignobilem senectutem.
ease of-body to-await an-obscure and inglorious old-age
Quamquam ne pigri quidem sibi fata disponunt, sed
although not the-lazy even for-themselves the-fates arrange but
unicum bonum diuturnam vitam existimantes saepe acerba
the-only good a-lasting life thinking often a-bitter
mors occupat. Verum ego, qui non annos meos, sed victorias
death seizes but I who not years my but victories
numero, si munera fortunae bene conputo, diu vixi.
I-count if the-gifts of-fortune well I-reckon long I-have-lived
Orsus a Macedonia imperium Graeciae teneo, Thraciam
having-begun from Macedonia the-command of-Greece I-hold Thrace
et Illyrios subegi, Triballis Maedisque imperito, Asiam, qua
and the-Illyrians I-subdued the-Triballi and-the-Maedi I-rule Asia where
Hellesponto, qua Rubro mari subluitur, possideo. Iamque
by-the-Hellespont where by-the-Red sea it-is-washed I-possess and-now
haud procul absum fine mundi, quem egressus aliam
not far I-am from-the-end of-the-world which having-passed another

naturam, alium orbem aperire mihi statui. Ex Asia
nature another world to-open for-myself I-have-resolved from Asia
in Europae terminos momento unius horae transivi. Victor
into of-Europe the-bounds in-the-moment of-one hour I-crossed victor
utriusque regionis post nonum regni mei, post vicesimum
of-each region after the-ninth of-reign my after the-twentieth
atque octavum annum vitae videorne vobis in excolenda
and eighth year of-life do-I-seem to-you in cultivating
gloria, cui me uni devovi, posse cessare? Ego vero
glory to-which myself alone I-have-devoted to-be-able to-cease I indeed
non deero et, ubicumque pugnabo, in theatro terrarum
not will-fail and wherever I-shall-fight in the-theater of-the-lands
orbis esse me credam. Dabo nobilitatem ignobilibus
of-the-world to-be myself I-shall-believe I-shall-give renown to-ignoble
locis, aperiam cunctis gentibus terras, quas natura longe
places I-shall-open to-all nations lands which nature far
submoverat. In his operibus extingui mihi, si fors ita
had-removed in these labors to-be-extinguished for-me if chance so
feret, pulchrum est: ea stirpe sum genitus, ut multam
shall-bring beautiful it-is of-that stock I-am born that much
prius quam longam vitam debeam optare. Obsecro vos,
rather than long a-life I-ought to-wish I-beseech you
cogitate nos pervenisse in terras, quibus feminae ob
consider us to-have-come into lands in-which a-woman on-account-of
virtutem celeberrimum nomen est. Quas urbes Samiramis
valor most-celebrated name has what cities Semiramis
condidit! quas gentis redegit in potestatem! quanta opera
founded what nations she-brought into power how-great works
molita est! Nondum feminam aequavimus gloria, et iam
constructed has not-yet a-woman we-have-equaled in-glory and already
nos laudis satietas cepit? Di faveant, maiora adhuc
us of-praise satiety has-taken the-gods may-favor greater-things still

restant. Sed ita nostra erunt, quae nondum adiimus, si
remain but so ours will-be which not-yet we-have-approached if
nihil parvum duxerimus, in quo magnae gloriae locus
nothing small we-shall-have-considered in which of-great glory a-place
est. Vos modo me ab intestina fraude et domesticorum
is you only me from internal treachery and of-the-household-men
insidiis praestate securum: belli Martisque discrimen inpavidus
plots keep safe of-war and-of-Mars the-hazard fearless
subibo. Philippus in acie tutior quam in theatro
I-shall-undergo Philip in the-battle-line safer than in the-theater
fuit: hostium manus saepe evitavit, suorum effugere non
was of-enemies the-hands often he-avoided of-his-own to-escape not
valuit. Aliorum quoque regum exitus si reputaveritis,
he-was-able of-other also kings the-ends if you-shall-have-reckoned
plures a suis quam ab hoste interemptos numerabitis.
more by their-own than by the-enemy slain you-will-count
Ceterum, quoniam olim rei agitatae in animo meo nunc
but since long-ago of-a-matter pondered in mind my now
promendae occasio oblata est, mihi maximus laborum
to-be-brought-out an-opportunity offered is for-me the-greatest of-labors
atque operum meorum erit fructus, si Olympias mater
and works my will-be the-fruit if Olympias my-mother
inmortalitati consecretur, quandoque excesserit vita.
to-immortality be-consecrated whenever she-shall-have-departed from-life
Hoc, si licuerit, ipse praestabo: hoc, si me praeceperit
this if it-shall-be-allowed myself I-shall-perform this if me shall-have-forestalled
fatum, vos mandasse me mementote.' Ac tum quidem amicos
fate you to-have-charged me remember and then indeed his-friends
dimisit. Ceterum per conplures dies ibi stativa habuit.
he-dismissed but for several days there a-standing-camp he-held

The Greek colonists near Bactra revolt, quarrel among themselves, and go home. A hundred envoys of the two Indian nations come to surrender, and Alexander gives them a lavish banquet. There the drunken Macedonian Corratas challenges the Athenian boxer Dioxippus, who next day, armed only with a club, defeats him; soon after, falsely accused of stealing a golden cup, Dioxippus kills himself.

Haec dum in India geruntur, Graeci milites nuper in
these-things while in India are-being-done the-Greek soldiers recently into
colonias a rege deducti circa Bactra orta inter ipsos
colonies by the-king settled around Bactra with-arisen among themselves
seditione defecerant non tam Alexandro infensi quam
a-mutiny had-revolted not so-much to-Alexander hostile as
metu supplicii. Quippe occisis quibusdam popularium,
from-fear of-punishment for with-killed certain of-their-countrymen
qui validiores erant, arma spectare coeperunt et Bactriana
who stronger were arms to-look-to they-began and with-the-Bactrian
arce, quae quasi tuta neglegentius adservata erat, occupata
citadel which as-if safe more-carelessly guarded had-been seized
barbaros quoque in societatem defectionis inpulerant.
the-barbarians also into partnership of-the-revolt they-had-driven
Athenodorus erat princeps eorum, qui regis quoque nomen
Athenodorus was the-chief of-them who of-king also the-name
adsumpserat non tam imperii cupidine quam in patriam
had-assumed not so-much of-power from-desire as into the-fatherland
revertendi cum iis, qui auctoritatem ipsius sequebantur.
of-returning with those who the-authority his were-following
Huic Biton quidam nationis eiusdem, sed ob
against-him Biton a-certain of-nation the-same but on-account-of
aemulationem infestus conparavit insidias invitatumque ad
rivalry hostile prepared a-plot and-invited to

epulas per Boxum quendam Bactrianum in convivio
a-banquet through Boxus a-certain Bactrian at the-feast
occidit. Postero die contione advocata Bito ultro
killed-him on-the-next day with-an-assembly called Biton unprovoked
insidiatum sibi Athenodorum plerisque persuaserat:
to-have-plotted against-himself Athenodorus most had-persuaded
sed aliis suspecta erat fraus Bitonis, et paulatim in
but to-others suspect was the-fraud of-Biton and gradually into
plures coepit manare suspicio. Itaque Graeci milites arma
more began to-spread the-suspicion and-so the-Greek soldiers arms
capiunt occisuri Bitonem, si daretur occasio: ceterum
take going-to-kill Biton if should-be-given a-chance but
principes eorum iram multitudinis mitigaverunt. Praeter
the-chiefs of-them the-anger of-the-multitude softened beyond
spem suam Biton praesenti periculo ereptus paulo post est
hope his-own Biton from-the-present danger snatched a-little after has
insidiatus auctoribus salutis suae. Cuius dolo cognito
plotted against-the-authors of-safety his-own with-whose treachery learned
et ipsum conprehenderunt et Boxum. Ceterum Boxum
both himself they-seized and Boxus but Boxus
protinus placuit interfici, Bitonem etiam per cruciatum
at-once it-was-resolved to-be-killed Biton even through torture
necari. Iamque corpori tormenta admovebantur, cum
to-be-put-to-death and-now to-his-body the-tortures were-being-applied when
Graeci — incertum, ob quam causam — lymphatis
the-Greeks uncertain on-account-of what reason madmen
similes ad arma discurrunt. Quorum fremitu exaudito,
like to arms run-in-all-directions with-whose roar heard
qui torquere Bitonem iussi erant, omisere veriti, ne
those-who to-torture Biton ordered had-been left-off fearing lest
id facere tumultuantium vociferatione prohiberentur. Ille,
it to-do by-the-rioters' shouting they-should-be-prevented he

sicut nudatus erat, pervenit ad Graecos, et miserabilis
as stripped he-had-been came to the-Greeks and the-pitiable
facies supplicio destinati in diversum animos repente
appearance to-punishment of-one-destined into the-opposite their-minds suddenly
mutavit, dimittique eum iusserunt. Hoc modo poena
changed and-to-be-released him they-ordered in-this way from-punishment
bis liberatus cum ceteris, qui colonias a rege attributas
twice freed with the-others who the-colonies by the-king assigned
reliquerunt, revertit in patriam. Haec circa Bactra et
left returned into the-fatherland these-things around Bactra and
Scytharum terminos gesta. Interim regem duarum gentium,
of-the-Scythians the-borders were-done meanwhile the-king of-the-two nations
de quibus ante dictum est, C legati adeunt. Omnes
about which before said it-has-been a-hundred envoys approach all
curru vehebantur eximia magnitudine corporum, decoro
in-a-chariot were-carried of-outstanding size of-bodies of-handsome
habitu: lineae vestes intexto auro purpuraque distinctae.
bearing linen garments with-woven gold and-purple adorned
Ei se dedere ipsos, urbes agrosque referebant, per
to-him themselves to-surrender themselves cities and-lands they-reported through
tot aetates inviolatam libertatem illius primum fidei
so-many ages inviolate liberty to-his first good-faith
dicionique permissuros: deos sibi deditionis auctores, non
and-authority going-to-entrust the-gods for-them of-the-surrender the-authors not
metum: quippe intactis viribus iugum excipere. Rex
fear for with-untouched strength the-yoke to-accept the-king
consilio habito deditos in fidem accepit stipendio, quod
with-a-council held the-surrendered into protection received with-a-tribute which
Arachosiis utraque natio pensitabat, inposito: praeterea II
to-the-Arachosians each nation was-paying imposed besides two
milia et D equites imperat. Et omnia oboedienter a
thousand and five-hundred horsemen he-demands and everything obediently by

barbaris facta. Invitatis deinde ad epulas legatis gentium
the-barbarians done with-invited then to a-banquet the-envoys of-the-nations
regulisque exornari convivium iussit. C aurei lecti
and-the-chieftains to-be-adorned the-feast he-ordered a-hundred golden couches
modicis intervallis positi erant, lectis circumdederat
at-moderate intervals placed had-been the-couches he-had-surrounded-with
aulaea purpura auroque fulgentia, quidquid aut apud Persas
tapestries with-purple and-gold shining whatever either among the-Persians
vetere luxu aut apud Macedonas nova inmutatione corruptum
by-old luxury or among the-Macedonians by-new change corrupted
erat, confusis utriusque gentis vitiis in illo convivio
had-been with-mingled of-each nation the-vices at that feast
ostendens. Intererat epulis Dioxippus Atheniensis, pugil
displaying there-was-present at-the-banquet Dioxippus the-Athenian boxer
nobilis et ob eximiam virtutem virium iam et
famous and on-account-of outstanding prowess of-strength already both
regi pernotus et gratus. Invidi malignique increpabant
to-the-king well-known and welcome the-envious and-spiteful taunted-him
per seria et ludum saginati corporis sequi inutilem beluam:
in earnest and jest of-a-fattened body to-follow a-useless beast
cum ipsi proelium inirent, oleo madentem praeparare
while themselves battle were-entering with-oil dripping to-prepare
ventrem epulis. Eadem igitur in convivio Corratas Macedo
his-belly for-feasts the-same therefore at the-feast Corratas a-Macedonian
iam temulentus exprobrare ei coepit et postulare, ut,
already drunk to-reproach to-him began and to-demand that
si vir esset, postero die secum ferro decerneret: regem
if a-man he-were on-the-next day with-him by-the-sword he-should-decide the-king
tandem vel de sua temeritate vel de illius ignavia
at-last either on his-own rashness or on that-man's cowardice
iudicaturum. Et a Dioxippo contemptim militarem eludente
going-to-judge and by Dioxippus contemptuously the-soldierly mocking

ferociam accepta condicio est. Ac postero die rex, cum
ferocity accepted the-challenge was and on-the-next day the-king when
etiam acrius certamen exposcerent, quia deterrere non
even more-keenly the-contest they-demanded because to-deter not
poterat, destinata exequi passus est. Ingens vis militum,
he-could the-resolved to-carry-out allowed has a-huge mass of-soldiers
inter quos erant Graeci, Dioxippo studebant. Macedo
among whom were Greeks Dioxippus favored the-Macedonian
iusta arma sumpserat, aereum clipeum hastamque — sarisam
regular arms had-taken a-bronze shield and-a-pike sarissa
vocant — laeva tenens, dextera lanceam gladioque cinctus,
they-call in-his-left holding in-his-right a-lance and-with-a-sword girt
velut cum pluribus simul dimicaturus: Dioxippus oleo nitens
as-if with several at-once going-to-fight Dioxippus with-oil shining
et coronatus laeva puniceum amiculum, dextra validum
and garlanded in-his-left a-scarlet cloak in-his-right a-stout
nodosumque stipitem praeferebat. Ea ipsa res omnium animos
and-knotty club was-holding-before that very thing of-all the-minds
expectatione suspenderat: quippe armato congredi
with-expectation had-held-in-suspense for with-an-armed-man to-engage
nudum dementia, non temeritas videbatur. Igitur Macedo,
a-naked-man madness not rashness seemed therefore the-Macedonian
haud dubius eminus interfici posse, lanceam emisit. Quam
not doubtful from-afar to-be-killed to-be-able his-lance hurled which
Dioxippus cum exigua corporis declinatione vitasset, antequam
Dioxippus when by-slight of-the-body swerving had-avoided before
ille hastam transferret in dextram, adsiluit et stipite
he the-pike could-shift into his-right-hand leapt-at-him and with-the-club
mediam eam fregit. Amisso utroque telo Macedo gladium
in-the-middle it broke with-lost each weapon the-Macedonian his-sword
coeperat stringere, cum occupatum conplexu pedibus repente
had-begun to-draw when him-seized in-a-grip with-feet suddenly

subductis Dioxippus arietavit in terram ereptoque
swept-from-under Dioxippus dashed onto the-ground and-with-snatched-away
gladio pedem super cervicem iacenti inposuit stipitem
the-sword his-foot upon the-neck of-the-man-lying set his-club
intentans elisurusque eo victum, ni prohibitus esset
threatening and-going-to-crush with-it the-vanquished unless prevented he-had-been
a rege. Tristis spectaculi eventus non Macedonibus modo,
by the-king sad of-the-spectacle the-outcome not for-the-Macedonians only
sed etiam Alexandro fuit, maxime quia barbari adfuerant:
but also for-Alexander was most-of-all because the-barbarians had-been-present
quippe celebratam Macedonum fortitudinem ad ludibrium
for the-celebrated of-the-Macedonians courage to mockery
recidisse querebatur. Hinc ad criminationem invidorum
to-have-fallen he-complained from-here to the-accusation of-the-envious
adapertae sunt regis aures. Et post paucos dies inter
opened-up were of-the-king the-ears and after a-few days during
epulas aureum poculum ex conposito subducitur, ministrique,
a-banquet a-golden cup by arrangement is-removed and-the-attendants
quasi amisissent, quod amoverant, regem adeunt. Saepe
as-if they-had-lost what they-had-taken-away the-king approach often
minus est constantiae in rubore, quam in culpa: coniectum
less is of-steadiness in a-blush than in guilt the-glance
oculorum, quibus ut fur destinabatur, Dioxippus ferre non
of-the-eyes by-which as a-thief he-was-marked Dioxippus to-bear not
potuit et, cum excessisset convivio, litteris conscriptis,
could and when he-had-left the-banquet with-a-letter written
quae regi redderentur, ferro se interemit. Graviter
which to-the-king should-be-delivered with-the-sword himself killed heavily
mortem eius tulit rex existimans indignationis esse, non
the-death his took the-king thinking of-indignation to-be not

paenitentiae testem, utique postquam falso insimulatum eum
of-repentance the-witness especially after-that falsely accused him
nimium invidorum gaudium ostendit.
too-great of-the-envious the-joy showed

VIII · DOWN THE RIVER

The Indians send gifts. The Sambagrae surrender in terror; Alexander subdues the Musicani and storms Porticanus' town, where Porticanus dies fighting, and takes Sambus' strongest city by a tunnel. Many die of poisoned swords; Ptolemy is wounded, and Alexander dreams of a serpent carrying the herb that cures him. He takes the deserted town of the Patalii and sails down to an island in the river.

Indorum legati dimissi domos paucis post diebus cum donis
of-the-Indians the-envoys dismissed home a-few after days with gifts
revertuntur. CCC erant equites, MXXX currus,
return three-hundred there-were horsemen one-thousand-and-thirty chariots
quos quadriiugi equi ducebant, lineae vestis aliquantum,
which four-yoked horses drew of-linen cloth a-good-quantity
mille scuta Indica et ferri candidi talenta C
a-thousand shields Indian and of-iron white talents a-hundred
leonesque rarae magnitudinis et tigres, utrumque animal
and-lions of-rare size and tigers each animal
ad mansuetudinem domitum, lacertarum quoque ingentium
to tameness broken of-lizards also huge
pelles et dorsa testudinum. Cratero deinde imperat rex,
the-skins and the-backs of-tortoises to-Craterus then orders the-king
haud procul amne, per quem erat ipse navigaturus, copias
not far-from the-river along which was himself going-to-sail the-forces
duceret: eos autem, qui comitari eum solebant, inponit in
to-lead those however who to-accompany him were-accustomed he-puts into

naves et in fines Mallorum secundo amne devehitur.
the-ships and into the-territory of-the-Malli down-the-current river is-carried-down
Inde Sambagras adiit, validam Indiae gentem, quae
from-there the-Sambagrae he-approached a-strong of-India nation which
populi, non regum imperio regebatur. LX milia peditum
of-the-people not of-kings by-the-command was-ruled sixty thousand of-infantry
habebant, equitum VI milia: has copias currus D
they-had of-horsemen six thousand these forces chariots five-hundred
sequebantur. III duces spectatos virtute bellica elegerant.
followed three leaders proven in-valor of-war they-had-chosen
At, qui in agris erant proximis flumini — frequentes
but those-who in the-fields were nearest to-the-river many
autem vicos maxime in ripa habebant — ut videre totum
moreover villages most on the-bank they-had when they-saw the-whole
amnem, qua prospici poterat, navigiis constratum et
river where to-be-seen-forward it-could with-ships covered and
tot militum arma fulgentia, territi nova facie deorum
so-many of-soldiers the-arms gleaming terrified by-the-new sight of-gods
exercitum et alium Liberum Patrem, celebre in illis
an-army and another Liber Father famous among those
gentibus nomen, adventare credebant. Hinc militum
nations a-name to-be-approaching they-believed on-this-side of-the-soldiers
clamor, hinc remorum pulsus variaeque nautarum voces
the-shout on-that-side of-the-oars the-beat and-the-various of-sailors voices
hortantium pavidas aures inpleverant. Ergo universi ad eos,
urging the-fearful ears had-filled therefore all to those
qui in armis erant, currunt furere clamitantes et cum
who in arms were run to-be-mad crying and with
dis proelium inituros: navigia non posse numerari, quae
gods battle going-to-enter the-ships not to-be-able to-be-counted which
invictos viros veherent. Tantumque in exercitum suorum
unconquered men were-carrying and-so-much into the-army of-their-own

intulere terroris, ut legatos mitterent gentem dedituros.
they-brought of-terror that envoys they-sent the-nation going-to-surrender
His in fidem acceptis ad alias deinde gentes quarto die
with-these into protection received to other then nations on-the-fourth day
pervenit. Nihilo plus animi his fuit, quam ceteris fuerat.
he-arrived nothing more of-spirit to-these was than to-the-rest had-been
Itaque oppido ibi condito, quod Alexandream appellari
and-so with-a-town there founded which Alexandria to-be-called
iusserat, fines eorum, qui Musicani appellantur, intravit.
he-had-ordered the-territory of-those who Musicani are-called he-entered
Hic de Teriolte satrape, quem Parapanisadis praefecerat,
here about Terioltes the-satrap whom over-the-Parapanisadae he-had-set
isdem arguentibus cognovit multaque avare ac superbe
with-the-same accusing he-learned and-many-things greedily and arrogantly
fecisse convictum interfici iussit. Oxyartes, praetor
to-have-done convicted to-be-killed he-ordered Oxyartes the-governor
Bactrianorum, non absolutus modo, sed etiam iure amoris
of-the-Bactrians not acquitted only but also by-right of-affection
amplioris imperii donatus est finibus. Musicanis deinde
of-ampler command presented was with-the-territory with-the-Musicani then
in dicionem redactis urbi eorum praesidium inposuit.
into subjection brought on-the-city of-them a-garrison he-imposed
Inde per silvas ad asperam Indiae gentem, perventum est.
from-there through forests to a-rough of-India nation come it-was
Porticanus rex erat, qui se munitae urbi cum magna manu
Porticanus king was who himself in-a-fortified city with a-great band
popularium incluserat. Hanc Alexander tertio die, quam
of-countrymen had-shut-up this Alexander on-the-third day after
coeperat obsidere, expugnavit. Et Porticanus, cum in arcem
he-had-begun to-besiege stormed and Porticanus when into the-citadel
confugisset, legatos de condicione deditionis misit ad regem.
he-had-fled envoys about the-terms of-surrender sent to the-king

Sed antequam adirent eum, duae turres cum ingenti
but before they-could-approach him two towers with huge
fragore prociderant: per quarum ruinas Macedones evasere
crash had-fallen through whose ruins the-Macedonians climbed
in arcem. Qua capta Porticanus cum paucis repugnans
into the-citadel with-which taken Porticanus with few resisting
occiditur. Diruta igitur arce et omnibus captivis
is-killed with-demolished therefore the-citadel and all the-captives
venundatis Sambi regis fines ingressus est multisque
sold of-Sambus the-king territory entered he-has and-with-many
oppidis in fidem acceptis validissimam gentis urbem
towns into protection received the-strongest of-the-nation city
cuniculo cepit. Barbaris simile monstri visum est rudibus
by-a-tunnel he-took to-the-barbarians like a-portent seemed it-was unskilled
militarium operum: quippe in media ferme urbe armati
in-military works for in the-middle almost of-the-city armed-men
terra existebant nullo suffossi specus ante vestigio
from-the-earth emerged with-no dug of-a-tunnel before trace
facto. LXXX milia Indorum in ea regione caesa Clitarchus
made eighty thousand of-Indians in that region slain Clitarchus
est auctor multosque captivos sub corona venisse.
is the-authority and-many captives under the-garland to-have-been-sold
Rursus Musicani defecerunt: ad quos opprimendos missus est
again the-Musicani revolted to whom to-be-crushed sent was
Pithon, qui captum principem gentis eundemque defectionis
Pithon who captured the-chief of-the-nation and-the-same of-the-revolt
auctorem adduxit ad regem. Quo Alexander in crucem
the-author brought to the-king with-whom Alexander onto a-cross
sublato rursus amnem, in quo classem expectare se iusserat,
raised again the-river on which the-fleet to-wait-for him he-had-ordered
repetit. Quarto deinde die secundo amne pervenit ad
seeks-again on-the-fourth then day down-the-current river he-arrived at

oppidum, quod in regno imo erat Sambi. Nuper se ille
a-town which in the-kingdom lowest was of-Sambus recently himself he
dediderat, sed oppidani detrectabant imperium et clauserant
had-surrendered but the-townsfolk were-refusing the-command and had-shut
portas. Quorum paucitate contempta rex D Agrianos
the-gates with-whose fewness despised the-king five-hundred Agrianians
moenia subire iussit et sensim recedentes elicere extra
the-walls to-approach ordered and gradually retreating to-lure outside
muros hostem, secuturum profecto, si fugere eos crederet.
the-walls the-enemy going-to-follow surely if to-flee them he-believed
Agriani, sicut imperatum erat, lacessito hoste subito
the-Agrianians as ordered it-had-been with-provoked the-enemy suddenly
terga verterunt: quos barbari effuse sequentes in
their-backs turned whom the-barbarians in-disorder following into
alios, inter quos ipse rex erat, incidunt. Renovato ergo
others among whom himself the-king was fall-upon with-renewed therefore
proelio ex III milibus barbarorum DC caesi sunt,
the-battle out-of three thousand of-barbarians six-hundred slain were
M capti, ceteri moenibus urbis inclusi. Sed non
a-thousand captured the-rest within-the-walls of-the-city shut-in but not
ut prima specie laeta victoria, ita eventu quoque fuit:
as at-first sight joyful the-victory so in-outcome also was
quippe barbari veneno tinxerant gladios. Itaque saucii
for the-barbarians with-poison had-dipped their-swords and-so the-wounded
subinde expirabant, nec causa tam strenuae mortis excogitari
repeatedly were-expiring nor the-cause so swift of-a-death to-be-devised
poterat a medicis, cum etiam leves plagae insanabiles
could by the-doctors since even slight blows incurable
essent. Barbari autem speraverant incautum et temerarium
were the-barbarians moreover had-hoped the-unwary and rash
regem excipi posse. Sed forte inter promptissimos
king to-be-caught to-be-able but by-chance among the-readiest

dimicans intactus evaserat. Praecipue Ptolomaeus, laevo
fighting unharmed he-had-escaped especially Ptolemy in-the-left
humero leviter quidem saucius, sed maiore periculo quam
shoulder slightly indeed wounded but by-greater danger than
vulnere adfectus, regis sollicitudinem in se converterat.
wound affected of-the-king the-anxiety onto himself had-turned
Sanguine coniunctus erat, et quidam Philippo genitum esse
by-blood related he-was and certain-men by-Philip begotten to-be
credebant: certe pelice eius ortum constabat. Idem
believed certainly from-a-concubine his sprung it-was-agreed the-same-man
corporis custos promptissimusque bellator et pacis artibus
of-the-body a-guard and-a-most-ready fighter and in-peace's arts
quam militiae maior et clarior: modico civilique cultu,
than in-war's greater and more-famous with-modest and-civil style
liberalis inprimis adituque facili nihil ex fastu regiae
generous above-all and-of-access easy nothing from the-arrogance of-court
adsumpserat. Ob haec regi an popularibus carior
had-assumed on-account-of these-things to-the-king or to-the-people dearer
esset, dubitari poterat: tum certe primum expertus suorum
he-was to-be-doubted could then certainly first having-tested of-his-own
animos, adeo ut fortunam, in quam postea ascendit, in
the-minds so-much that the-fortune into which later he-ascended in
illo periculo Macedones ominati esse videantur. Quippe non
that danger the-Macedonians foretold to-have seem for not
levior illis Ptolomaei fuit cura quam regi. Qui et
lighter to-them for-Ptolemy was the-care than for-the-king who both
proelio et sollicitudine fatigatus cum Ptolomaeo adsideret,
by-battle and by-anxiety exhausted when beside-Ptolemy he-was-sitting
lectum, in quo ipse adquiesceret, iussit inferri. In
a-couch on which himself he-might-rest he-ordered to-be-brought-in onto
quem ut se recepit, protinus altior insecutus est somnus.
which when himself he-betook at-once a-deeper followed has sleep

Ex quo excitatus per quietem vidisse se exponit
from which awakened through his-rest to-have-seen himself he-explains
speciem draconis oblatam herbam ferentis ore, quam
the-appearance of-a-serpent presented a-plant carrying in-its-mouth which
veneni remedium esse monstrasset: colorem quoque herbae
of-poison the-remedy to-be it-had-shown the-color also of-the-plant
referebat agniturum, si quis repperisset, adfirmans.
he-described going-to-recognize-it if anyone should-have-found-it affirming
Inventam deinde — quippe a multis simul erat requisita —
found then for by many at-once it-had-been sought
vulneri inposuit, protinusque dolore finito intra breve
on-the-wound he-placed and-at-once with-the-pain ended within a-short
spatium cicatrix quoque obducta est. Barbaros ut prima
space the-scar also closed-over was the-barbarians when the-first
spes fefellerat, se ipsos urbemque dediderunt. Hinc
hope had-deceived themselves in-person and-the-city surrendered from-here
in proximam gentem Patalium perventum est. Rex erat
into the-nearest nation of-the-Patalii come it-was the-king was
Soeris, qui urbe deserta in montes profugerat: itaque
Soeris who with-the-city deserted into the-mountains had-fled and-so
Alexander oppido potitur agrosque populatur. Magnae
Alexander the-town takes-possession-of and-the-fields lays-waste great
inde praedae actae sunt pecorum armentorumque, magna
from-there plunders driven were of-flocks and-herds a-great
vis reperta frumenti. Ducibus deinde sumptis amnis peritis
mass found of-grain with-guides then taken of-the-river skilled
defluxit ad insulam medio ferme alveo enatam.
he-floated-down to an-island in-the-middle almost of-the-channel arisen

Without guides, the fleet comes down the river to where the sea mixes with it. The tide rises and ebbs, stranding and wrecking the ships, which the soldiers do not understand, until the returning tide lifts the fleet again. At last Alexander sails out into the Ocean and sacrifices to the gods of the sea and the shore.

Ibi diutius subsistere coactus, quia duces socordius
there longer to-halt forced because the-guides too-carelessly
adservati profugerant, misit, qui conquirerent alios. Nec
guarded had-fled he-sent men-who should-seek-out others and
repertis pervicit cupido visendi Oceanum adeundique
with-none-found prevailed the-desire of-seeing the-Ocean and-of-approaching
terminos mundi sine regionis peritis flumini ignoto caput
the-bounds of-the-world without of-the-region skilled-men to-a-river unknown head
suum totque fortissimorum virorum salutem permittere:
his-own and-of-so-many bravest men the-safety to-entrust
navigabant ergo omnium, per quae ferebantur, ignari.
they-sailed therefore of-all through which they-were-carried ignorant
Quantum inde abesset mare, quae gentes colerent, quam
how-far from-there was-distant the-sea what nations inhabited-it how
placidum amnis os, quam patiens longarum navium
calm of-the-river the-mouth how tolerant of-long ships
esset, anceps et caeca aestimatio augurabatur: unum erat
it-was a-doubtful and blind guessing divined one was
temeritatis solacium perpetua felicitas. Iam CCCC stadia
of-rashness the-solace perpetual good-fortune now four-hundred stades
processerant, cum gubernatores agnoscere ipsos auram maris
they-had-advanced when the-pilots to-recognize themselves the-breeze of-the-sea
et haud procul videri sibi Oceanum abesse indicant
and not far to-seem to-them the-Ocean to-be-distant tell

regi. Laetus ille hortari nauticos coepit, incumberent remis:
the-king glad he to-urge the-sailors began they-should-bend to-the-oars
adesse finem laboris omnibus votis expetitum: iam nihil
to-be-at-hand the-end of-toil by-all prayers sought now nothing
gloriae deesse, nihil obstare virtuti, sine ullo Martis
to-glory to-be-lacking nothing to-stand-in-the-way to-valor without any of-Mars
discrimine, sine sanguine oram terrae ab illis capi: ne
hazard without blood the-shore of-the-earth by them to-be-taken not
naturam quidem longius posse procedere: brevi incognita
nature even further to-be-able to-proceed shortly things-unknown
nisi inmortalibus esse visuros. Paucos tamen navigio emisit
except to-immortals to-be going-to-see a-few yet in-a-ship he-sent-out
in ripam, qui agrestes vagos exciperent, e quibus certiora
onto the-bank who rustics wandering should-catch from whom surer-things
nosci posse sperabat. Illi scrutati omnia tuguria tandem
to-be-learned to-be-able he-hoped they having-searched all the-huts at-last
latentes repperere. Qui interrogati, quam procul abessent
men-hiding found who asked how far they-were-distant
mari, responderunt nullum ipsos mare ne fama quidem
from-the-sea answered no themselves sea not by-report even
accepisse: ceterum tertio die perveniri posse ad aquam
to-have-received but on-the-third day to-be-come to-be-able to water
amaram, quae corrumperet dulcem. Intellectum est mare
bitter which should-spoil the-sweet understood it-was the-sea
destinari ab ignaris naturae eius. Itaque ingenti alacritate
to-be-meant by men-ignorant of-the-nature its and-so with-huge eagerness
nautici remigant, et proximo quoque die, quo propius
the-sailors row and on-the-next each day by-which nearer
spes admovebatur, crescebat ardor animorum. Tertio iam
hope was-moved grew the-ardor of-their-minds on-the-third now
die mixtum flumini subibat mare leni adhuc aestu
day mixed with-the-river was-coming-up the-sea with-gentle still tide

confundente dispares undas. Tum aliam insulam medio
mingling the-unequal waves then to-another island in-the-middle-of
amni sitam evecti paulo lentius, quia cursus aestu
the-river situated carried-out a-little more-slowly because the-course by-the-tide
reverberabatur, adplicant classem et ad commeatus petendos
was-beaten-back they-bring-in the-fleet and for supplies to-be-sought
discurrunt, securi casus eius, qui supervenit ignaris.
run-in-all-directions careless of-the-chance that which came-upon the-ignorant
Tertia ferme hora erat, cum stata vice Oceanus
the-third about hour was when at-the-appointed turn the-Ocean
exaestuans invehi coepit et retro flumen urgere. Quod
surging to-be-carried-in began and back the-river to-press which
primo coercitum, deinde vehementius pulsum maiore impetu
at-first held-in then more-violently driven with-greater force
adversum agebatur, quam torrentia praecipiti alveo incurrunt.
backward was-driven than torrents with-headlong channel rush-down
Ignota vulgo freti natura erat, monstraque
unknown to-the-common-people of-the-strait the-nature was and-portents
et irae deum indicia cernere videbantur, identidem
and of-the-wrath of-the-gods signs to-see they-seemed again-and-again
intumescens mare et in campos paulo ante siccos descendere
swelling the-sea and onto plains a-little before dry to-descend
superfusum. Iamque levatis navigiis et tota classe
poured-over and-now with-lifted ships and with-the-whole fleet
dispersa, qui expositi erant, undique ad naves trepidi et
scattered those-who put-ashore had-been from-all-sides to the-ships alarmed and
inproviso malo attoniti recurrunt. Sed in tumultu festinatio
by-the-unforeseen evil stunned run-back but in a-tumult haste
quoque tarda est. Hi contis navigia pellebant, hi, dum
also slow is these with-poles the-ships were-pushing those while
remos aptari prohibebant, consederant, quidam enavigare
the-oars to-be-fitted they-prevented had-sat-down some to-sail-out

properantes, sed non expectatis, qui simul esse debebant,
hurrying but not with-awaited those-who together to-be ought
clauda et inhabilia navigia languide moliebantur, aliae
crippled and unmanageable ships sluggishly were-working others
navium inconsulte ruentes receperant: pariterque et multitudo
of-the-ships rashly rushing had-taken-in and-equally both the-multitude
et paucitas festinantes morabatur. Clamor hinc expectare,
and the-fewness the-hurrying was-delaying the-shout on-this-side to-wait
hinc ire iubentium dissonaeque voces numquam idem
on-that-side to-go of-men-ordering and-the-discordant voices never the-same
atque unum tendentium non oculorum modo usum, sed etiam
and one of-men-aiming not of-the-eyes only the-use but also
aurium abstulerant. Ne in gubernatoribus quidem quicquam
of-the-ears had-taken-away not in the-pilots even any
opis erat, quorum nec exaudiri vox a tumultuantibus
of-help was whose neither to-be-heard the-voice by the-rioters
poterat nec imperium a territis inconpositisque servari. Ergo
could nor the-command by the-terrified and-disordered to-be-kept therefore
conlidi inter se naves abstergerique invicem remi et
to-be-dashed among themselves the-ships and-to-be-swept-off in-turn the-oars and
alii aliorum navigia urgere coeperunt. Crederes non unius
others others' the-ships to-press began you-would-believe not of-one
exercitus classem vehi, sed duorum navale inisse
army a-fleet to-be-carried but of-two a-naval to-have-entered
certamen. Incutiebantur puppibus prorae, premebantur a
contest were-struck-against the-sterns the-prows were-pressed by
sequentibus, qui antecedentes turbaverant: iurgantium ira
those-following who those-going-before had-disturbed of-men-quarreling the-anger
perveniebat etiam ad manus. Iamque aestus totos circa
came even to blows and-now the-tide all around
flumen campos inundaverat tumulis dumtaxat eminentibus
the-river the-plains had-flooded with-mounds only standing-out

velut insulis parvis, in quos plerique trepidi omissis
as-if islands small onto which most alarmed with-abandoned
navigiis enare properant. Dispersa classis partim in praealta
the-ships to-swim-out hurry the-scattered fleet partly in very-deep
aqua stabat, qua subsederant valles, partim in vado haerebat,
water stood where had-sunk the-valleys partly in a-shoal stuck
utcumque inaequale terrae fastigium occupaverant undae:
wherever uneven of-the-earth the-level had-occupied the-waves
cum subito novus et pristino maior terror incutitur.
when suddenly a-new and than-the-former greater terror is-struck-in
Reciprocari coepit mare magno tractu aquis in suum
to-ebb began the-sea with-great draft with-the-waters into its-own
fretum recurrentibus reddebatque terras paulo ante profundo
strait running-back and-it-gave-back lands a-little before in-the-deep
salo mersas. Igitur destituta navigia alia praecipitantur
brine sunk therefore the-stranded ships some are-thrown
in proras, alia in latera procumbunt. Strati erant
onto their-prows others onto their-sides fall-forward strewn were
campi sarcinis, armis, avulsarum tabularum remorumque
the-plains with-baggage with-arms of-torn-off planks and-of-oars
fragmentis. Miles nec egredi in terram nec in nave
with-fragments the-soldier neither to-go-out onto land nor in the-ship
subsistere audebat identidem praesentibus graviora, quae
to-stay dared again-and-again than-the-present heavier-things which
sequerentur, expectans. Vix, quae perpetiebantur, videre
might-follow expecting scarcely what they-were-suffering to-see
ipsos credebant, in sicco naufragia, in amni mare. Nec
themselves they-believed on dry-land shipwrecks in a-river the-sea nor
finis malorum: quippe aestum paulo post mare relaturum,
the-end of-evils for the-tide a-little after the-sea going-to-bring-back
quo navigia adlevarentur, ignari famem et ultima sibimet
by-which the-ships might-be-lifted ignorant famine and the-worst for-themselves

ominabantur. Beluae quoque fluctibus destitutae terribiles
they-were-foreboding monsters also by-the-waves stranded terrible
vagabantur. Iamque nox adpetebat, et regem quoque
were-roaming and-now night was-approaching and the-king also
desperatio salutis aegritudine adfecerat. Non tamen invictum
despair of-safety with-distress had-affected not yet the-unconquered
animum curae obruunt, quin tota nocte persederet in
spirit cares overwhelm so-that-not the-whole night he-should-sit-on at
speculis equitesque praemitteret ad os amnis, ut, cum
the-lookouts and-horsemen send-ahead to the-mouth of-the-river that when
mare rursus exaestuare sensissent, praecederent. Navigia
the-sea again to-surge they-should-have-felt they-should-go-before the-ships
quoque et lacerata refici et eversa fluctibus erigi
also and torn to-be-repaired and overturned by-the-waves to-be-raised
iubet paratosque esse et intentos, cum rursus mare terras
he-orders and-prepared to-be and intent when again the-sea the-lands
inundasset. Tota ea nocte inter vigilias adhortationesque
should-flood with-the-whole that night amid watches and-exhortations
consumpta celeriter et equites ingenti cursu refugere et
spent quickly both the-horsemen at-huge speed fled-back and
secutus est aestus. Qui primo aquis leni tractu
followed has the-tide which at-first with-the-waters with-gentle draft
subeuntibus coepit levare navigia, mox totis campis inundatis
coming-up began to-lift the-ships soon with-all plains flooded
etiam inpulit classem. Plaususque militum nauticorumque
even drove the-fleet and-the-applause of-the-soldiers and-sailors
insperatam salutem inmodico celebrantium gaudio litoribus
their-unhoped-for safety with-immoderate celebrating joy with-the-shores
ripisque resonabat. Unde tantum redisset subito mare, quo
and-banks was-resounding whence so-great had-returned suddenly the-sea whither
pridie refugisset, quaenam esset eiusdem elementi natura
the-day-before it-had-fled-back what was of-the-same element the-nature

modo discors, modo imperio temporum obnoxia, mirabundi
now discordant now to-the-command of-the-times subject wondering
requirebant. Rex cum ex eo, quod acciderat, coniectaret
they-asked the-king when from that which had-happened he-guessed
post solis ortum statum tempus esse, media nocte,
after of-the-sun the-rising the-set time to-be in-the-middle-of the-night
ut aestum occuparet, cum paucis navigiis secundo amne
that the-tide he-might-forestall with few ships down-the-current river
defluxit evectusque os eius CCCC stadia processit
floated-down and-having-passed-out the-mouth of-it four-hundred stades he-advanced
in mare tandem voti sui compos. Praesidibusque et maris
into the-sea at-last of-wish his-own master and-to-the-guardians both of-the-sea
et locorum dis sacrificio facto ad classem rediit.
and of-the-places to-the-gods with-a-sacrifice made to the-fleet he-returned

X · THE DESERT MARCH

Alexander sends Nearchus and Onesicritus to explore the Ocean and leads the army by land through the Arabitae, the Cedrosii, the Horitae, and the coastal Indians who live on fish; hunger and disease strew the plains with the dying, who are abandoned. Alexander sends for supplies and rests the army in fertile Cedrosia. In Carmania he leads a seven-day drunken procession in imitation of Father Liber, and then has Astaspes put to death.

Hinc adversum flumen subit classis et altero die adpulsa
from-here against the-river comes-up the-fleet and on-the-second day brought-in
est haud procul lacu salso, cuius incognita natura plerosque
was not far-from a-lake salt whose unknown nature most
decepit temere ingressos aquam. Quippe scabies corpora
deceived rashly having-entered the-water for scab their-bodies
invasit, et contagium morbi etiam in alios vulgatum est.
invaded and the-contagion of-the-disease even to others spread was

Oleum remedio fuit. Leonnato deinde praemisso, ut puteos
oil a-remedy was with-Leonnatus then sent-ahead that wells
foderet, qua terrestri itinere ducturus exercitum videbatur —
he-should-dig where by-the-land route going-to-lead the-army he-seemed
quippe sicca erat regio—, ipse cum copiis subsistit vernum
for dry was the-region himself with the-forces halts the-spring
tempus expectans. Interim et urbes plerasque condidit et
time awaiting meanwhile both cities many he-founded and
Nearcho atque Onesicrito nauticae rei peritis imperavit, ut
to-Nearchus and Onesicritus in-nautical matters skilled ordered that
validissimas navium deducerent in Oceanum progressique,
the-strongest of-the-ships they-should-lead-down into the-Ocean and-having-advanced
quoad tuto possent, naturam maris noscerent: vel eodem
as-far-as safely they-could the-nature of-the-sea should-learn either by-the-same
amne vel Euphrate subire eos posse, cum reverti ad
river or by-the-Euphrates to-come-up them to-be-able when to-return to
se vellent. Iamque mitigata hieme et navibus, quae
him they-should-wish and-now with-softened the-winter and with-the-ships which
inutiles videbantur, crematis terra ducebat exercitum.
useless seemed burned by-land he-was-leading the-army
Nonis castris in regionem Arabiton, inde totidem
at-the-ninth camps into the-region of-the-Arabitae from-there in-as-many
diebus in Cedrosiorum perventum est. Liber hic populus
days into of-the-Cedrosii come it-was free this people
concilio habito dedidit se, nec quicquam deditis
with-a-council held surrendered itself nor anything to-the-surrendered
praeter commeatus imperatum est. Quinto hinc die venit
except supplies ordered was on-the-fifth from-here day he-came
ad flumen: Arabum incolae appellant. Regio deserta et
to the-river Arabus the-inhabitants call-it a-region deserted and
aquarum inops excipit: quam emensus in Horitas transit.
of-waters destitute receives-him which having-traversed into the-Horitae he-crosses

Ibi maiorem exercitus partem Hephaestioni tradidit, levem
there the-greater of-the-army part to-Hephaestion he-handed-over the-light
armaturam cum Ptolomaeo Leonnatoque partitus est. Tria
armor with Ptolemy and-Leonnatus divided he-has three
simul agmina populabantur Indos, magnaeque praedae actae
at-once columns were-ravaging the-Indians and-great plunders driven
sunt: maritimos Ptolomaeus, ceteros ipse rex et ab alia
were the-coastal Ptolemy the-others himself the-king and from another
parte Leonnatus urebant. In hac quoque regione urbem
side Leonnatus were-burning in this too region a-city
condidit, deductique sunt in eam Arachosii. Hinc pervenit
he-founded and-settled were into it Arachosians from-here he-came
ad maritimos Indos. Desertam vastamque regionem late
to the-coastal Indians deserted and-vast a-region widely
tenent ac ne cum finitimis quidem ullo commercii iure
they-hold and not with the-neighbors even by-any of-commerce right
miscentur. Ipsa solitudo natura quoque inmitia efferavit
are-mingled the-very solitude by-nature also harsh has-made-savage
ingenia: prominent ungues numquam recisi, comae hirsutae
the-dispositions jut-out nails never cut the-hair shaggy
et intonsae sunt. Tuguria conchis et ceteris purgamentis
and unshorn are huts with-shells and other refuse
maris instruunt. Ferarum pellibus tecti piscibus sole
of-the-sea they-build of-wild-beasts with-skins covered on-fish by-the-sun
duratis et maiorum quoque beluarum, quas fluctus eiecit,
dried and of-larger also beasts which the-waves cast-up
carne vescuntur. Consumptis igitur alimentis Macedones
on-the-flesh they-feed with-used-up therefore the-provisions the-Macedonians
primo inopiam, deinde ad ultimum famem sentire coeperunt
first want then at the-last famine to-feel began
radices palmarum — namque sola ea arbor gignitur — ubique
the-roots of-palms for alone that tree grows everywhere

rimantes. Et cum haec quoque alimenta defecerant, iumenta
searching-for and when these also foods had-failed the-pack-animals
caedere adgressi ne equis quidem abstinebant. Et
to-slaughter having-set-about not from-the-horses even they-refrained and
cum deessent, quae sarcinas veherent, spolia de hostibus,
when were-lacking those-which the-baggage might-carry the-spoils from the-enemy
propter quae ultima Orientis peragraverant, cremabant
for which the-farthest-parts of-the-East they-had-traversed they-were-burning
incendio. Famem deinde pestilentia secuta est. Quippe
with-fire the-famine then a-pestilence followed has for
insalubrium ciborum noxii suci, ad hoc itineris labor et
of-unwholesome foods the-harmful juices to this of-the-march the-toil and
aegritudo animi vulgaverant morbos, et nec manere sine
the-sickness of-mind had-spread diseases and neither to-stay without
clade nec progredi poterant: manentes fames, progressos
disaster nor to-advance could those-staying famine those-advancing
acrior pestilentia urguebat. Ergo strati erant campi paene
sharper pestilence pressed therefore strewn were the-plains almost
pluribus semivivis quam cadaveribus. Ac ne levius quidem
with-more half-alive than corpses and not the-more-lightly even
aegri sequi poterant: quippe agmen raptim agebatur
sick to-follow could for the-column hurriedly was-being-driven
tantum singulis ad spem salutis ipsos proficere credentibus,
so-much with-each for the-hope of-safety themselves to-profit believing
quantum itineris festinando praeciperent. Igitur, qui
as-much of-the-route by-hurrying they-gained-in-advance therefore those-who
defecerant, notos ignotosque, ut adlevarentur, orabant: sed
had-collapsed acquaintances and-strangers that they-might-be-lifted begged but
nec iumenta erant, quibus excipi possent, et miles
neither pack-animals were by-which to-be-taken-up they-could and the-soldier
vix arma portabat, inminentisque et ipsis facies mali
scarcely his-arms was-carrying and-impending too to-themselves the-face of-the-evil

ante oculos erat. Ergo saepius revocati ne respicere quidem
before their-eyes was therefore more-often called-back not to-look-back even
suos sustinebant misericordia in formidinem versa.
at-their-own they-could-bear with-pity into fear turned
Illi relicti deos testes et sacra communia regisque
they left-behind the-gods as-witnesses and the-rites common and-of-the-king
inplorabant opem, cumque frustra surdas aures fatigarent, in
were-imploring the-help and-when in-vain deaf ears they-wearied into
rabiem desperatione versi parem suo exitum similesque
madness by-despair turned equal to-their-own an-end and-like
ipsis amicos et contubernales precabantur. Rex dolore
to-themselves friends and tent-mates they-were-praying-for the-king by-grief
simul ac pudore anxius, quia causa tantae cladis ipse
at-once and shame troubled because the-cause of-so-great a-disaster himself
esset, ad Phrataphernen, Parthyaeorum satrapen, misit, qui
he-was to Phrataphernes of-the-Parthyaeans the-satrap sent one-who
iuberet camelis cocta cibaria adferri, aliosque finitimarum
should-order on-camels cooked provisions to-be-brought and-other of-the-neighboring
regionum praefectos certiores necessitatis suae fecit. Nec
regions governors informed of-necessity his-own he-made nor
cessatum est ab his. Itaque fame dumtaxat vindicatus
slackened was by these and-so from-famine only rescued
exercitus tandem in Cedrosiae fines perducitur. Omnium
the-army at-last into of-Cedrosia the-territory is-led of-all
rerum solo fertili regio est: in qua stativa habuit,
things in-soil fertile the-region is in which a-standing-camp he-held
ut vexatos milites quiete firmaret. Hic Leonnati
that the-harassed soldiers with-rest he-might-strengthen here of-Leonnatus
litteras accepit conflixisse ipsum cum VIII milibus peditum
a-letter he-received to-have-fought himself with eight thousand of-infantry
et CCCC equitibus Horitarum prospero eventu. A
and four-hundred horsemen of-the-Horitae with-prosperous outcome from

Cratero quoque nuntius venit Ozinen et Zariaspen, nobilis
Craterus also a-message came Ozines and Zariaspes noble
Persas, defectionem molientes oppressos a se in vinculis
Persians a-revolt plotting crushed by himself in chains
esse. Praeposito igitur regioni Sibyrtio — namque Menon,
to-be with-set-over therefore the-region Sibyrtius for Menon
praefectus eius, nuper interierat morbo — in Carmaniam
the-governor of-it recently had-died of-disease into Carmania
ipse processit. Astaspes erat satrapes gentis, suspectus res
himself advanced Astaspes was the-satrap of-the-nation suspected affairs
novare voluisse, dum in India rex est: quem occurrentem
to-overturn to-have-wished while in India the-king is whom meeting-him
dissimulata ira comiter adlocutus, dum exploraret, quae
with-hidden anger affably having-addressed while he-might-investigate what
delata erant, in eodem honore habuit. Cum inde praefecti,
reported had-been in the-same honor he-held when from-there the-governors
sicut imperatum erat, equorum iumentorumque iugalium
as ordered it-had-been of-horses and-of-beasts yoked
vim ingentem ex omni, quae sub imperio erat, regione
a-mass huge from every which under command was region
misissent, quibus deerant inpedimenta, restituit. Arma
had-sent to-whom were-lacking baggage-animals he-restored the-arms
quoque ad pristinum refecta sunt cultum: quippe haud procul
also to the-former repaired were splendor for not far
a Perside aberant non pacata modo, sed etiam opulenta.
from Persis they-were-distant not pacified only but also wealthy
Igitur, ut supra dictum est, aemulatus Patris Liberi
therefore as above said it-has-been having-emulated of-Father Liber
non gloriam solum, quam ex illis gentibus deportaverat, sed
not the-glory only which from those nations he-had-carried-off but
etiam pompam, sive illud triumphus fuit ab eo primum
also the-procession whether that a-triumph was by him first

institutus sive bacchantium lusus, statuit imitari animo
instituted or of-bacchants the-sport he-resolved to-imitate with-mind
super humanum fastigium elato. Vicos, per quos iter
above human height lifted the-villages through which the-route
erat, floribus coronisque sterni iubet, liminibus aedium
was with-flowers and-garlands to-be-strewn he-orders on-the-thresholds of-the-houses
creterras vino repletas et alia eximiae magnitudinis vasa
mixing-bowls with-wine filled and other of-outstanding size vessels
disponi, vehicula deinde constrata, ut plures capere milites
to-be-set-out the-wagons then covered that more to-hold soldiers
possent, in tabernaculorum modum ornari, alia candidis
they-might-be-able in of-tents the-manner to-be-adorned some with-white
velis, alia veste pretiosa. Primi ibant amici et cohors
sails others with-cloth costly first went the-friends and the-cohort
regia variis redimita floribus coronisque: alibi tibicinum
royal with-various wreathed flowers and-garlands here of-flute-players
cantus, alibi lyrae sonus audiebatur: item vehiculis
the-song there of-the-lyre the-sound was-heard likewise with-wagons
pro copia cuiusque adornatis comissabundus exercitus
according-to the-means of-each adorned reveling the-army
armis, quae maxime decora erant, circumpendentibus. Ipsum
with-arms which most handsome were hanging-around himself
convivasque currus vehebat creterris aureis eiusdemque
and-his-fellow-diners a-chariot was-carrying with-mixing-bowls golden and-of-the-same
materiae ingentibus poculis praegravis. Hoc modo per dies
material with-huge cups weighed-down in-this way for days
VII bacchabundum agmen incessit, parata praeda, si quid
seven the-reveling column advanced a-ready prey if any
victis saltem adversus comissantes animi fuisset: mille,
to-the-conquered at-least against the-revelers of-spirit had-been a-thousand
hercule, viri modo et sobrii VII dierum crapula graves in
by-Hercules men only and sober of-seven days by-the-debauch heavy in

suo triumpho capere potuerunt. Sed fortuna, quae rebus
their-own triumph to-capture could but fortune which to-things
famam pretiumque constituit, hoc quoque militiae probrum
fame and-price assigns this also of-soldiering disgrace
vertit in gloriam. Et praesens aetas et posteritas deinde
turned into glory both the-present age and posterity afterward
mirata est per gentes nondum satis domitas incessisse
wondered has through nations not-yet enough tamed to-have-marched
temulentos barbaris, quod temeritas erat, fiduciam esse
drunk with-the-barbarians what rashness was confidence to-be
credentibus. Hunc apparatum carnifex sequebatur: quippe
believing this pageant the-executioner followed for
satrapes Astaspes, de quo ante dictum est, interfici
the-satrap Astaspes about whom before said it-has-been to-be-killed
iussus est: adeo nec luxuriae quicquam crudelitas nec
ordered was so neither to-luxury anything cruelty nor
crudelitati luxuria obstat.
to-cruelty luxury stands-in-the-way

BOOK X

I · ORSINES

Cleander and the other murderers of Parmenio are punished for their crimes in the provinces. Nearchus and Onesicritus report on the Ocean, and Alexander dreams of conquering Africa and the West. At Pasargadae he opens the tomb of Cyrus and finds no treasure, only a rotten shield, two bows, and a scimitar; the eunuch Bagoas turns him against the satrap Orsines, who is put to death. News comes of Zopyrion's death among the Getae and of a Thracian revolt; here the text breaks off.

Isdem fere diebus Cleander et Sitalces et cum Agathone
on-the-same about days Cleander and Sitalces and with Agathon
Heracon superveniunt, qui Parmenionem iussu regis
Heracon arrive who Parmenio by-order of-the-king
occiderant. V milia peditum cum equitibus M, sed et
had-killed five thousand of-infantry with horsemen a-thousand but also
accusatores eos e provincia, cui praefuerant, sequebantur.
accusers them from the-province which they-had-governed were-following
Nec tot facinora, quot admiserant, conpensare poterat
nor so-many crimes as they-had-committed to-offset could
caedis perquam gratae regi ministerium. Quippe
of-the-murder very welcome to-the-king the-service for
cum omnia profana spoliassent, ne sacris quidem
when all-things profane they-had-plundered not from-sacred-things even
abstinuerant, virginesque et principes feminarum stupra
had-they-refrained and-maidens and the-chief of-women outrages
perpessae corporum ludibria deflebant. Invisum Macedonum
having-suffered of-their-bodies the-mockeries were-lamenting hateful of-the-Macedonians
nomen avaritia eorum ac libido barbaris fecerat. Inter
the-name the-greed of-them and lust to-the-barbarians had-made among
omnes tamen eminebat Cleandri furor, qui nobilem
all yet stood-out of-Cleander the-madness who a-noble

virginem constupratam servo suo pelicem dederat.
maiden violated to-a-slave his-own as-a-concubine had-given
Plerique amicorum Alexandri non tam criminum, quae
most of-the-friends of-Alexander not so-much of-the-crimes which
palam obiciebantur, atrocitatem, quam memoriam occisi per
openly were-being-charged the-atrocity as the-memory killed through
illos Parmenionis, quod tacitum prodesse reis apud
them of-Parmenio which unspoken to-help the-accused with
regem poterat, intuebantur laeti reccidisse iram in
the-king could were-regarding glad to-have-fallen-back the-wrath onto
irae ministros nec ullam potentiam scelere quaesitam
of-wrath the-ministers nor any power by-crime sought
cuiquam esse diuturnam. Rex cognita causa pronuntiavit ab
for-anyone to-be lasting the-king with-learned the-case pronounced by
accusatoribus unum et id maximum crimen esse praeteritum,
the-accusers one and that the-greatest charge to-be passed-over
desperationem salutis suae: numquam enim talia ausuros,
despair of-safety his-own never for such-things going-to-dare
qui ipsum ex India sospitem aut optassent reverti aut
those-who him from India safe either had-wished to-return or
credidissent reversurum. Igitur hos quidem vinxit, DC
had-believed going-to-return therefore these indeed he-bound six-hundred
autem militum, qui saevitiae eorum ministri fuerant,
however of-the-soldiers who of-the-cruelty their the-ministers had-been
interfici iussit. Eodem die sumptum est supplicium de
to-be-killed he-ordered on-the-same day exacted was the-punishment from
iis quoque, quos auctores defectionis Persarum Craterus
those also whom as-the-authors of-the-revolt of-the-Persians Craterus
adduxerat. Haud multo post Nearchus et Onesicritus, quos
had-brought not much later Nearchus and Onesicritus whom
longius in Oceanum procedere iusserat, superveniunt.
farther into the-Ocean to-advance he-had-ordered arrive

Nuntiabant autem quaedam audita, alia conperta: insulam
they-reported moreover some-things heard others ascertained an-island
ostio amnis obiectam auro abundare, inopem equorum
at-the-mouth of-the-river lying-before with-gold to-abound destitute of-horses
esse — singulos eos conpererant ab iis, qui ex continenti
to-be each them they-had-learned by those who from the-mainland
traicere auderent, singulis talentis emi—, plenum esse
to-cross dared at-one-each talents to-be-bought full to-be
beluarum mare: aestu secundo eas ferri magnarum
of-monsters the-sea by-the-tide following them to-be-carried of-great
navium corpora aequantes, tubae cantu deterritas sequi
ships the-bodies equaling of-the-trumpet by-the-blast frightened-off to-follow
classem cum magno aequoris strepitu velut demersa navigia
the-fleet with great of-the-surface din as-if sunk ships
subisse aquas. Cetera incolis crediderant, inter
to-have-gone-under the-waters the-rest to-the-inhabitants they-had-believed among
quae: Rubrum mare non a colore undarum, ut plerique
which the-Red sea not from the-color of-the-waves as most
crederent, sed ab Erythro rege appellari: esse haud procul
might-believe but from Erythrus the-king to-be-called to-be not far
a continenti insulam palmetis frequentibus consitam et
from the-mainland an-island with-palm-groves dense planted and
in medio fere nemore columnam eminere, Erythri regis
in the-middle about of-the-grove a-column to-stand-out of-Erythrus the-king
monumentum, litteris gentis eius scriptam. Adiciebant
a-monument in-the-letters of-the-nation his written they-added
navigia, quae lixas mercatoresque vexissent, famam auri
ships which sutlers and-merchants had-carried the-report of-gold
secutis gubernatoribus in insulam esse transmissa
with-following the-pilots onto the-island to-have-been taken-across
nec deinde ab iis postea visa. Rex cognoscendi plura
nor thereafter by them afterward seen the-king of-learning more

cupidine accensus rursus eos terram legere iubet, donec
by-desire fired again them the-land to-skirt orders until
ad Euphratis os adpellerent classem: inde adverso
at of-the-Euphrates the-mouth they-should-bring-in the-fleet from-there against
amne Babylona subituros. Ipse animo infinita conplexus
the-river to-Babylon going-to-come-up himself in-mind boundless-things embracing
statuerat omni ad orientem maritima regione perdomita ex
had-resolved with-every to the-east coastal region subdued from
Syria petere Africam, Carthagini infensus, inde Numidiae
Syria to-make-for Africa to-Carthage hostile then of-Numidia
solitudinibus peragratis cursum Gadis dirigere — ibi namque
with-the-deserts traversed his-course to-Gades to-direct there for
columnas Herculis esse fama vulgaverat—, Hispanias deinde,
the-pillars of-Hercules to-be report had-spread the-Spains then
quas Hiberiam Graeci a flumine Hibero vocabant, adire
which Hiberia the-Greeks from the-river Hiberus called to-approach
et praetervehi Alpes Italiaeque oram, unde in Epirum
and to-sail-past the-Alps and-of-Italy the-coast whence to Epirus
brevis cursus est. Igitur Mesopotamiae praetoribus imperavit
a-short course is therefore of-Mesopotamia the-governors he-ordered
materia in Libano monte caesa devectaque ad urbem
with-timber on Lebanon mountain cut and-carried-down to a-city
Syriae Thapsacum septingentarum carinas navium ponere:
of-Syria Thapsacus of-seven-hundred the-keels of-ships to-lay
septemremis omnes esse deducique Babylona. Cypriorum
seven-bankers all to-be and-to-be-brought-down to-Babylon of-the-Cypriots
regibus imperatum, ut aes stuppamque et vela praeberent.
to-the-kings ordered-it-was that bronze and-tow and sails they-should-supply
Haec agenti Pori et Taxilis regum litterae traduntur,
these-things to-him-doing of-Porus and of-Taxiles the-kings letters are-delivered
Abisaren morbo, Philippum, praefectum ipsius, ex vulnere
Abisares by-disease Philip the-governor his-own from a-wound

interisse oppressosque, qui vulnerassent eum. Igitur
to-have-died and-crushed those-who had-wounded him therefore
Philippo substituit Eudaemonem — dux erat Thracum—,
for-Philip he-substituted Eudaemon the-leader he-was of-the-Thracians
Abisaris regnum filio eius attribuit. Ventum est deinde
of-Abisares the-kingdom to-the-son his he-assigned come it-was then
Parsagada: Persica est gens, cuius satrapes Orsines erat,
to-Pasargadae a-Persian it-is nation whose satrap Orsines was
nobilitate ac divitiis inter omnes barbaros eminens. Genus
in-nobility and wealth among all the-barbarians outstanding his-descent
ducebat a Cyro, quondam rege Persarum: opes et
he-drew from Cyrus once king of-the-Persians wealth both
a maioribus traditas habebat et ipse longa imperii
from his-ancestors handed-down he-had and himself by-long of-command
possessione cumulaverat. Is regi cum omnis generis donis,
possession had-heaped-up he to-the-king with of-every kind gifts
non ipsi modo ea, sed etiam amicis eius daturus,
not to-himself only them but also to-the-friends his going-to-give
occurrit. Equorum domiti greges sequebantur currusque
went-to-meet of-horses tamed herds followed and-chariots
argento et auro adornati, pretiosa supellex et nobiles
with-silver and gold adorned costly furniture and noble
gemmae, aurea magni ponderis vasa vestesque purpureae
gems golden of-great weight vessels and-robes purple
et signati argenti talentum III milia. Ceterum tanta
and of-coined silver of-talents three thousand but so-great
benignitas barbaro causa mortis fuit. Nam cum omnes
generosity to-the-barbarian the-cause of-death was for when all
amicos regis donis super ipsorum vota coluisset, Bagoae
the-friends of-the-king with-gifts beyond their-own wishes he-had-courted to-Bagoas
spadoni, qui Alexandrum obsequio corporis devinxerat
the-eunuch who Alexander by-the-compliance of-his-body had-bound

sibi, nullum honorem habuit admonitusque a quibusdam
to-himself no honor he-paid and-warned by some
Bagoam Alexandro cordi esse respondit, amicos regis, non
Bagoas to-Alexander dear to-be he-answered the-friends of-the-king not
scorta se colere nec moris esse Persis, mares ducere, qui
harlots he to-court nor of-custom to-be for-the-Persians males to-take who
stupro effeminarentur. His auditis spado potentiam
by-defilement were-unmanned with-these-things heard the-eunuch his-power
flagitio et dedecore quaesitam in caput nobilissimi et
by-vice and disgrace acquired against the-head of-the-most-noble and
insontis exercuit. Namque gentis eiusdem levissimos
blameless-man exercised for of-the-nation the-same the-most-worthless
falsis criminibus clam struxit, monitos tum demum ea
with-false charges secretly he-equipped warned then at-last those-things
deferre, cum ipse iussisset. Interim, quotiens sine
to-report when he-himself should-have-ordered meanwhile whenever without
arbitris erat, credulas regis aures inplebat, dissimulans
witnesses he-was the-credulous of-the-king ears he-was-filling concealing
causam irae, quo gravior criminantis auctoritas esset.
the-cause of-his-anger that weightier of-the-accuser the-authority might-be
Nondum suspectus erat Orsines, iam tamen vilior: reus
not-yet suspect was Orsines already yet cheaper as-a-defendant
enim in secreto agebatur latentis periculi ignarus. Et
for in secret he-was-being-arraigned of-the-hidden danger ignorant and
inportunissimum scortum ne in stupro quidem et dedecoris
the-most-shameless harlot not in defilement even and of-disgrace
patientia fraudis oblitum, quotiens amorem regis in se
the-submission of-fraud forgetful whenever the-love of-the-king toward himself
accenderat, Orsinen modo avaritiae, interdum etiam defectionis
he-had-kindled Orsines now of-avarice sometimes even of-revolt
arguebat. Iam matura erant in perniciem innocentis mendacia,
accused now ripe were for the-ruin of-the-innocent the-lies

et fatum, cuius inevitabilis sors est, adpetebat. Forte enim
and fate whose inescapable lot is was-approaching by-chance for
sepulchrum Cyri Alexander iussit aperiri, in quo erat
the-tomb of-Cyrus Alexander ordered to-be-opened in which was
conditum eius corpus, cui dare volebat inferias. Auro
buried his body to-which to-give he-wished funeral-offerings with-gold
argentoque conditorium repletum esse crediderat — quippe ita
and-silver the-vault filled to-be he-had-believed for so
fama Persae vulgaverant—, sed praeter clipeum eius putrem
the-report the-Persians had-spread but besides the-shield his rotten
et arcus duos Scythicos et acinacem nihil repperit. Ceterum
and bows two Scythian and a-scimitar nothing he-found but
corona aurea inposita amiculo, cui adsuerat ipse,
with-a-crown golden placed with-the-cloak to-which was-accustomed he-himself
solium, in quo corpus iacebat, velavit miratus tanti nominis
the-throne on which the-body lay he-veiled wondering of-so-great a-name
regem tantis praeditum opibus haud pretiosius sepultum
the-king with-so-great endowed wealth not more-costly buried
esse, quam si fuisset e plebe. Proximus erat
to-have-been than if he-had-been from the-common-people nearest was
lateri spado: qui regem intuens: 'Quid mirum,' inquit, 'est
to-his-side the-eunuch who the-king looking-at what wonder he-says is-it
inania sepulchra esse regum, cum satraparum domus aurum
empty the-tombs to-be of-kings when of-satraps the-houses the-gold
inde egestum capere non possint? Quod ad me attinet,
from-there taken-out to-hold not can as-far-as to me it-relates
ipse hoc bustum antea non videram, sed ex Dareo ita
I this tomb before not had-seen but from Darius thus
accepi III milia talentum condita esse cum Cyro. Hinc illa
I-heard three thousand of-talents buried to-be with Cyrus hence that
benignitas in te, ut, quod inpune habere non poterat
generosity toward you that what with-impunity to-have not he-could

Orsines, donando etiam gratiam iniret.' Concitaverat iam
Orsines by-giving even favor he-might-gain he-had-roused already
animum in iram, cum ii, quibus negotium idem dederat,
his-mind to anger when those to-whom the-business same he-had-given
superveniunt. Hinc Bagoas, hinc ab eo subornati
arrive on-this-side Bagoas on-that-side by him suborned
falsis criminibus occupant aures. Antequam accusari se
with-false charges they-seize his-ears before to-be-accused himself
suspicaretur Orsines, in vincula est traditus. Non contentus
he-could-suspect Orsines into chains was handed-over not content
supplicio insontis spado ipse morituro
with-the-punishment of-the-blameless the-eunuch himself on-the-man-about-to-die
manum iniecit. Quem Orsines intuens: 'Audieram,' inquit, 'in
a-hand laid whom Orsines looking-at I-had-heard he-says in
Asia olim regnasse feminas: hoc vero novum est regnare
Asia once to-have-reigned women this indeed new is to-reign
castratum!' Hic fuit exitus nobilissimi Persarum nec insontis
a-castrated-man this was the-end of-the-noblest of-the-Persians not of-blameless
modo, sed eximiae quoque benignitatis in regem. Eodem
only but of-outstanding also generosity toward the-king at-the-same
tempore Phradates regnum adfectasse suspectus occiditur.
time Phradates the-kingdom to-have-aimed-at suspected is-killed
Coeperat esse praeceps ad repraesentanda supplicia, item
he-had-begun to-be headlong toward inflicting-at-once punishments likewise
ad deteriora credenda: scilicet res secundae valent
toward worse-things believing evidently things prosperous are-strong
commutare naturam, et raro quisquam erga bona sua satis
to-change nature and rarely anyone toward goods his-own enough
cautus est. Idem enim paulo ante Lyncestem Alexandrum
cautious is the-same-man for a-little before the-Lyncestian Alexander
delatum a duobus indicibus damnare non sustinuerat,
denounced by two informers to-condemn not had-endured

humiliores quoque reos contra suam voluntatem, quia
humbler also defendants against his-own will because
ceteris videbantur insontes, passus absolvi, hostibus
to-the-others they-seemed blameless had-allowed to-be-acquitted to-the-enemy
victis regna reddiderat: ad ultimum vitae tantum ab
conquered kingdoms he-had-returned at the-last of-life so-much from
semetipso degeneravit, ut invicti quondam adversus
himself he-degenerated that of-unconquered once against
libidinem animi arbitrio scorti aliis regna daret, aliis
lust of-spirit at-the-whim of-a-harlot to-some kingdoms he-gave from-others
adimeret vitam. Isdem fere diebus litteras a Coeno accipit
he-took life on-the-same about days a-letter from Coenus he-receives
de rebus in Europa et Asia gestis, dum ipse Indiam
about things in Europe and Asia done while he-himself India
subegit. Zopyrio, Thraciae praepositus, cum expeditionem in
subdued Zopyrion of-Thrace put-in-charge when an-expedition against
Getas faceret, tempestatibus procellisque subito coortis
the-Getae he-was-making by-storms and-tempests suddenly arisen
cum toto exercitu oppressus erat. Qua cognita clade
with the-whole army overwhelmed had-been with-which learned disaster
Seuthes Odrysas, populares suos, ad defectionem conpulerat.
Seuthes the-Odrysians countrymen his-own to revolt had-driven
Amissa propemodum Thracia ne Graecia quidem ***
with-lost almost Thrace not Greece even (lacuna)

Harpalus escapes to Athens and is killed in Crete. Alexander orders the Greek cities to take back their exiles and pays the soldiers' debts. When he discharges the veterans, the whole army demands discharge. He speaks in anger: they are ungrateful, he has made them rich, and they may go; he and the Persians will guard their retreat. Then he leaps from the platform and seizes thirteen ringleaders himself.

Igitur XXX navibus Sunium transmittunt — promuntorium
therefore with-thirty ships to-Sunium they-cross a-promontory
est Atticae terrae—, unde portum urbis petere decreverant.
it-is of-the-Attic land whence the-harbor of-the-city to-make-for they-had-decided
His cognitis rex Harpalo Atheniensibusque iuxta infestus
with-these learned the-king to-Harpalus and-to-the-Athenians equally hostile
classem parari iubet Athenas protinus petiturus. Quod
a-fleet to-be-prepared orders Athens at-once going-to-make-for which
consilium clam agitanti litterae redduntur Harpalum
plan secretly to-him-pondering letters are-delivered Harpalus
intrasse quidem Athenas, pecunia conciliasse sibi
to-have-entered indeed Athens with-money to-have-won to-himself
principum animos: mox concilio plebis habito iussum
of-the-chief-men the-minds soon with-an-assembly of-the-people held ordered
urbe excedere ad Graecos milites pervenisse, navibus
from-the-city to-depart to the-Greek soldiers to-have-come by-ships
inde Cretam transvectum amico quodam auctore
from-there to-Crete carried-across with-a-friend certain as-instigator
interemptum per insidias. His laetus in Europam
to-have-been-killed through a-plot at-these-things glad into Europe
traiciendi consilium omisit, sed exules praeter eos, qui civili
of-crossing the-plan he-gave-up but the-exiles except those who with-civil
sanguine aspersi erant, recipi ab omnibus Graecorum
blood stained were to-be-received-back by all of-the-Greeks

civitatibus, quis pulsi erant, iussit. Et Graeci haud
the-states from-which driven-out they-had-been he-ordered and the-Greeks not
ausi imperium aspernari, quamquam solvendarum legum id
daring the-command to-spurn although of-dissolving the-laws that
principium esse censebant, bona quoque, quae extarent,
the-beginning to-be they-judged the-goods also which were-extant
restituere damnatis. Soli Athenienses, non sui modo,
to-restore to-the-condemned alone the-Athenians not of-their-own only
sed etiam Graeciae vindices, colluvionem ordinum hominumque
but also of-Greece champions the-sweepings of-ranks and-of-men
aegre ferebant non regio imperio, sed legibus moribusque
with-difficulty bore not by-royal command but by-laws and-customs
patriis regi adsueti: prohibuere igitur exules finibus
ancestral to-be-ruled accustomed they-kept-off therefore the-exiles from-their-borders
omnia potius toleraturi quam purgamenta quondam urbis
everything rather going-to-endure than the-refuse once of-city
suae, tunc etiam exilii admitterent. Alexander senioribus
their-own then even of-exile they-should-admit Alexander with-the-older
militum in patriam remissis XIII milia peditum et
of-the-soldiers to the-fatherland sent-back thirteen thousand of-infantry and
II milia equitum, quae in Asia retineret, eligi iussit
two thousand of-horsemen which in Asia he-might-keep to-be-picked ordered
existimans modico exercitu continere posse Asiam,
thinking with-a-moderate army to-hold to-be-able Asia
quia pluribus locis praesidia disposuisset nuperque conditas
because in-several places garrisons he-had-posted and-recently founded
urbes colonis replesset res retinere cupientibus. Ceterum
cities with-colonists had-filled property to-keep desiring but
priusquam excerneret, quos erat retenturus, edixit, ut
before he-sifted-out whom he-was going-to-keep he-proclaimed that
omnes milites aes alienum profiterentur. Grave plerisque
all the-soldiers money owed should-declare heavy to-most

esse conpererat et, quamquam ipsorum luxu contractum erat,
to-be he-had-learned and although by-their-own luxury contracted it-was
dissolvere tamen ipse decreverat. Illi temptari ipsos rati,
to-pay-off yet himself he-had-resolved they to-be-tested themselves thinking
quo facilius ab integris sumptuosos discerneret, prolatando
so-that more-easily from the-sound the-extravagant he-might-distinguish by-postponing
aliquantum extraxerant temporis. Et rex satis gnarus,
a-good-deal they-had-dragged-out of-time and the-king well aware
professioni aeris pudorem, non contumaciam obstare,
to-the-declaration of-money shame not defiance to-stand-in-the-way
mensas totis castris poni iussit et X milia talentum
tables in-the-whole camp to-be-set he-ordered and ten thousand of-talents
proferri. Tum demum cum fide facta professio est.
to-be-brought-out then at-last with trust made the-declaration was
Nec amplius ex tanta pecunia quam C et XXX
nor more from so-great a-sum than a-hundred and thirty
talenta superfuere. Adeo ille exercitus, tot divitissimarum
talents were-left so that army of-so-many richest
gentium victor, plus tamen victoriae quam praedae deportavit
nations conqueror more yet of-victory than of-plunder carried-away
ex Asia. Ceterum ut cognitum est alios remitti
from Asia but when learned it-was some to-be-sent-back
domos, alios retineri, perpetuam eum regni sedem in
home others to-be-kept perpetual him of-his-reign the-seat in
Asia habiturum rati vaecordes et disciplinae militaris
Asia going-to-have thinking frenzied and of-discipline military
inmemores seditiosis vocibus castra conplent regemque
unmindful with-mutinous voices the-camp fill and-the-king
ferocius quam alias adorti omnes simul missionem
more-fiercely than at-other-times having-assailed all at-once discharge
postulare coeperunt deformia ora cicatricibus canitiemque
to-demand began disfigured faces with-scars and-the-gray

capitum ostentantes. Nec aut praefectorum castigatione aut
of-their-heads displaying nor either by-the-officers' rebuke or
verecundia regis deterriti tumultuoso clamore et militari
by-respect for-the-king deterred with-uproarious shouting and soldierly
violentia volentem loqui inhibebant, palam professi nusquam
violence him-wishing to-speak they-checked openly declaring nowhere
inde nisi in patriam vestigium esse moturos. Tandem
from-there except toward the-fatherland a-footstep to-be going-to-move at-last
silentio facto magis, quia motum esse credebant, quam
with-silence made more because moved to-be they-believed than
quia ipsi moveri poterant, quidnam acturus esset,
because themselves to-be-moved they-could what-in-the-world going-to-do he-was
expectabant, cum ille: 'Quid haec,' inquit, 'repens consternatio
they-waited when he what this he-says sudden alarm
et tam procax atque effusa licentia denuntiat? Eloqui
and so insolent and unrestrained license announces to-speak-out
metuo, palam certe: rupistis imperium, et precario rex
I-fear openly certainly you-have-broken the-command and on-sufferance king
sum, cui non adloquendi, non noscendi monendique
I-am to-whom not of-addressing not of-getting-to-know and-of-warning
aut intuendi vos ius reliquistis. Equidem cum alios
or of-looking-at you the-right you-have-left indeed when some
dimittere in patriam, alios mecum paulo post deportare
to-dismiss into the-fatherland others with-me a-little after to-take-away
statuerim, tam illos adclamantes video, qui abituri sunt,
I-have-resolved as-much those shouting I-see who going-to-depart are
quam hos, cum quibus praemissos subsequi statui. Quid
as these with whom the-ones-sent-ahead to-follow I-have-resolved what
hoc est rei? dispari in causa idem omnium clamor
this is of-the-matter unequal in case the-same of-all the-shout
est! Pervelim scire, utrum, qui discedunt, an, qui
is I-should-much-like to-know whether those-who are-leaving or those-who

retinentur, de me querantur.' Crederes uno ore omnes
are-being-kept about me complain you-would-believe with-one mouth all
sustulisse clamorem: ita pariter ex tota contione responsum
to-have-raised the-shout so equally from the-whole assembly answered
est omnes queri. Tum ille: 'Non, hercule,' inquit, 'potest
was all to-complain then he not by-Hercules he-says can
fieri, ut adducar querendi simul omnibus hanc causam
it-happen that I-be-brought of-complaining together for-all this the-cause
esse, quam ostenditis, in qua maior pars exercitus non
to-be which you-show in which the-greater part of-the-army not
est, utpote cum plures dimiserim, quam retenturus sum.
is inasmuch-as since more I-have-dismissed than going-to-keep I-am
Subest nimirum altius malum, quod omnes avertit a me.
lies-beneath doubtless a-deeper evil which all turns-away from me
Quando enim regem universus deseruit exercitus? Ne servi
when for a-king the-whole has-deserted army not slaves
quidem uno grege profugiunt dominos, sed est quidam in
even in-one flock run-away-from their-masters but is a-certain among
illis pudor a ceteris destitutos relinquendi. Verum ego tam
them shame by the-others the-abandoned of-leaving but I so
furiosae consternationis oblitus remedia insanabilibus conor
frenzied of-alarm unmindful remedies to-the-incurable try
adhibere. Omnem, hercule, spem, quam ex vobis conceperam,
to-apply all by-Hercules the-hope which from you I-had-conceived
damno nec ut cum militibus meis — iam enim esse
I-condemn nor as with soldiers my now for to-be
desistis—, sed ut cum ingratissimis operis agere decrevi.
you-cease but as with the-most-ungrateful hirelings to-deal I-have-resolved
Secundis rebus, quae circumfluunt vos, insanire coepistis
in-prosperous circumstances which flow-around you to-rave you-have-begun
obliti status eius, quem beneficio exuistis meo, digni,
forgetful of-the-state that which by-kindness you-have-put-off my worthy

hercule, qui in eodem consenescatis, quoniam facilius est vobis
by-Hercules who in the-same you-should-grow-old since easier it-is for-you
adversam quam secundam regere fortunam. En insolentiam!
adverse than prosperous to-govern fortune behold the-insolence
Illyriorum paulo ante et Persarum tributariis Asia et tot
of-Illyrians a-little before and of-Persians tributaries Asia and of-so-many
gentium spolia fastidio sunt! modo sub Philippo seminudis
nations the-spoils for-disgust are lately under Philip for-the-half-naked
amicula ex purpura sordent! aurum et argentum oculi ferre
cloaks of purple are-mean gold and silver the-eyes to-bear
non possunt! Lignea enim vasa desiderant et ex cratibus
not can wooden for vessels they-miss and of wickerwork
scuta robiginemque gladiorum. Hoc cultu nitentes vos accepi
shields and-the-rust of-swords in-this dress shining you I-received
et D talenta aeris alieni, cum omnis regia supellex
and five-hundred talents of-money owed when all royal furniture
esset haud amplius quam LX talenta, meorum mox operum
was not more than sixty talents of-my soon of-works
fundamenta. Quibus tamen — absit invidia — imperium
the-foundations to-which yet let-be-absent envy an-empire
maximae terrarum parti inposui. Asiaene pertaesum est,
over-the-greatest of-the-lands part I-have-set of-Asia wearied is-it
quae vos gloria rerum gestarum dis pares fecit? In
which you by-the-glory of-deeds done to-the-gods equal made into
Europam ire properatis rege deserto, cum pluribus
Europe to-go you-hasten with-the-king deserted when to-many
vestrum defuturum viaticum fuerit, ni aes
of-you going-to-be-lacking travel-money would-have-been unless the-money
alienum luissem, nempe in Asiatica praeda. Nec pudet
owed I-had-paid of-course from Asiatic plunder nor are-you-ashamed
profundo ventre devictarum gentium spolia circumferentes
with-bottomless belly of-the-conquered nations the-spoils carrying-around

reverti velle ad liberos coniugesque, quibus pauci praemia
to-return to-wish to children and-wives to-whom few the-rewards
victoriae potestis ostendere: nam ceterorum, dum etiam spei
of-victory can show for of-the-rest while even hope
vestrae obviam istis, arma quoque pignori sunt. Bonis vero
your to-meet you-went arms also in-pawn are good indeed
militibus cariturus sum, pelicum suarum concubinis, quibus
soldiers going-to-lack I-am of-concubines their-own to-the-bedfellows for-whom
hoc solum ex tantis opibus superest, in quod inpenditur!
this alone from so-great wealth remains on which it-is-spent
Proinde fugientibus me pateant limites! facessite hinc ocius!
therefore to-those-fleeing me let-lie-open the-borders get-away from-here quickly
ego cum Persis abeuntium terga tutabor. Neminem teneo:
I with the-Persians of-those-departing the-backs will-guard no-one I-hold
liberate oculos meos, ingratissimi cives! Laeti vos excipient
free eyes my most-ungrateful citizens gladly you will-receive
parentes liberique sine vestro rege redeuntes! obviam ibunt
parents and-children without your king returning to-meet will-go
desertoribus transfugisque! Triumphabo, mehercule, de fuga
to-the-deserters and-turncoats I-shall-triumph by-Hercules over flight
vestra et, ubicumque ero, expetam poenas hos, cum
your and wherever I-shall-be I-shall-exact punishment these with
quibus me relinquitis, colendo praeferendoque vobis. Iam
whom me you-leave by-honoring and-preferring to-you now
autem scietis, et quantum sine rege valeat exercitus,
moreover you-will-know both how-much without a-king avails an-army
et quid opis in me uno sit.' Desiluit deinde frendens de
and what of-help in me alone is he-leapt-down then gnashing from
tribunali et in medium armatorum agmen se inmisit,
the-tribunal and into the-middle of-the-armed column himself threw
notatos quoque, qui ferocissime oblocuti erant, singulos
marked also who most-fiercely spoken-against had one-by-one

manu corripuit nec ausos repugnare XIII adservandos
with-his-hand he-seized nor daring to-resist thirteen to-be-guarded
custodibus corporis tradidit.
to-the-guards of-the-body he-handed-over

III · TO THE PERSIAN SOLDIERS

The army is stunned into silence by the executions and grows only more obedient. Shut out the next day while the Asian soldiers are admitted, the Macedonians wail that they will die if the king stays angry. Alexander summons the foreign soldiers and addresses them: he has found them loyal and brave, has married the daughter of Oxyartes and the daughter of Darius, has given them Macedonian arms, and wishes Asia and Europe to be one kingdom, under one king and one law. Here the text breaks off.

Quis crederet saevam paulo ante contionem obtorpuisse
who would-believe the-savage a-little before assembly to-have-grown-numb
subito metu, etiam cum ad supplicium videret trahi
suddenly with-fear even when to punishment it-saw to-be-dragged
nihilo ausos graviora quam ceteros? Sive nominis,
by-nothing having-dared worse than the-rest whether of-the-name
quod gentes, quae sub regibus vivunt, reges inter deos
which the-nations which under kings live kings among gods
colunt, sive propria ipsius veneratio sive fiducia tanta
they-worship or the-personal his reverence or the-confidence with-such
vi exercentis imperium conterruit eos: singulare certe
force of-one-exercising command terrified them a-singular certainly
ediderunt patientiae exemplum adeoque non sunt accensi
they-gave of-patience example and-so-much not were inflamed
supplicio commilitonum, cum sub noctem interfectos
by-the-punishment of-their-comrades when toward night killed

esse cognossent, ut nihil omiserint, quod singuli magis
to-have-been they-had-learned that nothing they-omitted which individually more
oboedienter et pie facerent. Nam cum postero die
obediently and dutifully they-might-do for when on-the-next day
prohibiti aditu fuissent Asiaticis modo militibus admissis,
kept-from access they-had-been with-the-Asian only soldiers admitted
lugubrem totis castris edidere clamorem denuntiantes
a-mournful in-the-whole camp they-raised shout declaring
protinus sese morituros, si rex perseveraret irasci. At ille
at-once themselves going-to-die if the-king should-persist to-be-angry but he
pervicacis ad omnia, quae agitasset, animi peregrinorum
of-a-stubborn toward everything which he-had-pondered mind of-the-foreign
militum contionem advocari iubet Macedonibus intra castra
soldiers an-assembly to-be-called orders with-the-Macedonians within the-camp
cohibitis et, cum frequentes coissent, adhibito interprete
confined and when in-numbers they-had-assembled with-employed an-interpreter
talem orationem habuit: 'Cum ex Europa traicerem in
such a-speech he-held when from Europe I-was-crossing into
Asiam, multas nobiles gentes, magnam vim hominum imperio
Asia many noble nations a-great mass of-men to-command
meo me additurum esse sperabam. Nec deceptus sum, quod
my I going-to-add to-be I-hoped nor deceived am-I in-that
de his credidi famae. Sed ad illa hoc quoque accessit,
about these I-believed the-report but to those-things this also was-added
quod video fortes viros erga reges suos pietatis invictae.
that I-see brave men toward kings their-own of-loyalty unconquered
Luxu omni fluere credideram et nimia felicitate mergi
in-luxury every to-flow I-had-believed and by-excessive prosperity to-be-sunk
in voluptates: at, hercules, munia militiae hoc animorum
into pleasures but by-Hercules the-duties of-soldiering with-this of-minds
corporumque robore aeque inpigre toleratis et, cum fortes
and-bodies strength equally tirelessly you-endure and though brave

viri sitis, non fortitudinem magis quam fidem colitis. Hoc
men you-are not courage more than loyalty you-cultivate this
ego vero nunc primum profiteor, sed olim scio. Itaque et
I indeed now first declare but long-since I-know and-so both
dilectum e vobis iuniorum habui et vos meorum militum
a-levy from you of-the-young-men I-held and you of-my soldiers
corpori inmiscui. Idem habitus, eadem arma sunt vobis:
with-the-body I-mingled the-same dress the-same arms are to-you
obsequium vero et patientia imperii longe praestantior est
obedience indeed and endurance of-command far more-outstanding is
quam ceteris. Ergo ipse Oxyartis Persae filiam mecum
than in-the-rest therefore I-myself of-Oxyartes of-the-Persian the-daughter with-me
matrimonio iunxi non dedignatus ex captiva liberos tollere.
in-marriage joined not disdaining from a-captive children to-raise
Mox deinde cum stirpem generis mei latius propagare
soon then when the-stock of-race my more-widely to-propagate
cuperem, uxorem Darei filiam duxi proximisque amicorum
I-desired as-wife of-Darius the-daughter I-took and-to-the-nearest of-the-friends
auctor fui ex captivis generandi liberos, ut hoc sacro
the-adviser I-was from captives of-begetting children that by-this sacred
foedere omne discrimen victi et victoris excluderem.
bond every distinction of-conquered and of-conqueror I-might-shut-out
Proinde genitos esse vos mihi, non ascitos milites credite!
therefore born to-be you to-me not adopted soldiers believe
Asiae et Europae unum atque idem regnum est, Macedonum
of-Asia and of-Europe one and the-same kingdom is of-the-Macedonians
vobis arma do, inveteravi peregrinam novitatem: et cives
to-you the-arms I-give I-have-made-old the-foreign novelty and citizens
mei estis et milites. Omnia eundem ducunt colorem: nec
my you-are and soldiers all-things the-same take-on color nor
Persis Macedonum morem adumbrare nec Macedonibus
for-the-Persians of-the-Macedonians the-custom to-copy nor for-the-Macedonians

Persas imitari indecorum. Eiusdem iuris esse debent, qui
the-Persians to-imitate unbecoming of-the-same right to-be ought those-who
sub eodem rege victuri sunt.' ***
under the-same king going-to-live are (lacuna)

IV · A SOLDIER'S PROTEST

One of the condemned rebukes Alexander for letting Persians lead Macedonians to execution. In his anger Alexander orders them drowned. Even this does not stir the army to mutiny: the companies go to its commanders and his friends, asking that he order killed any he still thinks guilty, and offer their own bodies to his anger. Here the text breaks off.

'Quousque,' inquit, 'animo tuo etiam per supplicia et quidem
how-long he-says to-mind your even through punishments and indeed
externi moris obsequeris? Milites tui, cives tui incognita causa
of-foreign custom will-you-defer soldiers your citizens your with-unheard the-case
et captivis suis ducentibus trahuntur ad poenam. Si
and with-captives their-own leading are-being-dragged to punishment if
mortem meruisse iudicas, saltem ministros supplicii muta.'
death to-have-deserved you-judge at-least the-ministers of-punishment change
Amico animo, si veri patiens fuisset, admonebatur, sed
in-a-friendly spirit if of-truth tolerant he-had-been he-was-being-warned but
in rabiem ira pervenerat. Itaque rursus — nam parumper,
into madness his-anger had-come and-so again for for-a-moment
quibus imperatum erat, dubitaverant — mergi in
those-to-whom ordered it-had-been had-hesitated to-be-drowned in
amnem, sicut vincti erant, iussit. Ne hoc quidem supplicium
the-river as bound they-were he-ordered not this even punishment
seditionem militum movit. Namque copiarum duces atque
the-mutiny of-the-soldiers moved for of-the-forces the-leaders and

amicos eius manipuli adeunt petentes, ut, si quos adhuc
friends his the-companies approach asking that if any still
pristina noxa iudicaret esse contactos, iuberet interfici.
by-former guilt he-judged to-be tainted he-should-order to-be-killed
Offerre se corpora irae: trucidaret. ∗∗∗
to-offer themselves their-bodies to-his-anger let-him-slaughter (lacuna)

V · THE DEATH OF ALEXANDER

The soldiers file past the dying king. He gives his ring to Perdiccas and, asked to whom he leaves the kingdom, answers: to the best. He dies. The palace and the city mourn; Darius' mother Sisigambis starves herself to death. Curtius weighs Alexander's virtues, which were his nature's, against his vices, which were fortune's and youth's.

Intuentibus lacrimae obortae praebuere speciem iam non
to-those-looking tears arisen offered the-appearance now not
regem, sed funus eius visentis exercitus: maeror tamen
the-king but the-corpse his of-visiting the-army the-grief yet
circumstantium lectum eminebat. Quos ut rex aspexit:
of-those-standing-around the-bed stood-out whom when the-king saw
'Invenietis,' inquit, 'cum excessero, dignum talibus viris
will-you-find he-says when I-shall-have-departed worthy of-such men
regem?' Incredibile dictu adituque, in eodem habitu corporis,
a-king incredible to-say and-to-hear in the-same posture of-body
in quem se conposuerat, cum admissurus milites esset,
into which himself he-had-composed when going-to-admit the-soldiers he-was
durasse, donec a toto exercitu illud ultimum persalutatus
to-have-held until by the-whole army that last-time saluted
est. Dimissoque vulgo velut omni vitae debito liberatus
was and-with-dismissed the-crowd as-if from-every of-life debt freed

fatigata membra reiecit propiusque adsidere iussis
his-tired limbs he-threw-back and-nearer to-sit with-ordered
amicis — nam et vox deficere iam coeperat — detractum
the-friends for also his-voice to-fail already had-begun drawn-off
anulum digito Perdiccae tradidit adiectis mandatis,
the-ring from-his-finger to-Perdiccas he-handed with-added instructions
ut corpus suum ad Hammonem ferri iuberent.
that the-body his-own to Ammon to-be-carried they-should-order
Quaerentibusque his, cui relinqueret regnum, respondit,
and-with-asking them to-whom he-was-leaving the-kingdom he-answered
ei, qui esset optimus: ceterum providere iam se,
to-him who should-be the-best but to-foresee already himself
ob id certamen magnos funebres ludos parari
on-account-of that contest great funeral games to-be-prepared
sibi. Rursus Perdicca interrogante, quando caelestes
for-himself again with-Perdiccas asking when heavenly
honores haberi sibi vellet, dixit, tum velle, cum ipsi
honors to-be-paid to-himself he-wished he-said then to-wish when themselves
felices essent. Suprema haec vox fuit regis, et paulo post
happy should-be last this utterance was of-the-king and a-little after
extinguitur. Ac primo ploratu lamentisque et planctibus
he-dies and at-first with-weeping and-laments and beatings-of-the-breast
tota regia personabat: mox velut in vasta solitudine
the-whole palace resounded soon as-if in a-vast solitude
omnia tristi silentio muta torpebant ad cogitationes, quid
all-things in-sad silence mute were-numb toward thoughts of-what
deinde futurum esset, dolore converso. Nobiles pueri
next going-to-be was with-the-grief turned the-noble boys
custodiae corporis eius adsueti nec doloris magnitudinem
to-the-guard of-the-body his accustomed neither of-grief the-magnitude
capere nec se ipsos intra vestibulum regiae tenere
to-contain nor themselves in-person within the-forecourt of-the-palace to-keep

potuerunt. Vagique et furentibus similes tantam urbem
could and-wandering and to-madmen like so-great a-city
luctu ac maerore conpleverant nullis questibus omissis,
with-mourning and grief had-filled with-no laments omitted
quos in tali casu dolor suggerit: ergo, qui extra
which in such a-calamity grief suggests therefore those-who outside
regiam adstiterant, Macedones pariter barbarique, concurrunt.
the-palace had-stood Macedonians equally and-barbarians run-together
Nec poterant victi a victoribus in communi dolore
nor could the-conquered from the-conquerors in common grief
discerni: Persae iustissimum ac mitissimum dominum,
be-distinguished the-Persians the-most-just and most-gentle master
Macedones optimum ac fortissimum regem invocantes
the-Macedonians the-best and bravest king invoking
certamen quoddam maeroris edebant. Nec maestorum
a-contest certain of-grief were-putting-on nor of-mourners
solum, sed etiam indignantium voces exaudiebantur, tam
only but also of-men-indignant voices were-heard so
viridem et in flore aetatis fortunaeque invidia deum
green and in the-flower of-age and-of-fortune by-the-envy of-the-gods
ereptum esse rebus humanis. Vigor eius et vultus
snatched to-have-been from-affairs human the-vigor his and the-face
educentis in proelium milites, obsidentis urbes, evadentis in
of-one-leading into battle the-soldiers besieging cities climbing onto
muros, fortes viros pro contione donantis occurrebant oculis.
walls brave men before the-assembly rewarding came-before their-eyes
Tum Macedones divinos honores negasse ei paenitebat,
then the-Macedonians divine honors to-have-denied him repented
inpiosque et ingratos fuisse se confitebantur, quod
and-impious and ungrateful to-have-been themselves they-confessed because
aures eius debita appellatione fraudassent. Et cum diu
the-ears his of-the-due title they-had-cheated and when long

nunc in veneratione, nunc in desiderio regis haesissent,
now in veneration now in longing for-the-king they-had-lingered
in ipsos versa miseratio est. Macedonia profecti ultra
onto themselves turned the-pity was from-Macedonia set-out beyond
Euphraten in mediis hostibus novum imperium aspernantibus
the-Euphrates in the-midst-of enemies the-new rule spurning
destitutos se esse cernebant: sine certo regis herede,
abandoned themselves to-be they-saw without a-certain of-the-king heir
sine herede regni publicas vires ad se quemque
without heir of-the-kingdom the-public strength to himself each
tracturum. Bella deinde civilia, quae secuta sunt, mentibus
going-to-draw wars then civil which followed have in-their-minds
augurabantur: iterum non de regno Asiae, sed de
they-foreboded again not about the-kingdom of-Asia but about
rege ipsis sanguinem esse fundendum, novis vulneribus
the-king for-them blood to-be to-be-shed by-new wounds
veteres rumpendas cicatrices: senes, debiles modo petita
the-old to-be-torn-open scars old-men feeble lately with-sought
missione a iusto rege nunc morituros pro potentia forsitan
discharge from a-just king now going-to-die for the-power perhaps
satellitis alicuius ignobilis. Has cogitationes volventibus
of-a-henchman some ignoble these thoughts to-them-turning-over
nox supervenit terroremque auxit. Milites in armis vigilabant,
night came-on and-the-terror increased the-soldiers in arms kept-watch
Babylonii alius e muris, alius culmine sui quisque
the-Babylonians one from the-walls another from-the-top his-own each
tecti prospectabant quasi certiora visuri. Nec quisquam
of-roof were-looking-out as-if surer-things going-to-see nor anyone
lumina audebat accendere et, quia oculorum cessabat usus,
lights dared to-kindle and because of-the-eyes was-idle the-use
fremitus vocesque auribus captabant ac plerumque vano
noises and-voices with-their-ears they-caught and mostly by-groundless

metu territi per obscuras semitas, alius alii occursantes,
fear terrified through dark paths one another meeting
invicem suspecti ac solliciti ferebantur. Persae comis
mutually suspect and anxious were-carried-about the-Persians with-their-hair
suo more detonsis in lugubri veste cum coniugibus
in-their-own manner cut-short in mourning dress with wives
ac liberis non ut victorem et modo hostem, sed ut
and children not as a-victor and lately an-enemy but as
gentis suae iustissimum regem vero desiderio, lugebant
of-nation their-own the-most-just king with-true longing mourned
ac sueti sub rege vivere non alium, qui imperaret
and accustomed under a-king to-live no other who should-rule
ipsis, digniorem fuisse confitebantur. Nec muris urbis
them worthier to-have-been they-confessed nor by-the-walls of-the-city
luctus continebatur, sed proximam regionem ab ea, deinde
the-mourning was-contained but the-nearest region from it then
magnam partem Asiae cis Euphraten tanti mali fama
a-great part of-Asia this-side-of the-Euphrates of-so-great an-evil the-report
pervaserat. Ad Darei quoque matrem celeriter perlata est:
had-pervaded to of-Darius also the-mother quickly carried was
abscissa ergo veste, quam induta erat, lugubrem sumpsit
with-torn therefore the-garment which clad she-was mourning-dress she-took
laceratisque crinibus humi corpus abiecit. Adsidebat ei
and-with-torn hair on-the-ground her-body she-threw sat-by her
altera ex neptibus nuper amissum Hephaestionem, cui
the-one of her-granddaughters lately lost Hephaestion to-whom
nupserat, lugens propriasque causas doloris in communi
she-had-been-married mourning and-her-own causes of-grief in the-common
maestitia retractabat. Sed omnium suorum mala Sisigambis
sorrow was-recalling but all of-her-family the-woes Sisigambis
una capiebat: illa suam, illa neptium vicem flebat.
alone took-in she her-own she her-granddaughters' lot was-weeping-for

Recens dolor etiam praeterita revocaverat. Crederes modo
the-fresh grief even the-past had-recalled you-would-believe lately
amissum Dareum et pariter miserae duorum filiorum
lost Darius and together for-the-wretched-woman of-two sons
exequias esse ducendas. Flebat simul mortuos vivosque.
the-funeral-rites to-be to-be-conducted she-wept at-once the-dead and-the-living
Quem enim puellarum acturum esse curam? quem alium
who for of-the-girls going-to-take to-be care who another
futurum Alexandrum? iterum esse se captas, iterum
going-to-be Alexander again to-be themselves captured again
excidisse regnum. Qui mortuo Dareo ipsas tueretur,
to-have-fallen-from the-kingdom who with-dead Darius them should-protect
repperisse, qui post Alexandrum respiceret, utique non
to-have-found who after Alexander would-look-to-them certainly not
reperturas. Subibat inter haec animum LXXX fratres
going-to-find there-came-upon amid these-things her-mind eighty brothers
suos eodem die ab Ocho, saevissimo regum, trucidatos
her-own on-the-same day by Ochus the-most-savage of-kings slaughtered
adiectumque stragi tot filiorum patrem, e septem
and-added to-the-slaughter of-so-many sons the-father of seven
liberis, quos genuisset ipsa, unum superesse, ipsum Dareum
children whom she-had-borne herself one to-survive himself Darius
floruisse paulisper, ut crudelius posset extingui. Ad
to-have-flourished for-a-little that more-cruelly he-might to-be-extinguished at
ultimum dolori succubuit obvolutoque capite accidentis
the-last to-grief she-succumbed and-with-wrapped-up her-head the-falling-at
genibus suis neptem nepotemque aversata cibo
knees her-own her-granddaughter and-grandson turning-away from-food
pariter abstinuit et luce. Quinto, postquam mori statuerat,
equally abstained and from-light on-the-fifth after to-die she-had-resolved
die extincta est. Magnum profecto Alexandri indulgentiae
day extinguished she-was great surely of-Alexander of-indulgence

in eam iustitiaeque in omnes captivos documentum
toward her and-of-justice toward all the-captives a-proof
est mors huius: quae cum sustinuisset post Dareum
is the-death of-her who though she-had-borne after Darius
vivere, Alexandro esse superstes erubuit. Et, hercule, iuste
to-live to-Alexander to-be surviving blushed and by-Hercules justly
aestimantibus regem liquet, bona naturae eius fuisse,
to-those-judging the-king it-is-clear the-goods of-nature his to-have-been
vitia vel fortunae vel aetatis. Vis incredibilis animi,
the-vices either of-fortune or of-age the-force incredible of-mind
laboris patientia propemodum nimia, fortitudo non inter
of-toil the-endurance almost excessive courage not among
reges modo excellens, sed inter illos quoque, quorum haec
kings only outstanding but among those also whose this
sola virtus fuit, liberalitas saepe maiora tribuens, quam a
alone virtue was generosity often greater-things bestowing than from
dis petuntur, clementia in devictos, tot regna aut
the-gods are-sought clemency toward the-conquered so-many kingdoms either
reddita, quibus ademerat bello aut dono data, mortis,
returned to-whom he-had-taken-them in-war or as-a-gift given of-death
cuius metus ceteros exanimat, perpetua contemptio, gloriae
whose the-fear the-rest unnerves perpetual contempt of-glory
laudisque ut iusto maior cupido, ita in iuvene et in
and-of-praise as than-just greater a-desire so in a-young-man and in
tantis neglegenda rebus, iam pietas erga parentes, quorum
such-great to-be-overlooked achievements then devotion toward his-parents of-whom
Olympiada inmortalitati consecrare decreverat, Philippum ultus
Olympias to-immortality to-consecrate he-had-resolved Philip avenged
erat, iam in omnes fere amicos benignitas, erga milites
he-had then toward all almost friends generosity toward the-soldiers
benivolentia, consilium par magnitudini animi et, quantam
goodwill judgment equal to-the-greatness of-mind and as-much-as

vix poterat aetas eius capere, sollertia, modus inmodicarum
scarcely could age his contain skill moderation of-immoderate
cupiditatum, veneris intra naturale desiderium usus nec
desires of-love within natural desire the-use nor
ulla nisi ex permisso voluptas ingenii profecto dotes
any except from permission pleasure of-character surely endowments
erant. Illa fortunae: dis aequare se et caelestes
were these of-fortune with-the-gods to-equal himself and heavenly
honores accersere et talia suadentibus oraculis credere et
honors to-summon and such-things urging to-oracles to-believe and
dedignantibus venerari ipsum vehementius, quam par esset,
at-those-disdaining to-worship himself more-violently than right was
irasci, in externum habitum mutare corporis cultum, imitari
to-be-angry into foreign dress to-change of-body the-attire to-imitate
devictarum gentium mores, quos ante victoriam spreverat.
of-the-conquered nations the-customs which before victory he-had-scorned
Nam iracundiam et cupidinem vini sicuti iuventa inritaverat,
for anger and desire of-wine as youth had-provoked
ita senectus mitigare potuisset. Fatendum est tamen, cum
so old-age to-soften could-have to-be-confessed it-is yet though
plurimum virtuti debuerit, plus debuisse fortunae, quam
very-much to-valor he-owed more to-have-owed to-fortune which
solus omnium mortalium in potestate habuit. Quotiens illum
alone of-all mortals in power he-had how-often him
a morte revocavit! quotiens temere in pericula vectum
from death she-called-back how-often rashly into dangers carried
perpetua felicitate protexit! Vitae quoque finem eundem illi
by-perpetual good-fortune she-protected of-life also the-end the-same to-him
quem gloriae statuit: expectavere eum fata, dum Oriente
as of-glory she-set awaited him the-fates while with-the-East
perdomito aditoque Oceano, quidquid mortalitas capiebat,
subdued and-reached the-Ocean whatever mortality could-hold

inpleret. Huic regi ducique successor quaerebatur, sed maior
he-might-fill to-this king and-leader a-successor was-being-sought but greater
moles erat, quam ut unus subire eam posset: itaque
the-mass was than that one-man to-undertake it could and-so
nomen quoque eius et fama rerum in totum propemodum
the-name also his and the-fame of-his-deeds into the-whole almost
orbem reges ac regna diffudit, clarissimique sunt habiti,
world kings and kingdoms spread and-most-famous were held
qui etiam minimae parti tantae fortunae adhaeserunt.
those-who even to-the-smallest part of-so-great a-fortune clung

VI · THE COUNCIL

The bodyguards summon the friends and commanders to the palace, soldiers crowding after. Perdiccas sets out the royal chair with Alexander's diadem, robe, arms, and ring, and proposes waiting for Roxane's child; Nearchus proposes Barsine's son; Ptolemy proposes that Alexander's council govern by majority. Aristonus proposes Perdiccas himself, who hesitates. Meleager denounces him and bursts out through the armed men, and those who made way for him follow him to the plunder of the treasury.

Ceterum Babylone — inde enim devertit oratio — corporis
but at-Babylon from-there for turned-aside the-narrative of-the-body
eius custodes in regiam principes amicorum ducesque
his the-guards into the-palace the-chief of-the-friends and-the-leaders
copiarum advocavere. Secuta est militum turba cupientium
of-the-forces summoned followed has of-soldiers a-crowd desiring
scire, in quem Alexandri fortuna esset transitura. Multi
to-know to whom of-Alexander the-fortune was going-to-pass many
duces frequentia militum exclusi regiam intrare non poterant,
leaders by-the-throng of-soldiers shut-out the-palace to-enter not could

cum praeco exceptis, qui nominatim citarentur, adire
when a-herald except those-who by-name should-be-called to-approach
prohiberet. Sed precarium spernebatur imperium. Ac primum
forbade but on-sufferance was-spurned command and first
eiulatus ingens ploratusque renovatus est, deinde futuri
wailing huge and-weeping renewed was then of-the-future
expectatio inhibitis lacrimis silentium fecit. Tunc Perdicca
expectation with-checked tears silence made then Perdiccas
regia sella in conspectum volgi data, in qua
with-the-royal chair into the-sight of-the-crowd brought-forth on which
diadema vestisque Alexandri cum armis erant, anulum sibi
the-diadem and-the-robe of-Alexander with his-arms were the-ring to-himself
pridie traditum a rege in eadem sede posuit. Quorum
the-day-before handed by the-king on the-same seat placed at-which
aspectu rursus obortae omnibus lacrimae integravere luctum,
sight again arisen to-all tears renewed the-mourning
et Perdicca: 'Ego quidem,' inquit, 'anulum, quo ille
and Perdiccas I indeed he-says the-ring with-which he
regni atque imperii res obsignare erat solitus, traditum
of-kingdom and of-empire the-affairs to-seal was accustomed handed
ab ipso mihi reddo vobis. Ceterum quamquam nulla clades
by himself to-me I-return to-you but although no disaster
huic, qua adfecti sumus, par ab iratis dis excogitari
to-this with-which stricken we-are equal by the-angry gods to-be-devised
potest, tamen magnitudinem rerum, quas egit, intuentibus
can yet the-greatness of-the-deeds which he-did to-those-regarding
credere licet, tantum virum deos adcommodasse rebus
to-believe it-is-allowed so-great a-man the-gods to-have-lent to-affairs
humanis, quarum sorte conpleta cito repeterent eum
human with-whose lot completed quickly they-might-reclaim him
suae stirpi. Proinde quoniam nihil aliud ex eo superest,
for-their-own stock therefore since nothing else of him remains

quam quod semper ab inmortalitate seducitur, corpori
than what always from immortality is-set-apart to-the-body
utique quam primum iusta solvamus haud obliti, in
at-any-rate as soon-as-possible the-rites let-us-pay not forgetful in
qua urbe, inter quos simus, quali praeside ac rege spoliati.
what city among whom we-are of-what protector and king robbed
Tractandum est, commilitones, cogitandumque, ut victoriam
to-be-discussed it-is comrades and-to-be-considered how the-victory
partam inter hos, de quibus parta est, obtinere possimus.
won among these over whom won it-was to-hold we-may-be-able
Capite opus est: hoc nominare in vestra potestate est.
a-head need there-is this to-name in your power is
Illud scire debetis, militarem sine duce turbam corpus esse
that to-know you-ought a-military without leader crowd a-body to-be
sine spiritu. Sextus mensis est, ex quo Roxane praegnans
without breath the-sixth month it-is from which Roxane pregnant
est: optamus, ut marem enitatur, cuius regnum dis
is we-pray that a-male she-may-bear whose the-kingdom with-the-gods
adprobantibus sit futurum, quandoque adoleverit.
approving may-be going-to-be whenever he-shall-have-grown-up
Interim a quibus regi velitis, destinate.' Haec Perdicca.
meanwhile by whom to-be-ruled you-wish appoint these-things Perdiccas
Tum Nearchus Alexandri modo sanguinem ac stirpem
then Nearchus of-Alexander only the-blood and stock
regiae maiestati convenire, neminem ait posse infitiari,
for-the-royal majesty to-be-fitting no-one he-says to-be-able to-deny
ceterum expectari nondum ortum regem et, qui iam
but to-be-awaited a-not-yet born king and him-who already
sit, praeteriri, nec animis Macedonum convenire nec
is to-be-passed-over neither with-the-minds of-the-Macedonians to-agree nor
tempori eorum. Esse e Barsine filium regis: huic
with-the-time their there-is from Barsine a-son of-the-king to-him

diadema dandum. Nulli placebat oratio: itaque suo more
the-diadem to-be-given to-none pleased the-speech and-so in-their-own manner
hastis scuta quatientes obstrepere perseverabant. Iamque
with-spears their-shields shaking to-make-a-din they-persisted and-now
prope ad seditionem pervenerant Nearcho pervicacius tuente
nearly to mutiny they-had-come with-Nearchus too-stubbornly defending
sententiam, cum Ptolomaeus: 'Digna prorsus est suboles,'
his-view when Ptolemy worthy surely is the-offspring
inquit, 'quae Macedonum imperet genti, Roxanes vel
he-says which of-the-Macedonians should-rule the-nation of-Roxane or
Barsines filius, cuius nomen quoque Europam discere pigebit
of-Barsine the-son whose name even Europe to-learn it-will-irk
maiore ex parte captivi! Est, cur Persas vicerimus,
the-greater for part of-a-captive is-there why the-Persians we-have-conquered
ut stirpi eorum serviamus, quod iusti illi reges, Dareus
that to-the-stock their we-may-be-slaves which just those kings Darius
et Xerxes, tot milium agminibus tantisque classibus
and Xerxes so-many of-thousands with-columns and-such-great fleets
nequiquam petiverunt? Mea sententia haec est, ut sede
in-vain sought my opinion this is that with-the-chair
Alexandri in regia posita, qui consiliis eius adhibebantur,
of-Alexander in the-palace placed those-who to-the-councils his were-admitted
coeant, quotiens in commune consulto opus fuerit,
should-assemble whenever in common deliberation need shall-have-been
eoque, quod maior pars eorum decreverit, stetur,
and-by-that which the-greater part of-them shall-have-decreed it-be-abided
duces praefectique copiarum his pareant.' Ptolomaeo
the-leaders and-commanders of-the-forces to-these should-obey with-Ptolemy
quidam, pauciores Perdiccae adsentiebantur. Tum Aristonus
some fewer with-Perdiccas agreed then Aristonus
orsus est dicere, Alexandrum consultum, cui relinqueret
begun has to-say Alexander consulted to-whom he-was-leaving

regnum, voluisse optimum deligi: iudicatum autem ab
the-kingdom to-have-wished the-best to-be-chosen judged however by
ipso optimum Perdiccam, cui anulum tradidisset. Neque
himself the-best Perdiccas to-whom the-ring he-had-handed nor
enim unum eum adsedisse morienti, sed circumferentem
for alone him to-have-sat-by the-dying-man but carrying-around
oculos ex turba amicorum delegisse, cui traderet.
his-eyes from the-crowd of-friends to-have-chosen to-whom to-hand-it
Placere igitur, summam imperii ad Perdiccam deferri. Nec
to-please therefore the-sum of-command to Perdiccas to-be-conferred nor
dubitare, quin vera censeret. Itaque universi procedere
did-they-doubt that true-things he-was-proposing and-so all to-come-forward
in medium Perdiccam et regis anulum tollere iubebant.
into the-middle Perdiccas and the-king's ring to-take-up bade
Haerebat inter cupiditatem pudoremque et, quo modestius,
he-hesitated between desire and-shame and the-more modestly
quod spectabat, adpeteret, pervicacius oblaturos esse
what he-was-aiming-at he-should-seek the-more-insistently going-to-offer-it to-be
credebat. Itaque cunctatus diuque, quid ageret, incertus ad
he-believed and-so having-delayed and-long what to-do uncertain at
ultimum tamen recessit et post eos, qui sedi erant
the-last yet he-withdrew and behind those who to-the-chair were
proximi, constitit. At Meleager, unus e ducibus, confirmato
nearest stood but Meleager one of the-leaders with-emboldened
animo, quem Perdiccae cunctatio erexerat: 'Nec di sierint,'
spirit which Perdiccas' hesitation had-roused may-not the-gods allow
inquit, 'ut Alexandri fortuna tantique regni fastigium in
he-says that of-Alexander the-fortune and-of-so-great a-kingdom the-summit onto
istos humeros ruat: homines certe non ferent. Nihil dico
those shoulders should-fall men surely not will-bear nothing I-say
de nobilioribus, quam hic est, sed de viris tantum,
about men-nobler than this-man is but about men merely

quibus invitis nihil perpeti necesse est. Nec vero interest,
against-whose will nothing to-endure necessary is nor indeed does-it-matter
Roxanes filium, quandoque genitus erit, an Perdiccan regem
Roxane's son whenever born he-shall-be or Perdiccas as-king
habeatis, cum iste sub tutelae specie regnum occupaturus
you-have since he under of-guardianship the-guise the-kingdom going-to-seize
sit. Itaque nemo ei rex placet, nisi qui nondum natus
is and-so no to-him king pleases except who not-yet born
est, et in tanta omnium festinatione non iusta modo, sed
is and in so-great of-all haste not due only but
etiam necessaria exactos menses solus expectat et iam
even necessary completed months alone he-awaits and already
divinat marem esse conceptum. Quem vos dubitetis paratum
divines a-male to-be conceived whom you would-doubt prepared
esse vel subdere? Si, me dius fidius, Alexander hunc
to-be even to-substitute if me the-god of-faith Alexander this-man
nobis regem pro se reliquisset, id solum ex iis,
to-us as-king in-place-of himself had-left that alone of those-things
quae imperasset, non faciendum esse censerem. Quin igitur
which he-had-ordered not to-be-done to-be I-should-judge why therefore
ad diripiendos thesauros discurritis? harum enim opum
to plundering the-treasures do-you-not-run-off of-these for riches
regiarum utique populus est heres.' Haec elocutus per
royal certainly the-people is the-heir these-things having-said through
medios armatos erupit, et, qui abeunti viam
the-midst-of the-armed-men he-burst-out and those-who to-him-departing a-way
dederant, ipsum ad pronuntiatam praedam sequebantur.
had-given him toward the-announced plunder were-following

A common soldier names Philip's son Arrhidaeus, Alexander's half-brother, and the infantry acclaim him king as Philip. The leaders agree to a regency for Roxane's child under Perdiccas and Leonnatus. Meleager bursts into the palace with the infantry, and fighting breaks out at Alexander's body; Perdiccas yields, and the cavalry follows Leonnatus out of the city, but Perdiccas stays behind.

Iamque armatorum circa Meleagrum frequens globus erat in
and-now of-armed-men around Meleager a-thick throng was into
seditionem ac discordiam versa contione, cum quidam
mutiny and discord with-turned the-assembly when a-certain-man
plerisque Macedonum ignotus ex infima plebe: 'Quid
to-most of-the-Macedonians unknown from the-lowest common-people what
opus est,' inquit, 'armis civilique bello habentibus regem,
need is-there he-says of-arms and-of-civil war to-men-having a-king
quem quaeritis? Arrhidaeus, Philippo genitus, Alexandri
whom you-seek Arrhidaeus by-Philip begotten of-Alexander
paulo ante regis frater, sacrorum caerimoniarumque consors
a-little before the-king the-brother of-the-rites and-ceremonies sharer
modo, nunc solus heres, praeteritur a vobis. Quo suo
lately now sole heir is-passed-over by you for-what his-own
merito? quidve fecit, cur etiam gentium communi iure
desert or-what has-he-done why even of-the-nations by-the-common right
fraudetur? Si Alexandro similem quaeritis, numquam
he-should-be-cheated if to-Alexander like you-seek never
reperietis: si proximum, hic solus est.' His auditis
will-you-find-him if the-nearest this-man alone is with-these-things heard
contio primo silentium velut iussa habuit, conclamant deinde
the-assembly at-first silence as-if ordered kept they-shout then
pariter Arrhidaeum vocandum esse mortemque meritos,
together Arrhidaeus to-be-called to-be and-death to-have-deserved

qui contionem sine eo habuissent. Tum Pithon plenus
those-who the-assembly without him had-held then Pithon full
lacrimarum orditur dicere, nunc vel maxime miserabilem
of-tears begins to-say now even most pitiable
esse Alexandrum, qui tam bonorum civium militumque
to-be Alexander who so of-good citizens and-soldiers
fructu et praesentia fraudatus esset. Nomen enim
of-the-enjoyment and presence cheated was the-name for
memoriamque regis sui tantum intuentes ad cetera
and-memory of-king their-own only regarding toward the-rest
caligare eos. Haud ambigue tum in eum, cui regnum
to-be-blind them not ambiguously then against him for-whom the-kingdom
destinabatur, ingessit probra: at, quae obiecerat, magis ipsi
was-being-destined he-heaped insults but what he-had-charged more to-himself
odium quam Arrhidaeo contemptum attulerunt. Quippe dum
hatred than to-Arrhidaeus contempt brought for while
miserentur, etiam favere coeperunt. Igitur non alium regem
they-pity even to-favor they-began therefore no other king
se quam eum, qui ad hanc spem genitus esset, passuros
themselves than him who for this hope born was going-to-allow
pertinaci adclamatione declarant vocarique Arrhidaeum
with-stubborn acclamation they-declare and-to-be-called Arrhidaeus
iubent. Quem Meleager infestus invisusque Perdiccae strenue
bid whom Meleager hostile and-hateful to-Perdiccas briskly
perducit in regiam: et milites Philippum consalutatum
leads into the-palace and the-soldiers Philip saluted
regem appellant. Ceterum haec vulgi erat vox, principum
as-king call but this of-the-crowd was the-voice of-the-chief-men
alia sententia. E quibus Pithon consilium Perdiccae exequi
another opinion of whom Pithon the-plan of-Perdiccas to-carry-out
coepit tutoresque destinat filio ex Roxane futuro
began and-guardians appoints for-the-son from Roxane going-to-be

Perdiccam et Leonnatum, stirpe regia genitos. Adiecit,
Perdiccas and Leonnatus from-stock royal born he-added
ut in Europa Craterus et Antipater res administrarent.
that in Europe Craterus and Antipater affairs should-administer
Tum iusiurandum a singulis exactum futuros in potestate
then an-oath from each exacted going-to-be in the-power
regis geniti Alexandro. Meleager — haud iniuria metu
of-the-king born to-Alexander Meleager not without-cause by-fear
supplicii territus cum suis secesserat — rursus Philippum
of-punishment terrified with his-men had-withdrawn again Philip
trahens secum inrupit regiam clamitans suffragari spei de
dragging with-him he-burst-into the-palace crying to-favor the-hope about
novo rege paulo ante conceptae robur aetatis: experirentur
the-new king a-little before conceived the-strength of-his-age they-should-test
modo stirpem Philippi, filium ac fratrem regum duorum:
only the-stock of-Philip the-son and brother of-kings two
sibimet ipsis potissimum crederent. Nullum profundum
to-themselves themselves above-all they-should-trust no deep
mare, nullum vastum fretum et procellosum tantos ciet
sea no vast strait and stormy such-great raises
fluctus, quantos multitudo motus habet, utique si nova et
waves as-great-as a-multitude movements has especially if in-new and
brevi duratura libertate luxuriat. Pauci Perdiccae modo electo,
briefly going-to-last freedom it-runs-riot few to-Perdiccas lately chosen
plures Philippo, quem spreverant, imperium dabant. Nec
more to-Philip whom they-had-spurned the-command were-giving neither
velle nec nolle quicquam diu poterant, paenitebatque modo
to-wish nor to-not-wish anything long they-could and-they-repented now
consilii, modo paenitentiae ipsius. Ad ultimum tamen in
of-their-plan now of-repentance itself at the-last yet toward
stirpem regiam inclinavere studiis. Cesserat ex contione
the-stock royal inclined in-their-zeal had-withdrawn from the-assembly

Arrhidaeus principum auctoritate conterritus, et abeunte
Arrhidaeus by-the-chief-men's authority terrified and with-departing
illo conticuerat magis quam elanguerat militaris favor: itaque
him had-fallen-silent rather than flagged the-soldiers' favor and-so
revocatus vestem fratris, eam ipsam, quae in sella posita
called-back the-robe of-his-brother that very which on the-chair placed
fuerat, induitur. Et Meleager thorace sumpto capit arma,
had-been he-puts-on and Meleager with-a-breastplate taken takes arms
novi regis satelles. Sequitur phalanx hastis clipeos
of-the-new king the-attendant follows the-phalanx with-spears their-shields
quatiens, expletura se sanguine illorum, qui adfectaverant
shaking going-to-fill itself with-the-blood of-those who had-aimed-at
nihil ad ipsos pertinens regnum. In eadem domo familiaque
nothing to themselves belonging the-kingdom in the-same house and-family
imperii vires remansuras esse gaudebant: hereditarium
of-the-empire the-strength going-to-remain to-be they-rejoiced the-hereditary
imperium stirpem regiam vindicaturam: adsuetos esse nomen
empire the-stock royal going-to-claim accustomed to-be the-name
ipsum colere venerarique, nec quemquam id capere nisi
itself to-cherish and-to-revere nor anyone it to-take except
genitum, ut regnaret. Igitur Perdicca territus conclave, in
born that he-might-reign therefore Perdiccas terrified the-chamber in
quo Alexandri corpus iacebat, obserari iubet: DC cum ipso
which of-Alexander the-body lay to-be-locked orders six-hundred with him
erant spectatae virtutis, Ptolomaeus quoque se adiunxerat
were of-proven valor Ptolemy also himself had-joined
ei puerorumque regia cohors. Ceterum haud difficulter a
to-him and-of-the-boys the-royal cohort but not with-difficulty by
tot milibus armatorum claustra perfracta sunt. Et rex
so-many thousands of-armed-men the-bars broken were and the-king
quoque inruperat stipatus satellitum turba, quorum princeps
also had-burst-in surrounded of-attendants by-a-crowd of-whom the-chief

Meleager ibat: itaque Perdicca hos, qui Alexandri corpus
Meleager went and-so Perdiccas those who of-Alexander the-body
tueri vellent, sevocat. Sed, qui inruperant, eminus tela
to-guard wished calls-aside but those-who had-burst-in from-afar weapons
in ipsum iaciebant. Multisque vulneratis tandem seniores
at himself were-hurling and-with-many wounded at-last the-older-men
demptis galeis, quo facilius nosci possent, precari
with-removed helmets that more-easily to-be-recognized they-could to-beg
eos, qui cum Perdicca erant, coepere, ut absisterent bello
those who with Perdiccas were began that they-should-desist from-war
regique et pluribus cederent. Primus Perdicca arma
and-to-the-king and to-the-greater-number yield first Perdiccas his-arms
deposuit, ceterique idem fecere. Meleagro deinde suadente,
laid-down and-the-rest the-same did with-Meleager then urging
ne a corpore Alexandri discederent, insidiis locum quaeri
not from the-body of-Alexander to-depart for-a-trap a-place to-be-sought
rati diversa regiae parte ad Euphraten fugam intendunt.
thinking by-the-opposite of-the-palace part to the-Euphrates flight they-direct
Equitatus, qui ex nobilissimis iuvenum constabat, Perdiccam
the-cavalry which of the-noblest young-men consisted Perdiccas
et Leonnatum frequens sequebatur, placebatque excedere
and Leonnatus in-numbers followed and-it-pleased to-leave
urbe et tendere in campis. Sed Perdicca ne pedites quidem
the-city and to-camp on the-plains but Perdiccas not the-infantry even
secuturos ipsum desperabat: itaque, ne abducendo equites
going-to-follow him he-despaired and-so lest by-leading-away the-horsemen
abrupisse a cetero exercitu videretur, in urbe subsistit.
to-have-broken-off from the-rest-of the-army he-should-seem in the-city stays

Meleager sends men in the king's name to fetch or kill Perdiccas, who faces them down and rides to Leonnatus. Here the text breaks off; when it resumes, Arrhidaeus admits he gave the order. The cavalry blockades Babylon, the city starves, and the horsemen demand the instigators. Arrhidaeus offers to give up the crown, the soldiers are moved, and the two sides are reconciled, with Meleager as third leader.

At Meleager regem monere non destitit, ius imperii
but Meleager the-king to-warn not ceased the-right of-rule
Perdiccae morte sanciendum esse: ni occupetur inpotens
by-Perdiccas' death to-be-confirmed to-be unless he-be-forestalled the-uncontrolled
animus, res novaturum. Meminisse eum, quid de rege
spirit affairs going-to-overturn to-remember him what of the-king
meruisset, neminem autem ei satis fidum esse, quem metuat.
he-had-deserved no-one moreover to-him enough faithful to-be whom he-fears
Rex patiebatur magis quam adsentiebatur: itaque Meleager
the-king allowed more than agreed and-so Meleager
silentium pro imperio habuit misitque regis nomine, qui
the-silence for a-command took and-sent in-the-king's name men-who
Perdiccam accerserent. Isdem mandatum, ut occiderent,
Perdiccas should-summon to-the-same charged-it-was that they-should-kill-him
si venire dubitaret. Perdicca nuntiato satellitum adventu
if to-come be-hesitated Perdiccas with-announced of-the-attendants the-arrival
sedecim omnino pueris regiae cohortis comitatus in limine
by-sixteen in-all boys of-the-royal cohort accompanied on the-threshold
domus suae constitit castigatosque et Meleagri mancipia
of-house his-own stood and-them-rebuked and of-Meleager slaves
identidem appellans sic animi vultusque constantia terruit, ut
repeatedly calling so of-mind and-of-face by-the-steadiness he-terrified that
vix mentis compotes fugerint. Perdicca pueros equos iussit
scarcely of-their-wits in-control they-fled Perdiccas the-boys horses ordered

conscendere et cum paucis amicorum ad Leonnatum pervenit,
to-mount and with a-few of-friends to Leonnatus came
iam firmiore praesidio vim propulsaturus, si quis inferret.
now with-a-firmer guard force going-to-repel if anyone should-bring-it
Postera die indigna res Macedonibus videbatur, Perdiccam
on-the-next day unworthy the-thing to-the-Macedonians seemed Perdiccas
ad mortis periculum adductum, et Meleagri temeritatem
to of-death the-danger brought and of-Meleager the-rashness
armis ultum ire decreverant. ∗∗∗ Atque ille seditione
by-arms to-avenge to-go they-had-resolved (lacuna) and he with-the-mutiny
provisa, cum regem adisset, interrogare eum coepit,
foreseen when the-king he-had-approached to-ask him began
an Perdiccam conprehendi ipse iussisset. Ille Meleagri
whether Perdiccas to-be-seized he-himself had-ordered he at-Meleager's
instinctu se iussisse respondit: ceterum non debere
instigation himself to-have-ordered answered but not to-be-obliged
tumultuari eos: Perdiccam enim vivere. Igitur contione
to-riot them Perdiccas for to-be-alive therefore with-the-assembly
dimissa Meleager equitum maxime defectione perterritus
dismissed Meleager of-the-horsemen most by-the-defection terrified
inopsque consilii — quippe in ipsum periculum recciderat,
and-destitute of-counsel for into the-very danger he-had-fallen-back
quod inimico paulo ante intenderat — triduum fere
which against-his-enemy a-little before he-had-aimed three-days about
consumpsit incerta consilia volvendo. Et pristina quidem
spent uncertain plans turning-over and the-former indeed
regiae species manebat: nam et legati gentium regem
of-a-palace appearance remained for both envoys of-nations the-king
adibant, et copiarum duces aderant, et vestibulum satellites
approached and of-the-forces the-leaders were-present and the-forecourt attendants
armatique conpleverant. Sed ingens sua sponte maestitia
and-armed-men had-filled but huge of-its-own accord the-gloom

ultimae desperationis index erat, suspectique invicem non
of-ultimate despair the-sign was and-suspect mutually not
adire propius, non conloqui audebant secretas cogitationes
to-approach nearer not to-converse they-dared secret thoughts
intra se quoque volvente, et ex conparatione regis
within himself each turning-over and from comparison with-the-king
novi desiderium excitabatur amissi. Ubi ille esset, cuius
new the-longing was-stirred for-the-one-lost where he was whose
imperium, cuius auspicium secuti erant, requirebant: destitutos
command whose auspices followed they-had they-were-asking abandoned
se inter infestas indomitasque gentes expetituras tot
themselves among hostile and-unconquered nations going-to-exact for-so-many
suarum cladium poenas, quandoque oblata esset occasio.
their-own disasters the-penalties whenever offered should-be the-opportunity
His cogitationibus animos exedebant, cum adnuntiatur
with-these thoughts their-minds they-were-eating when it-is-announced
equites, qui sub Perdicca essent, occupatis circa Babylona
the-horsemen who under Perdiccas were with-occupied around Babylon
campis frumentum, quod in urbem vehebatur, retinuisse.
the-plains the-grain which into the-city was-being-carried to-have-held-back
Itaque inopia primum, deinde fames esse coepit, et, qui
and-so want first then famine to-be began and those-who
in urbe erant, aut reconciliandam cum Perdicca gratiam aut
in the-city were either to-be-reconciled with Perdiccas favor or
armis certandum esse censebant. Forte ita acciderat, ut,
by-arms to-be-fought to-be judged by-chance so it-had-happened that
qui in agris erant, populationem villarum vicorumque
those-who in the-fields were the-plundering of-farmhouses and-villages
veriti confugerent in urbem, oppidani, cum ipsos
fearing fled into the-city the-townsfolk when to-themselves
alimenta deficerent, urbe excederent, utrique generi tutior
supplies failed from-the-city departed to-each kind safer

aliena sedes quam sua videretur. Quorum consternationem
another's dwelling than its-own seemed whose alarm
Macedones veriti in regiam coeunt, quaeque ipsorum
the-Macedonians fearing into the-palace assemble and-what their
sententia esset, exponunt. Placebat autem legatos ad equites
opinion was they-set-out it-pleased moreover envoys to the-horsemen
mitti de finienda discordia armisque ponendis. Igitur a
to-be-sent about ending the-discord and-arms laying-down therefore by
rege legatur Pasias Thessalus et Damyllus Megalopolitanus
the-king is-sent Pasias the-Thessalian and Damyllus the-Megalopolitan
et Perilaus: qui cum mandata regis edidissent, non
and Perilaus who when the-instructions of-the-king they-had-delivered not
aliter posituros arma equites, quam si rex discordiae
otherwise going-to-lay-down their-arms the-horsemen than if the-king of-the-discord
auctores dedidisset, tulere responsum. His renuntiatis
the-authors had-surrendered brought-back the-answer with-these-things reported
sua sponte arma milites capiunt. Quorum tumultu e
of-their-own accord arms the-soldiers take at-whose uproar from
regia Philippus excitus: 'Nihil,' inquit, 'seditione est opus:
the-palace Philip roused-out no he-says of-mutiny is need
nam inter se certantium praemia, qui quieverint,
for among themselves of-those-contending the-prizes those-who have-kept-quiet
occupabunt. Simul mementote rem esse cum civibus:
will-seize at-the-same-time remember the-matter to-be with citizens
quibus spem gratiae cito abrumpere ad bellum civile
to-whom the-hope of-reconciliation quickly to-break-off to war civil
properantium est. Altera legatione, an mitigari possint,
of-men-hastening is by-a-second embassy whether to-be-softened they-can
experiamur. Et credo nondum regis corpore sepulto ad
let-us-try and I-believe not-yet with-the-king's body buried to
praestanda ei iusta omnis esse coituros. Quod ad me
rendering to-him the-rites all to-be going-to-assemble as-far-as to me

attinet, reddere hoc imperium malo quam exercere civium
it-relates to-give-back this command I-prefer than to-exercise of-citizens
sanguine: et si nulla alia concordiae spes est, oro quaesoque,
with-the-blood and if no other of-concord hope is I-beg and-beseech
eligite potiorem.' Obortis deinde lacrimis diadema detrahit
choose a-better-man with-arisen then tears the-diadem he-draws-off
capiti dexteram, qua id tenebat, protendens, ut, si
from-his-head his-right-hand with-which it he-was-holding stretching-out that if
quis se digniorem profiteretur, acciperet. Ingentem spem
anyone himself worthier should-declare he-might-take-it a-huge hope
indolis ante eum diem fratris claritate suppressae tam
of-character before that day by-his-brother's fame suppressed so
moderata excitavit oratio. Itaque cuncti instare coeperunt,
moderate roused the-speech and-so all to-press began
ut, quae agitasset, exequi vellet. Eosdem rursus legat
that what he-had-planned to-carry-out he-should-wish the-same again he-sends
petituros, ut Meleagrum tertium ducem acciperent. Haud
going-to-ask that Meleager as-third leader they-should-accept not
aegre id inpetratum est: nam et abducere Meleagrum
with-difficulty it obtained was for both to-lead-away Meleager
Perdicca a rege cupiebat et unum duobus inparem
Perdiccas from the-king desired and one-man to-two unequal
futurum esse censebat. Igitur Meleagro cum phalange
going-to-be to-be he-judged therefore with-Meleager with the-phalanx
obviam egresso Perdicca equitum turmas antecedens
to-meet-him having-gone-out Perdiccas of-the-horsemen the-squadrons preceding
occurrit. Utrumque agmen mutua salutatione facta coit
meets each column with-mutual salutation made comes-together
in perpetuum, ut arbitrabantur, concordia et pace firmata.
for ever as they-thought with-concord and peace confirmed

Curtius reflects that the empire fell apart under many rulers and praises the new emperor who saved Rome from a like fate. Perdiccas plots against Meleager. At the army's ritual purification, Perdiccas has thirty of Meleager's men trampled by elephants. Meleager flees to a temple and is killed there.

Sed iam fatis admovebantur Macedonum genti
but already by-the-fates were-being-moved-toward of-the-Macedonians to-the-nation
bella civilia: nam et insociabile est regnum et a pluribus
wars civil for both unshareable is a-kingdom and by several
expetebatur. Primum ergo conlisere vires, deinde
it-was-sought first therefore they-clashed their-strength then
disperserunt: et cum pluribus corpus, quam capiebat,
they-scattered-it and when with-more the-body than it-could-hold
onerassent, cetera membra deficere coeperunt, quodque
they-had-loaded the-other limbs to-fail began and-what
imperium sub uno stare potuisset, dum a pluribus
an-empire under one-man to-stand could-have while by several
sustinetur, ruit. Proinde iure meritoque populus Romanus
it-is-held-up falls therefore by-right and-deservedly the-people Roman
salutem se principi suo debere profitetur, qui noctis,
its-safety itself to-its-emperor own to-owe declares who of-the-night
quam paene supremam habuimus, novum sidus inluxit.
which almost our-last we-had a-new star shone-forth
Huius, hercule, non solis ortus lucem caliganti reddidit
his by-Hercules not the-sun's rising the-light to-the-darkening gave-back
mundo, cum sine suo capite discordia membra trepidarent.
world when without its-own head the-discordant limbs were-trembling
Quot ille tum extinxit faces! quot condidit gladios!
how-many he then put-out torches how-many he-sheathed swords

quantam tempestatem subita serenitate discussit! Non ergo
how-great a-storm with-sudden fair-weather he-dispersed not therefore
revirescit solum, sed etiam floret imperium. Absit modo
grows-green-again only but even flourishes the-empire let-be-absent only
invidia, excipiet huius saeculi tempora eiusdem domus utinam
envy will-take-up of-this age the-times of-the-same house would-that
perpetua, certe diuturna posteritas. Ceterum, ut ad ordinem,
perpetual surely lasting the-posterity but that to the-order
a quo me contemplatio publicae felicitatis averterat,
from which me the-contemplation of-the-public happiness had-turned-aside
redeam, Perdicca unicam spem salutis suae in Meleagri
I-may-return Perdiccas the-only hope of-safety his-own in Meleager's
morte reponebat: vanum eundem et infidum celeriterque
death was-placing fickle the-same-man and faithless and-quickly
res novaturum et sibi maxime infestum occupandum
affairs going-to-overturn and to-himself most hostile to-be-forestalled
esse. Sed alta dissimulatione consilium premebat, ut
to-be but with-deep dissimulation the-plan he-was-pressing-down that
opprimeret incautum. Ergo clam quosdam ex copiis,
he-might-crush-him off-guard therefore secretly certain from the-forces
quibus praeerat, subornavit, ut, quasi ignoraret ipse,
which he-commanded he-suborned that as-if he-were-unaware himself
conquererentur palam Meleagrum aequatum esse Perdiccae.
they-should-complain openly Meleager made-equal to-have-been to-Perdiccas
Quorum sermone Meleager ad se relato furens ira
with-whose talk Meleager to himself reported raging with-anger
Perdiccae, quae conperisset, exponit. Ille velut nova re
to-Perdiccas what he-had-learned sets-out he as-if by-a-new thing
exterritus admirari, queri dolentisque speciem ostentare
terrified to-wonder to-complain and-of-one-grieving the-appearance to-show
ei coepit: ad ultimum convenit, ut conprehenderentur tam
to-him began at the-last it-was-agreed that should-be-seized so

seditiosae vocis auctores. Agit Meleager gratias amplexusque
of-mutinous a-speech the-authors gives Meleager thanks and-embracing
Perdiccam fidem eius in se ac benivolentiam
Perdiccas the-good-faith his toward himself and goodwill
conlaudat. Tum communi consilio rationem opprimendi noxios
praises then by-common counsel a-method of-crushing the-guilty
ineunt. Placet exercitum patrio more lustrari: et
they-enter-upon it-pleases the-army in-ancestral manner to-be-purified and
probabilis causa videbatur praeterita discordia. Macedonum
plausible the-reason seemed the-past discord the-Macedonians'
reges ita lustrare soliti erant milites, ut discissae canis
kings thus to-purify accustomed were the-soldiers that of-a-cut-in-two dog
viscera ultimo in campo, in quem deduceretur exercitus,
the-entrails at-the-far in the-field into which should-be-led-down the-army
ab utraque abicerent parte, intra id spatium armati omnes
on each they-should-throw side within that space armed all
starent, hinc equites, illinc phalanx. Itaque eo
should-stand on-this-side the-horsemen on-that-side the-phalanx and-so on-that
die, quem huic sacro destinaverant, rex cum equitibus
day which for-this rite they-had-appointed the-king with the-horsemen
elephantisque constiterat contra pedites, quis Meleager
and-elephants had-taken-his-stand against the-infantry whom Meleager
praeerat. Iam equestre agmen movebatur, et pedites subita
commanded now the-cavalry column was-being-moved and the-infantry with-sudden
formidine ob recentem discordiam haud sane pacati
dread on-account-of the-recent discord not indeed peaceful
quicquam expectantes parumper addubitavere, an in urbem
anything expecting for-a-little doubted whether into the-city
subducerent copias — quippe pro equitibus planities
they-should-withdraw the-forces for in-favor-of the-horsemen the-plain
erat—, ceterum veriti, ne temere commilitonum fidem
was but fearing lest rashly of-their-comrades the-good-faith

damnarent, substitere praeparatis ad dimicandum animis,
they-should-condemn they-halted with-prepared for fighting minds
si quis vim inferret. Iam agmina coibant, parvumque
if anyone force should-bring now the-columns were-coming-together and-a-small
intervallum erat, quod aciem utramque divideret: itaque rex
interval was which line each divided and-so the-king
cum una ala obequitare peditibus coepit discordiae auctores,
with one squadron to-ride-up-to the-infantry began of-the-discord the-authors
quos tueri ipse debebat, instinctu Perdiccae ad supplicia
whom to-protect he-himself ought at-the-instigation of-Perdiccas to punishments
deposcens, minabaturque omnes turmas cum elephantis
demanding and-he-threatened all the-squadrons with the-elephants
inducturum se in recusantes. Stupebant inproviso
going-to-lead-in himself against those-refusing were-stunned by-the-unforeseen
malo pedites, nec plus in ipso Meleagro erat aut consilii
evil the-infantry nor more in himself Meleager was either of-counsel
aut animi. Tutissimum ex praesentibus videbatur expectare
or of-courage safest of the-present-things seemed to-await
potius quam movere fortunam. Tum Perdicca, ut torpentes
rather than to-move fortune then Perdiccas when numb
et obnoxios vidit, XXX fere, qui Meleagrum erumpentem
and exposed he-saw thirty about who Meleager bursting-out
ex contione, quae prima habita est post mortem Alexandri,
from the-assembly which first held was after the-death of-Alexander
secuti erant, a ceteris discretos elephantis in conspectu
followed had from the-rest separated to-the-elephants in sight
totius exercitus obicit. Omnesque beluarum pedibus obtriti
of-the-whole army he-throws and-all by-the-beasts' feet trampled
sunt nec prohibente Philippo nec auctore: adparebatque
were nor with-forbidding-it Philip nor authorizing and-it-was-clear
id modo pro suo vindicaturum, quod adprobasset
that only as his-own going-to-claim which should-have-approved

eventus. Hoc bellorum civilium Macedonibus et omen et
the-outcome this of-wars civil for-the-Macedonians both the-omen and
principium fuit. Meleager sero intellecta fraude Perdiccae
the-beginning was Meleager late with-understood the-fraud of-Perdiccas
tum quidem, quia ipsius corpori vis non adferebatur, in
then indeed because to-his-own body violence not was-being-brought in
agmine quietus stetit, sed mox damnata spe salutis, cum
the-column quiet stood but soon with-given-up the-hope of-safety when
eius nomine, quem ipse fecerat regem, in perniciem
of-the-one the-name whom he-himself had-made king for ruin
suam abutentis videret inimicos, confugit in templum ac
his-own misusing he-saw his-enemies fled into a-temple and
ne loci quidem religione defensus occiditur.
not of-the-place even by-the-sanctity protected is-killed

X · THE DIVISION OF THE EMPIRE

A council under Perdiccas divides the provinces among the generals, Ptolemy taking Egypt. The body lies unburied in the heat into the seventh day without decay; the Egyptians and Chaldaeans embalm it. Many believe Alexander was poisoned by Antipater's son Iollas with water from the Styx. Ptolemy carries the body to Memphis, and a few years later to Alexandria.

Perdicca perducto in urbem exercitu consilium principum
Perdiccas with-led into the-city the-army a-council of-the-chief
virorum habuit, in quo imperium ita dividi placuit, ut
men held in which the-empire so to-be-divided it-pleased that
rex quidem summam eius obtineret, satrapeam Ptolomaeus
the-king indeed the-sum of-it should-hold the-satrapy Ptolemy
Aegypti et Africae gentium, quae in dicione erant: Leomedonti
of-Egypt and Africa's nations which in subjection were to-Laomedon

Syria cum Phoenice data est, Philotae Cilicia destinata, Lyciam
Syria with Phoenicia given was to-Philotas Cilicia assigned Lycia
cum Pamphylia et Maiore Phrygia obtinere iussus Antigonus,
with Pamphylia and Greater Phrygia to-hold ordered Antigonus
in Cariam Cassander, Menander in Lydiam missi: Phrygiam
into Caria Cassander Menander into Lydia sent Phrygia
Minorem Hellesponto adiunctam Leonnati provinciam esse
Lesser to-the-Hellespont joined Leonnatus' province to-be
iusserunt. Cappadocia Eumeni cum Paphlagonia cessit:
they-ordered Cappadocia to-Eumenes with Paphlagonia fell
praeceptum est, ut regionem eam usque ad Trapezunta
instructed it-was that the-region that as-far as Trapezus
defenderet, bellum cum Ariarathe gereret: solus hic
he-should-defend war with Ariarathes he-should-wage alone this-man
detrectabat imperium. Pithon Mediam, Lysimachus Thraciam
refused the-command Pithon Media Lysimachus Thrace
adpositasque Thraciae Ponticas gentes obtinere iussi. Qui
and-set-beside to-Thrace the-Pontic nations to-hold ordered those-who
Indiae quique Bactris et Sogdianis ceterisque aut
over-India and-those-who over-the-Bactrians and the-Sogdians and-the-other either
Oceani aut Rubri maris accolis praeerant, quibus quisque
of-the-Ocean or of-the-Red sea dwellers were-in-charge in-what each
finibus habuisset, imperium obtinerent, decretum est: Perdicca
territory had-held command they-should-hold decreed it-was Perdiccas
ut cum rege esset copiisque praeesset, quae regem
that with the-king he-should-be and-the-forces should-command which the-king
sequebantur. Credidere quidam testamento Alexandri distributas
followed believed some by-the-will of-Alexander distributed
esse provincias, sed famam eius rei, quamquam ab
to-have-been the-provinces but the-report of-that matter although by
auctoribus tradita est, vanam fuisse conperimus. Et
authorities handed-down it-is false to-have-been we-have-found and

quidem suas quisque opes divisis imperii partibus,
indeed their-own each the-power with-divided of-the-empire the-parts
ut videbantur sibi, fundaverant, si umquam adversus
as they-seemed to-themselves had-founded if ever against
inmodicas cupiditates terminus staret. Quippe paulo ante
immoderate desires a-boundary stood for a-little before
regis ministri specie imperii alieni procurandi singuli
the-king's ministers under-the-pretext of-rule another's administering each
ingentia invaserant regna sublatis certaminum causis, cum
huge had-seized kingdoms with-removed of-contests the-causes since
et omnes eiusdem gentis essent et a ceteris sui quisque
both all of-the-same nation were and from the-others of-his each
imperii regione discreti. Sed difficile erat eo contentos
command by-region separated but difficult it-was with-that content
esse, quod obtulerat occasio: quippe sordent prima quaeque,
to-be which had-offered opportunity for are-cheap the-first things-each
cum maiora sperantur. Itaque omnibus expeditius videbatur
when greater-things are-hoped and-so to-all more-ready it-seemed
augere regna, quam fuisset accipere. Septimus dies erat,
to-enlarge kingdoms than it-had-been to-receive-them the-seventh day it-was
ex quo corpus regis iacebat in solio, curis omnium
from which the-body of-the-king lay on the-throne with-the-cares of-all
ad formandum publicum statum a tam sollemni munere
to forming the-public settlement from so solemn a-duty
aversis. Et non alius quam Mesopotamiae regionis fervidior
turned-away and not other than of-Mesopotamia the-region more-burning
aestas existit, adeo ut pleraque animalia, quae in nudo solo
a-summer arises so that most animals which on bare ground
deprehendit, extinguat: tantus est vapor solis et caeli,
it-catches it-kills so-great is the-heat of-the-sun and of-the-sky
quo cuncta velut igne torrentur. Fontes aquarum et rari
by-which everything as-if by-fire is-scorched springs of-waters both scarce

sunt et incolentium fraude celantur: ipsis usus patet,
are and by-the-inhabitants' deceit are-hidden to-themselves the-use lies-open
ignotus est advenis. Traditum magis quam creditum refero:
unknown it-is to-strangers handed-down rather than believed I-report
ut tandem curare corpus exanimum amicis vacavit,
when at-last to-tend the-body lifeless for-the-friends there-was-leisure
nulla tabe, ne minimo quidem livore corruptum videre,
by-no decay not the-least even livid-spot corrupted saw
qui intraverant. Vigor quoque, qui constat ex spiritu,
those-who had-entered the-vigor also which consists from the-breath
nondum destituerat vultum. Itaque Aegyptii Chaldaeique
not-yet had-left the-face and-so the-Egyptians and-Chaldaeans
iussi corpus suo more curare primo non sunt ausi
ordered the-body in-their-own manner to-tend at-first not have dared
admovere velut spiranti manus: deinde precati, ut ius
to-apply as-if to-one-breathing their-hands then having-prayed that right
fasque esset mortalibus attrectare deum, purgavere corpus,
and-lawful it-might-be for-mortals to-handle a-god they-cleansed the-body
repletumque est odoribus aureum solium et capiti adiecta
and-filled was with-perfumes the-golden throne and to-the-head added
fortunae eius insignia. Veneno necatum esse credidere
of-fortune his the-insignia by-poison killed to-have-been believed
plerique: filium Antipatri inter ministros, Iollam nomine,
most the-son of-Antipater among the-attendants Iollas by-name
patris iussu dedisse. Saepe certe audita erat vox
by-his-father's order to-have-given-it often certainly heard had-been the-voice
Alexandri Antipatrum regium adfectare fastigium maioremque
of-Alexander Antipater royal to-aim-at the-height and-greater
esse praefecti opibus ac titulo Spartanae victoriae inflatum
to-be than-a-governor in-wealth and by-the-title of-the-Spartan victory puffed-up
omnia a se data adserentem sibi. Credebant etiam
all-things by himself given claiming for-himself they-believed also

Craterum cum veterum militum manu ad interficiendum eum
Craterus with of-veteran soldiers a-band for killing him
missum. Vim autem veneni, quod in Macedonia gignitur,
sent the-strength moreover of-the-poison which in Macedonia is-produced
talem esse constat, ut ferrum quoque exurat, ungulam
such to-be it-is-agreed that iron also it-burns-through the-hoof
iumenti dumtaxat patientem esse suci: Stygem
of-a-beast-of-burden only enduring to-be of-the-juice the-Styx
appellant fontem, ex quo pestiferum virus emanat. Hoc per
they-call the-spring from which the-deadly venom flows-out this through
Cassandrum adlatum traditumque fratri Iollae et ab eo
Cassander brought and-handed to-his-brother Iollas and by him
supremae regis potioni inditum. Haec, utcumque sunt,
into-the-last of-the-king drink put these-things however are
credita eorum, quos rumor asperserat, mox potentia extinxit:
believed of-those whom the-rumor had-spattered soon the-power extinguished
regnum enim Macedoniae Antipater et Graeciam quoque
the-kingdom for of-Macedonia Antipater and Greece also
invasit, suboles deinde excepit interfectis omnibus, quicumque
seized the-offspring then succeeded with-killed all whoever
Alexandrum etiam longinqua cognatione contigerant. Ceterum
Alexander even by-distant kinship had-touched but
corpus eius a Ptolomaeo, cui Aegyptus cesserat, Memphim
the-body his by Ptolemy to-whom Egypt had-fallen to-Memphis
et inde paucis post annis Alexandream translatum est,
and from-there a-few after years to-Alexandria carried was
omnisque memoriae ac nomini honos habetur.
and-every to-the-memory and to-the-name honor is-paid
